

# Table of Contents

## MicroStation V8i for Design Division

<b>Section 1</b>	<b>MicroStation Manager &amp; Menus</b>	<b>Page 100-110</b>
<b>Section 2</b>	<b>MicroStation Windows/Views</b>	<b>Page 200-207</b>
<b>Section 3</b>	<b>Creating Elements</b>	<b>Page 300-329</b>
<b>Section 4</b>	<b>Snapping</b>	<b>Page 400-415</b>
<b>Section 5</b>	<b>Working with AccuDraw</b>	<b>Page 500-519</b>
<b>Section 6</b>	<b>Element Selection</b>	<b>Page 600-615</b>
<b>Section 7</b>	<b>Manipulate Elements</b>	<b>Page 700-716</b>
<b>Section 8</b>	<b>Levels</b>	<b>Page 800-810</b>
<b>Section 9</b>	<b>Changing &amp; Modifying Elements</b>	<b>Page 900-922</b>
<b>Section 10</b>	<b>Standards and Settings Manager</b>	<b>Page 1000-1009</b>
<b>Section 11</b>	<b>Groups and Patterns</b>	<b>Page 1100-1130</b>
<b>Section 12</b>	<b>Text and Notes</b>	<b>Page 1200-1238</b>
<b>Section 13</b>	<b>Measuring Elements &amp; Shapes</b>	<b>Page 1300-1309</b>
<b>Section 14</b>	<b>Using References</b>	<b>Page 1400-1417</b>
<b>Section 15</b>	<b>MoDOT Plotting</b>	<b>Page 1500-1511</b>



# MicroStation Manager & Menus

## Section 1

<b>1.0</b>	<b>File Open</b>	<b>Page 100</b>
<b>1.1</b>	<b>Working with the Mouse</b>	<b>Page 101-102</b>
<b>1.2</b>	<b>MicroStation Window Layout</b>	<b>Page 102-106</b>
<b>1.3</b>	<b>Pull Down Menus</b>	<b>Page 107-110</b>



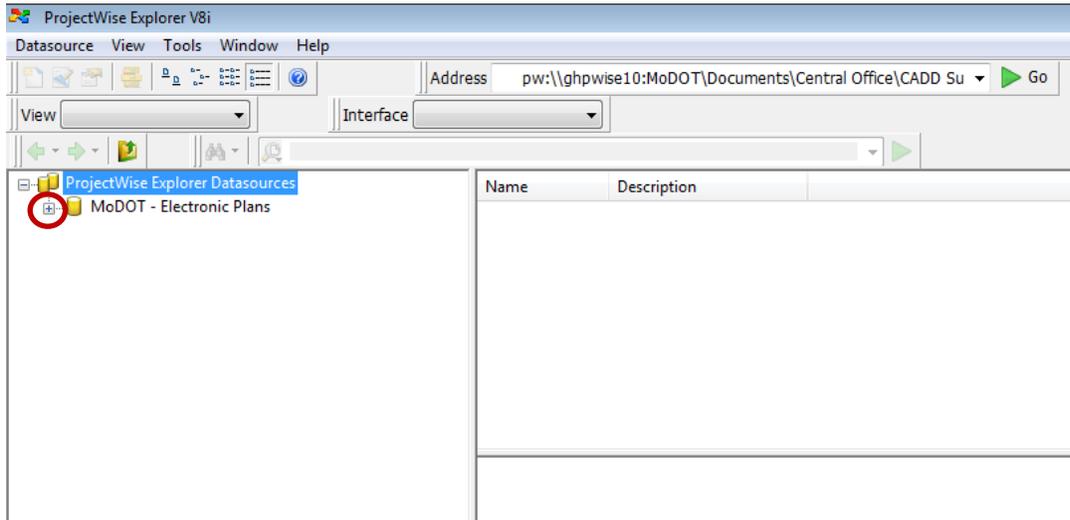
# MicroStation V8i – File Open

## 1.0 File Open

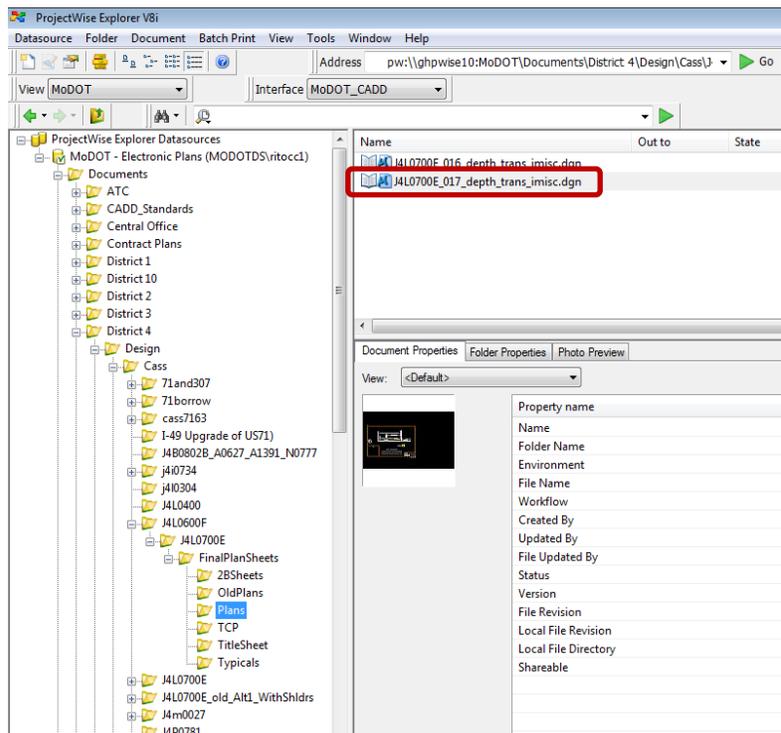
The way to open a MicroStation files is through the ProjectWise document management system. You will begin by double-left clicking the ProjectWise icon located on your desktop (background color may vary based on the color of your desktop background).



The ProjectWise Navigator will open, and should automatically log you in as long as you are the person logged onto your machine.



Notice the (+) next to the MoDOT Electric Plans data source. You will need to single left-click this + to expand the list. You may then navigate to the desired file location by clicking on the + next to each folder (i.e., Documents – District 4 – Design – Cass – J4L0700E – FinalPlanSheets – Plans). Once there, you will double left-click on the file to open it in MicroStation.

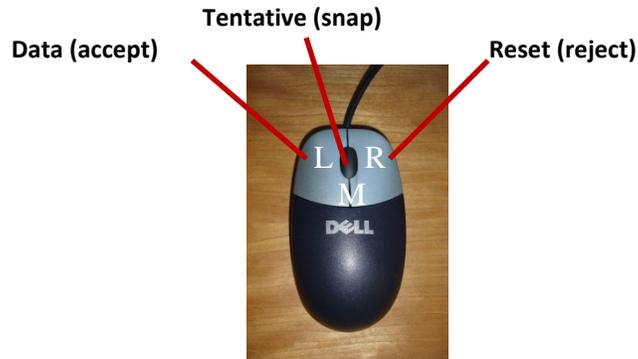


## MicroStation V8i – File Open

### 1.1 Working with the Mouse

A typical Dell mouse has 2 buttons and a wheel (roller) in the middle. The roller also serves as a button when pressed down on.

(Note: L=Left, R=Right, M=Middle mouse buttons)



The DATA button (left mouse button) is used to:

- Select icons, menus, or graphic elements.
- Confirm a selection (i.e., OK a confirmation to delete a file).
- Create a selection set with an element or elements (more about this later).

To enter a data point

1. Position the pointer on the desired location.
2. Click the Data (left) button on the mouse.

The TENTATIVE button (middle mouse button or wheel) is used to:

- Snap to a point (key point, midpoint, etc).
- Reference a point (key point, midpoint, etc) on an existing element for the purpose of typing in a value to be measured from that point.

The RESET button (right mouse button) is used to:

- Reject a selection if another element is in the same proximity (selection will toggle through all of the elements within close range).
- Cancel or terminate a command in progress.
- Allows you to repeat the last command activated (i.e., place line).

#### Resetting

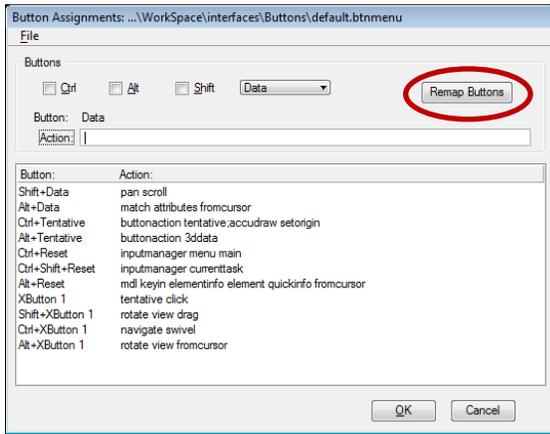
Resetting in MicroStation is similar to using the <esc> key in other applications. Resetting will “back you out” of most MicroStation operations that have several steps. For example, if you use your View controls to zoom in, doing a reset (or 2) will back you out of the View controls and back to the tool you were previously using.

#### To Reset

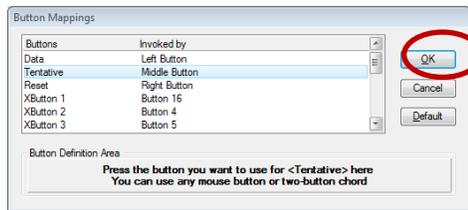
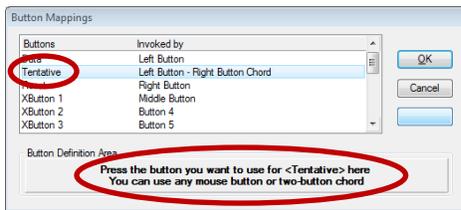
Click the Reset button (right mouse button).

**NOTE:** The preset defaults may not be appropriate for your mouse. You can find the settings for this under **Workspace->Button Assignments**. Make sure the “XButton1” (middle mouse button) is set to “Tentative Click”. If it is incorrect, select the “Remap Buttons” button.

## MicroStation V8i – File Open

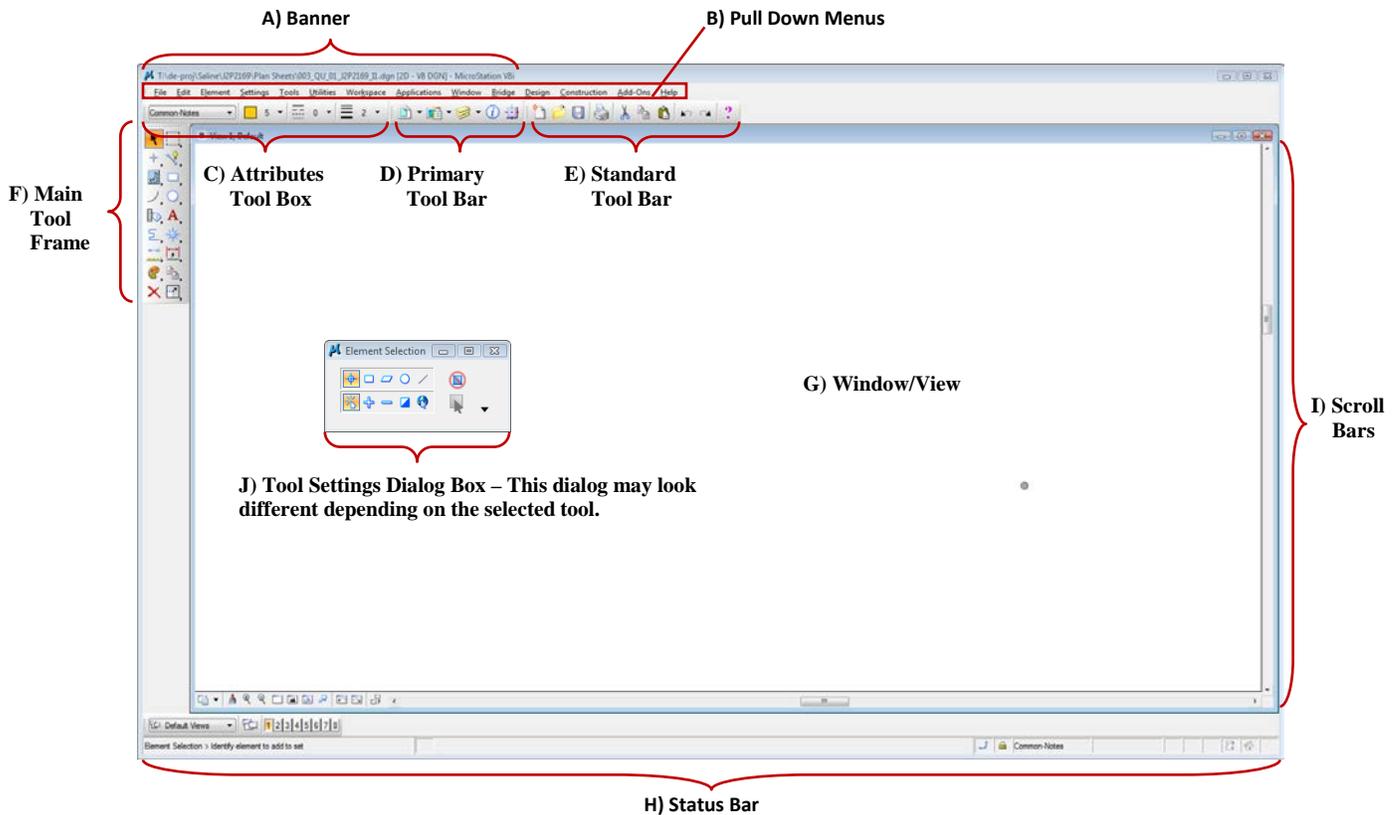


This will bring up a new dialog box.



Click on the word “Tentative”, and hover your mouse over the Button Definition Area. Click the middle mouse button. The definition for Tentative will change to “Middle Button”. Click OK.

## 1.2 MicroStation V8i Window Layout



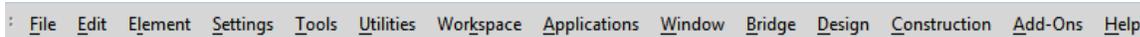
## MicroStation V8i – File Open

### A) Banner



- Contains the name, file location, and software along with the minimize, maximize, and close icons.
- Allows you to move or relocate the dialog box.
- Displays which box is active when highlighted.

### B) Pull Down Menus



Some dialog boxes have pull down menus. Move your mouse to the menu item and click the data button. The menu will pull down revealing commands and cascading sub-menus. Data point on a selection to choose an item.

### C) Attributes Tool Bar



The Attributes tool bar contains frequently used drawing tools and controls for frequently used settings. By default, it is docked to the top of the MicroStation window (directly beneath the pull down menu bar). You are allowed to undock this tool bar.

With this tool bar, you may:

- Set the active level.
- Set the active color.
- Set the line style.
- Set the line weight.
- Preview the active line symbology.

### D) Primary Tool Bar



The Primary Tools tool bar is a launch point for commonly used MicroStation tools. By default, it is docked to the top of the MicroStation window (directly beneath the pull down menu bar). You are allowed to undock this tool bar.

With this tool bar, you may:

- View the Reference Manager
- View the Raster Manager
- View the Level Manager
- Look up the information attributes of an element, line, or cell.
- Activate or deactivate AccuDraw.

## MicroStation V8i – File Open

### E) Standard Tool Bar



This tool bar contains items that enable quick access to commonly used pull down menus. By default, it is docked to the top of the MicroStation window (directly beneath the pull down menus bar). You are allowed to undock this tool bar.

With this tool bar, you may:

- Create a new file.
- Open an existing file.
- Save a file.
- Print a file.
- Cut, copy, paste elements from one file to another.
- Undo a function.
- Redo a function.
- Invoke the Help menu.

### F) Main Tool Frame

These are used to select drawing tools commonly used by Highway Designers and Technicians.

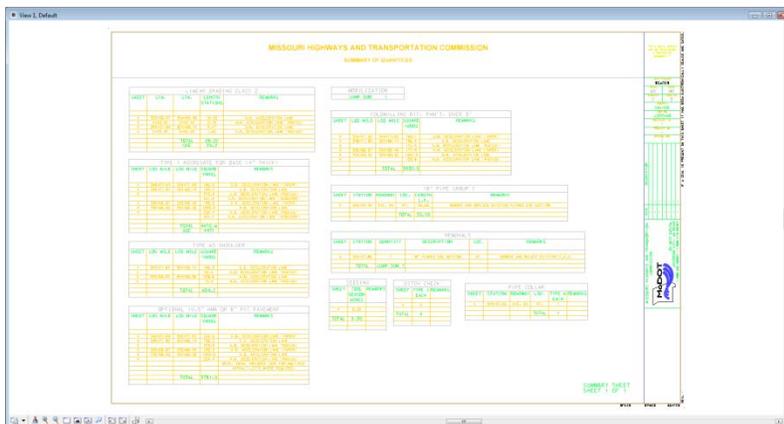
The Main Tool Frame is open by default the first time you open MicroStation. It is docked to the left edge of the MicroStation window. It can be undocked and redocked on the right edge of the window.

With the exception of Select Element and Delete Element, the tools in the Main Tool Frame are also members of a “child” tool box. When a tool is pointed to and the Data button is held down, its child tool box opens. The child tool box can be removed by selecting “Open As Tool Box” located at the bottom of the child tool box. When a tool is selected (whether attached or floating), the tool automatically becomes the default tool of the child tool box in the Main Tool Frame.

## MicroStation V8i – File Open



## G) Window/View

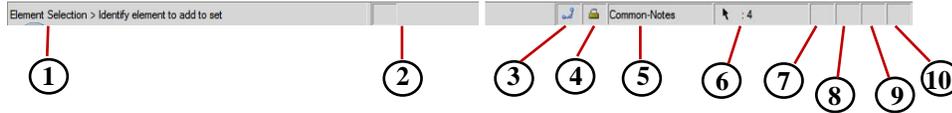


Windows or views display the design file graphics. There are eight (8) different views which can be overlapped, cascaded, or tiled. The banner identifies the window number (and name when displaying a saved view).

## MicroStation V8i – File Open

### H) Status Bar

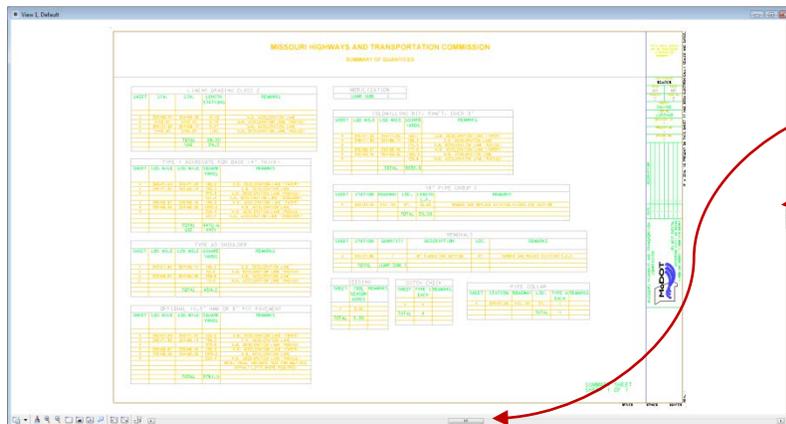
Provides prompts, context-sensitive assistance, and some interactive functionality.



- 1) **Selected tool > prompt** – Shows the name of the selected tool or view control. Usually contains a prompt for the next step in using it.
- 2) **Message Center** – Shows system message information. Clicking in the Message Center portion of the status bar opens the Message Center dialog box. This box contains a running log of system messages in the current session of MicroStation and any further description about the message if applicable.
- 3) **Snap mode** – Shows the currently selected snap.
- 4) **Locks icon** – Clicking the Locks icon provides access to the locks sub-menu.
- 5) **Active Level** – Shows the current active level.
- 6) **Element selection indicator** – If elements are currently in a selection set, the number of elements in that set will be displayed.
- 7) **Fence indicator** – If a fence has been placed, the type of fence placed will be shown.
- 8) **DGN work mode** – Indicates the current work mode. In DWG mode, certain functionality is disabled in order to restrict MicroStation to only creating information that can be stored in DWG format.
- 9) **DGN file changed indicator** – If nothing appears in this box, there have been no savable changes to the file, this box will be blank. If changes have been made to the file, a floppy diskette  will show. If the file is opened as Read-Only, a floppy disk will show with a red circle with a slash through it  showing that you cannot edit the current file. You can use your view tools, measure tools, and plot when in a read-only file.
- 10) **File not protected or signed** – This block is not used by MoDOT.

### I) Scroll Bars -

Toggles display of scroll bars on/off.

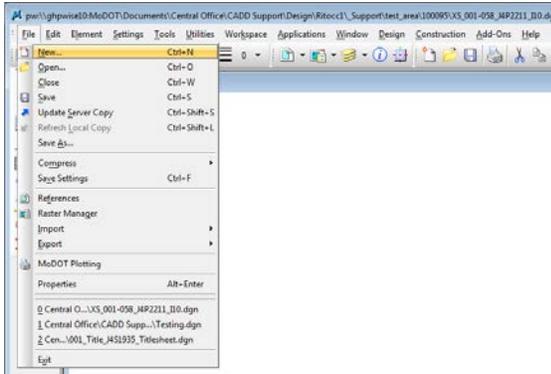


Scroll bars allow the user to navigate through the design file

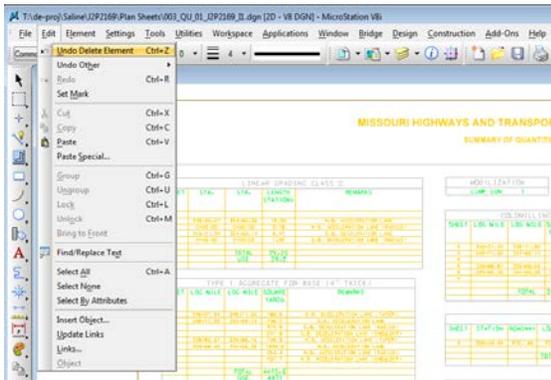
## MicroStation V8i – File Open

### 1.3 Pull Down Menus

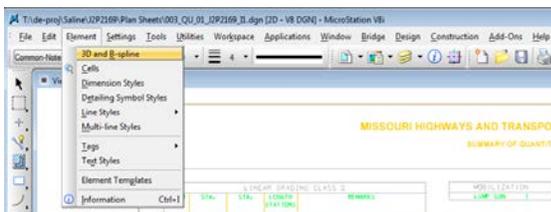
**File** - The File pull down menu contains items for creating, opening, closing, and saving design files, updating the server copy, compressing files, working with references, importing and exporting files, printing and ending a MicroStation session.



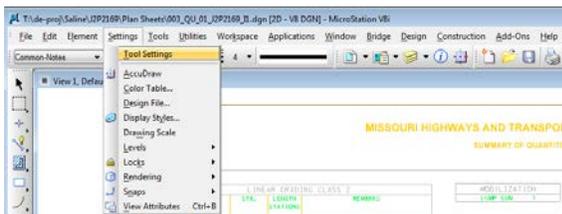
**Edit** – The edit pull down menu contains items for undoing and redoing changes, cutting/copying/pasting from 1 file to another, grouping/ungrouping selection sets, and locking/unlocking elements.



**Element** – The Element pull down menu contains items for modifying the attributes of an element.

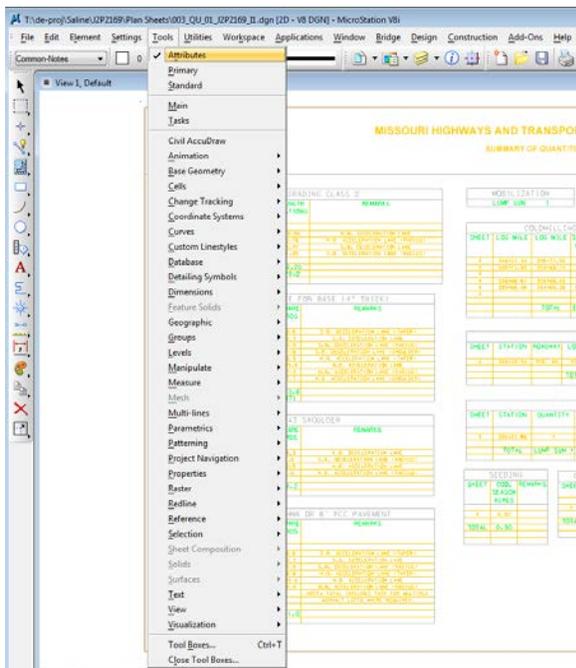


**Settings** – The Settings pull down menu contains items for reviewing and changing non-element specific settings.

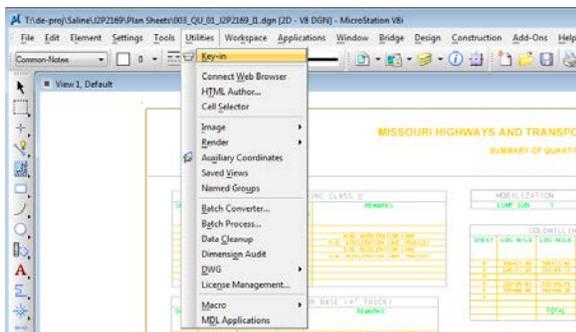


## MicroStation V8i – File Open

**Tools** – The Tools pull down menu contains items for opening and closing tool boxes, as well as creating new tool boxes.



**Utilities** – The Utilities pull down menu contains items for invoking utilities, macros, and extensions to MicroStation.



**Workspace** – The Workspace pull down menu contains items for setting user preferences, as well as customizing buttons and function key (F1-F12) assignments.

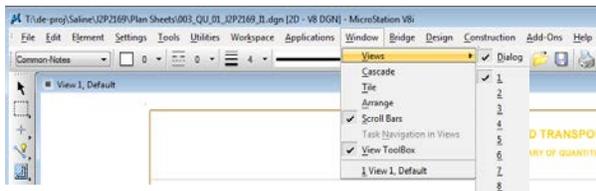


**Applications** – The Applications pull down menu contains an item for activating and deactivating the Bentley Civil application.

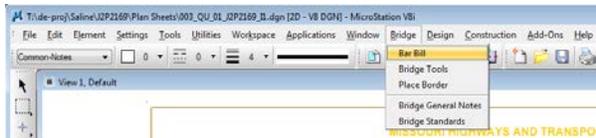


## MicroStation V8i – File Open

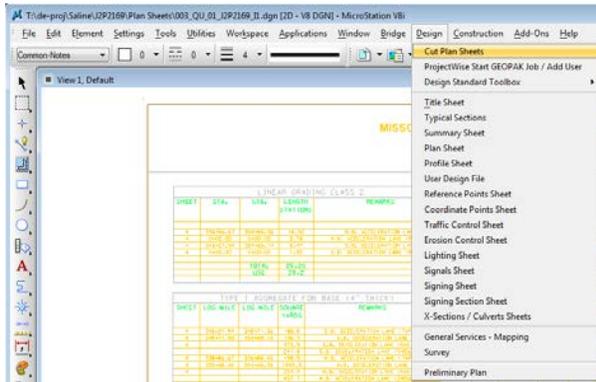
**Window** – The Window pull down menu contains items for opening and closing views, and controlling the arrangement of views and other windows on the screen.



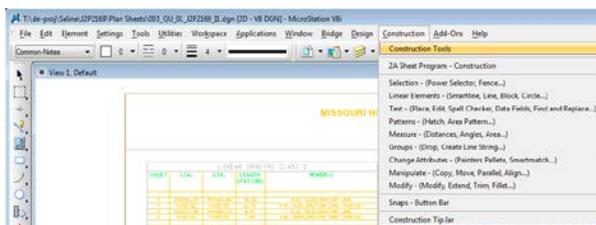
**Bridge** – The Bridge pull down menu has been designed to assist Bridge Division in creating Bar Bill sheets, and placing geometry and notes which adhere to MoDOT Standards.



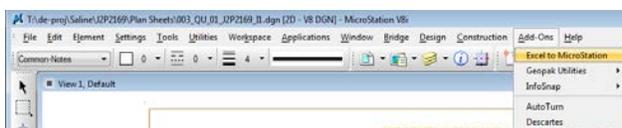
**Design** -The Design pull down menu has been designed to assist Designers and Design Technicians in placing geometry, text, or cells which adhere to MoDOT Standards. Each sheet type listed invokes a different Settings Manager dialog box (See Settings Manager chapter).



**Construction** – The Construction pull down menu has been designed to assist Construction Technicians and Inspectors in invoking the 2A Sheet program, placing geometry, text, or cells which adhere to MoDOT Standards. Each sheet type listed invokes a different Settings Manager dialog box. Also contained in this menu are the Construction Tool bar, and short cuts to the Snaps button bar, and the Construction Tip Jar.

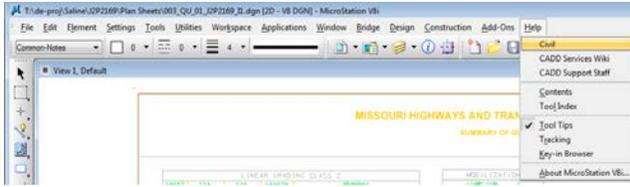


**Add-ons** – The Add-ons pull down menu contains additional tools which were created by MoDOT or a third party.



## MicroStation V8i – File Open

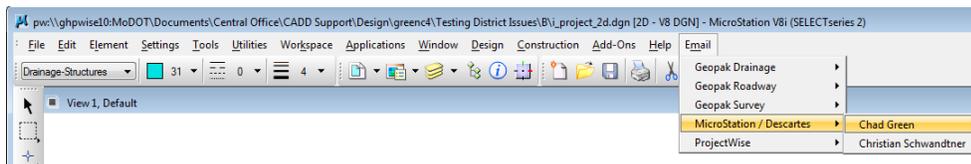
**Help** – If a description is needed here, then you need more help than this manual can provide.



**Tool Tips** – If on, positioning the pointer over a tool icon displays a tool tip, which is a yellow rectangle with text that provides the name of the tool and in most cases a brief description.

**Tracking** – If on, the help page for each newly selected tool or view control is automatically displayed.

**Email** – The Email pulldown allows users to select the application they are using and will show a list of specialists at CADD Support that support that application. It will also allow you to select one of the specialist and will automatically bring up Lotus Notes (if already opened) so you can send that specialist an email on a problem or question you have.



# MicroStation Windows/Views

## Section 2

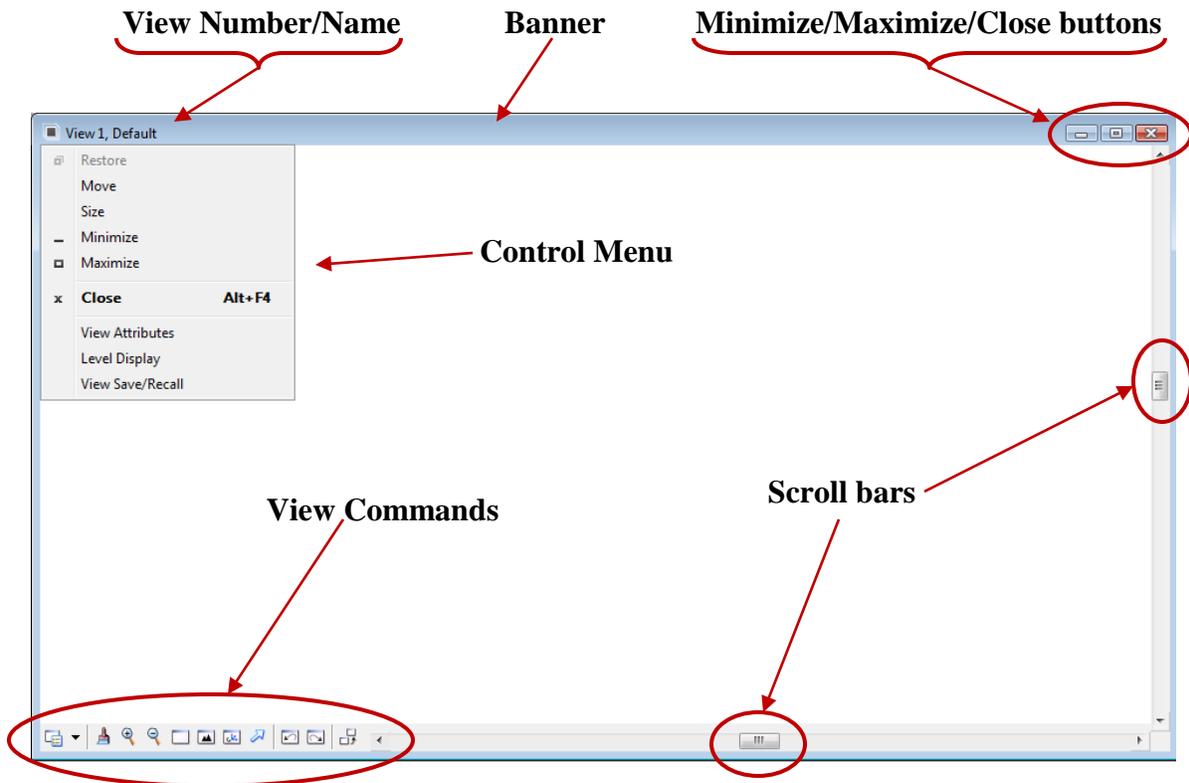
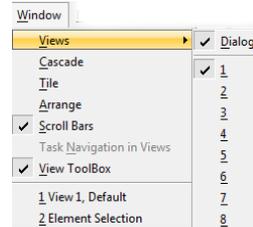
<b>2.0</b>	<b>Windows/Views</b>	<b>Page 200-202</b>
<b>2.1</b>	<b>View Commands</b>	<b>Page 202-205</b>
<b>2.2</b>	<b>View Attributes</b>	<b>Page 205-207</b>



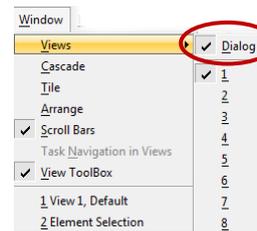
## 2.0 Windows/Views

MicroStation uses the terms “windows” and “views” interchangeably. MicroStation gives you the option of having up to eight (8) view windows open at one time. Also, it lets you customize the arrangement of view windows within the application window.

From the Window menu’s Views sub-menu, choose the number of the view window you want to open. Check marks in the sub-menu indicate the numbers of open view windows.



Also from the Window menu’s View sub-menu, choose **Dialog**. The View’s Groups window opens. By default, it is docked to the bottom of the window. Numbered buttons that are highlighted represent the open views.



To open a closed view window, click its numbered button.



## MicroStation V8i – MicroStation Windows/Views

To **close** an opened view window:

From the Window menu's Views sub-menu, choose the number of the view window you want to close.



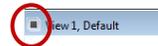
Or

In the view window's title bar, click the close window button at the far right.



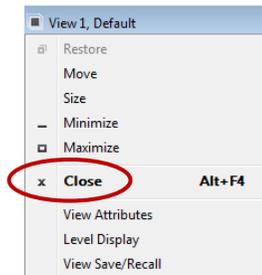
Or

Double-click the window menu button at the far left.



Or

From the view windows control menu (open by clicking the window menu button at the far left of the view window's title bar) choose Close.



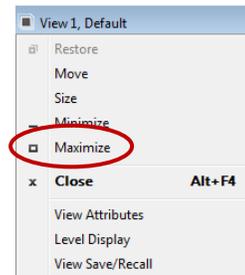
To **maximize** an open view window:

Click the view window's Maximize button.



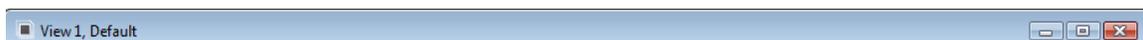
Or

From the view window's control menu, choose Maximize.



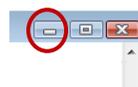
Or

Double left-click on the view's window banner.



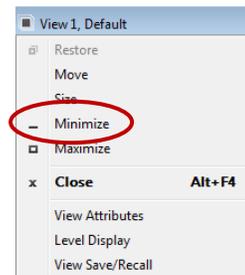
To **minimize** an open window:

Click the view window's Minimize button.



Or

From the view window's control menu, choose Minimize.



## MicroStation V8i – MicroStation Windows/Views

To **move** a view window with the pointer:

- 1) Position the pointer on the banner of the view window
- 2) Press and hold down the data button
- 3) Drag the view window to the desired location

### Using the resize borders:

The four borders of a view window are called resize borders because dragging them resizes the view window. For example, by dragging the right or left resize border, you can change the width of the view window. Similarly, by dragging the top or bottom resize border, you can change the height of the view window. By dragging the corner of the resize border, you can change both the height and the width simultaneously. The pointer indicates the directions in which you can drag the border or corner.

To **resize** a view window with the pointer:

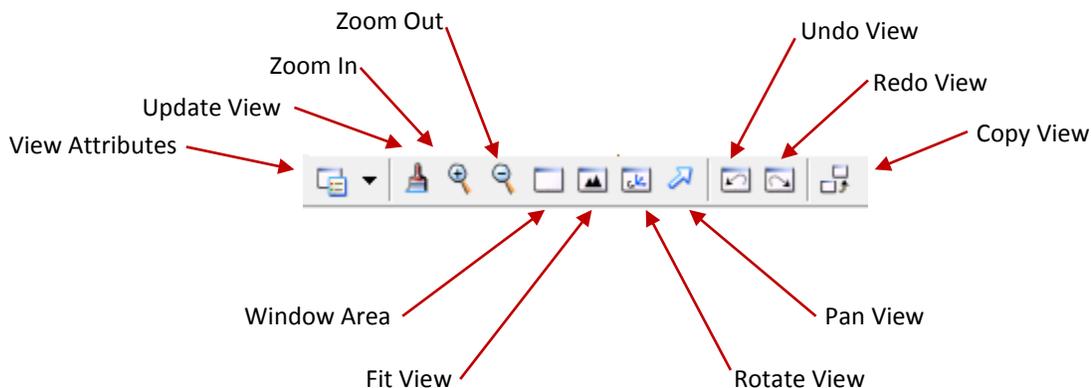
- 1) Position the pointer on one of the view window's resize borders or corners

To change	Position pointer on	The pointer becomes
Height	Top or bottom resize border	 Vertical double arrow
Width	Right or left resize border	 Horizontal double arrow
Height and width simultaneously	Any corner	 Diagonal double arrow

- 2) Press and hold down the data button
- 3) Drag the border or corner to resize the view window as desired

## 2.1 View Commands (View Control Bar)

View controls are used to manipulate a view (the portion of the design displayed in a view window). The most commonly used view controls can be selected in the View Control Bar on the bottom border of each view window. The common tools are listed below.



## MicroStation V8i – MicroStation Windows/Views



**View Attributes** - (See section 2.2 View Attributes)



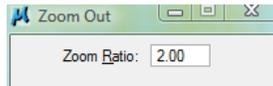
**Update View** – is provided to redraw the display when an operation leaves a view with an incomplete display.



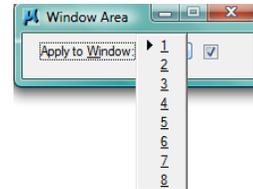
**Zoom In** – Increases a view window’s magnification, making elements appear larger. Zoom ratio sets the factor by which the view is magnified. The range is 1-50. The default setting is 2.



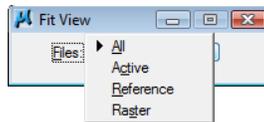
**Zoom Out** – Decreases a view window’s magnification, making elements appear smaller. Zoom ratio sets the factor by which the view’s magnification is decreased. The range is 1-50. The default setting is 2.



**Window Area** – Lets you see the boundaries of a rectangular area in the design to be displayed within a view. Apply to window option, if on, sets the destination view window. The chosen view window opens, if necessary.



**Fit View** – Adjusts the view magnification so that the entire design file is visible in the view.

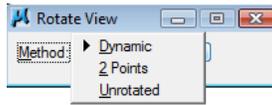


Tool Settings	Effect
Files	<p>Sets the scope of the fit operation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All — Display all displayable elements in the active model file and any attached references.</li> <li>• Active — Display all displayable elements in the active model file.</li> <li>• Reference — Display all displayable elements in attached references, if any.</li> <li>• Raster— Display all displayable elements in attached raster references, if any.</li> </ul>
Expand Clipping Planes	<p>If on, the view's Display Depth is adjusted, along with the view origin and magnification, so that all elements on levels that are on for the view are displayed.</p>

## MicroStation V8i – MicroStation Windows/Views



**Rotate View** – Used to rotate a view.



Tool Settings	Effect
Method	<p>Sets how the view is rotated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Dynamic</b> — Lets you rotate a view interactively about a defined point (default is the center of the view at the active depth). As you rotate the view, the elements rotate to let you see the result of the rotation.</li> </ul> <p>When you select Dynamic, a plus sign (+) appears in the center of the active view to define the center of rotation. Prior to starting any rotation, you can click on the plus sign and move it to redefine the center of rotation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>2 Points</b> — (2D only) Lets you rotate the view by placing two points to define the view's X axis.</li> <li>• <b>3 Points</b> — (3D only) Lets you rotate a view by placing three points to define the view's X and Y axes.</li> <li>• <b>Unrotated</b> — (2D only) Lets you set the view back to an unrotated state.</li> <li>• <b>Top Front Right Isometric Bottom Back Left Right Isometric</b> — (3D only) Lets you set a view to one of the standard view orientations.</li> </ul>



**Pan View** – Used to view a different part of the design without changing the view's magnification.

To pan:

- 1) Select the Pan View control
- 2) Enter a data point to select the view to pan and to define the origin for panning.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the position in the view where you want the origin to be displayed.



**View Previous** – Undoes the last viewing operation (view control operation or view attribute change)

NOTE: To undo a drawing operation, choose Undo (action) from the Edit pull down menu.



**View Next** – Redoes the last undone viewing operation.



**Copy View** – The Copy View control copies the contents of an entire view and its corresponding attributes to other views.

## MicroStation V8i – MicroStation Windows/Views

To copy a view:

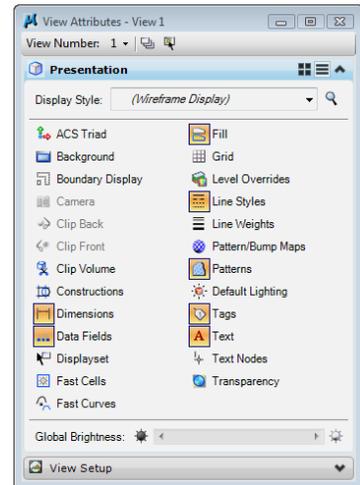
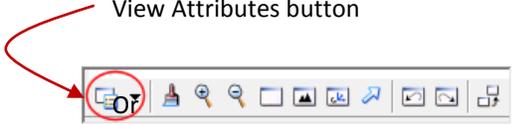
- 1) Select the Copy View control.
- 2) Select the source view
- 3) Select the destination view to which to copy the source view.

## 2.2 View Attributes

**View Attributes** other than level display are set in the View Attributes dialog box. Some determine whether parts of a model and drawing aids will be displayed. Others determine how the DGN file is displayed.

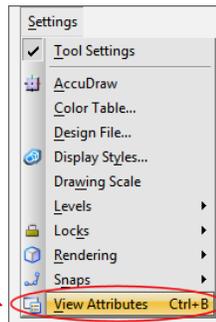
To turn View Attributes **ON** or **OFF**.

From the View Control tool bar, select the View Attributes button



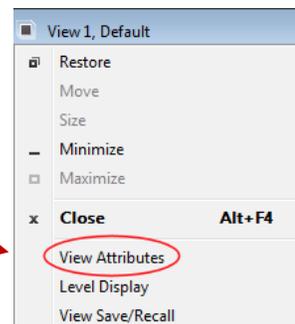
Or

From the Settings Menu, choose View Attributes (or use <CTRL-B>)



Or

From any view window's control menu, choose View Attributes. The View Attributes dialog box opens.



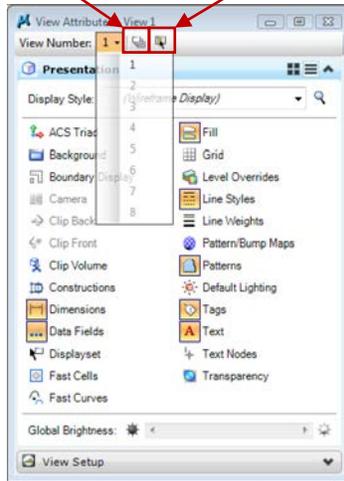
## MicroStation V8i – MicroStation Windows/Views

### Parts of the View Attributes dialog box:

(Only the controls pertinent to MoDOT operations will be covered here. See the Help documentation in MicroStation for explanation of the others). Those denoted with “See MicroStation Help for explanation” should be off.

Applies to open views

Applies to selected views only



**ACS Triad** - See MicroStation Help for explanation

**Background** – See MicroStation Help for explanation

**Boundary Display** – Controls whether the boundaries of a clip volume are displayed for a given view, as well as reference clip boundaries.

**Camera** – See MicroStation Help for explanation

**Clip Back** – See MicroStation Help for explanation

**Clip Front** – See MicroStation Help for explanation

**Clip Volume** – See MicroStation Help for explanation

**Constructions** – If on, construction elements (those with the Class Attribute of Construction) will be displayed.

**Dimensions** – If on, dimension elements are displayed.

**Data Fields** – If on, Enter data fields are displayed.

**Displayset** – See MicroStation Help for explanation

**Fast Cells** – See MicroStation Help for explanation

**Fast Curves** – See MicroStation Help for explanation

## MicroStation V8i – MicroStation Windows/Views

**Fill** – If on, solid, closed elements with a fill type of opaque or outlined, and text characters with a filled font display with color fill (if the fill color is **B**, the fill will appear the same color as the background).

**Grid** – See MicroStation Help for explanation

**Level Overrides** – If on, Level Overrides (previously known as Level Symbology) – the color, line style, and line weight associated with each level – displays in the view, instead of the color, numbered line style, and line weight of each element.

**Line Styles** – If on, elements display with their custom line style. If off, all elements with custom line styles display as a MicroStation solid line style.

**Line Weights** – If on, elements display with their line weight. If off, elements will display with a line weight of zero. (By default, the MoDOT Plotting Routine will briefly turn line weights on to plot, and then turn them off automatically).

**Pattern/Bump Maps** – See MicroStation Help for explanation

**Patterns** – If on, patterned elements display.

**Default Lighting** – See MicroStation Help for explanation

**Tags** – See MicroStation Help for explanation

**Text** – If on, text elements display.

**Text Nodes** – If on, the text node number and a crosshair will be displayed.

**Transparency** – See MicroStation Help for explanation



# Creating Elements

## Section 3

<b>3.0</b>	<b>Setting the Active Elements Attributes</b>	<b>Page 300-302</b>
<b>3.1</b>	<b>Linear Elements Tool Box</b>	<b>Page 302-311</b>
<b>3.2</b>	<b>Polygons Tool Box</b>	<b>Page 311-316</b>
<b>3.3</b>	<b>Ellipses Tool Box</b>	<b>Page 317-319</b>
<b>3.4</b>	<b>Arc Tool Box</b>	<b>Page 319-323</b>
<b>3.5</b>	<b>Points Tool Box</b>	<b>Page 323-329</b>



### 3.0 Setting the Active Element Attributes

When you place an element, the design plane locations of the data points used to draw the element are stored in the design file. In addition, a number of element attributes are stored.

#### Element Symbology

These attributes compose what is called element symbology:

- Color
- Line weight
- Line Style
- Fill Color



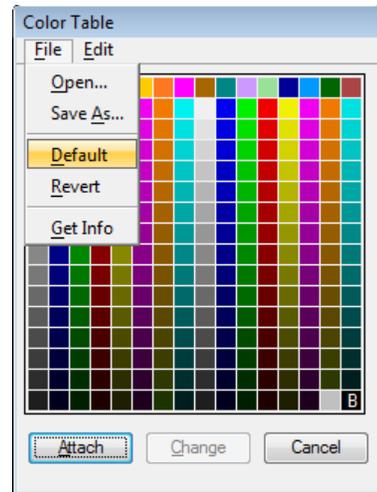
#### Color

MicroStation stores the Active Color and color attribute of each element as a value in the 0-255 range. To display an element in color, MicroStation looks in the active color table for the color that corresponds to the element color value.

The attached color table is automatically activated each time the design file is opened. Each seed design file supplied with MicroStation already has a color table attached.

#### To attach the MoDOT color table:

Open the color table by choosing **Settings > Color Table**. In the color table dialog box select **File > Default**. Then left-click Attach to complete the steps.



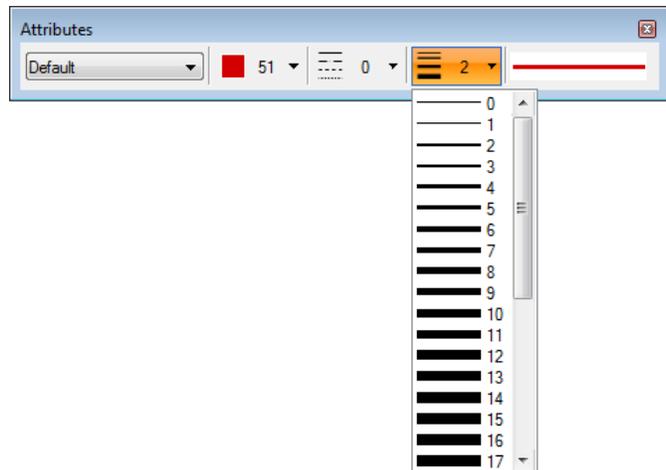
To set the Active Color from the Attributes toolbox, press on the colored tile, and drag across the color palette to select the desired color.

#### Line Weight

MicroStation stores the Active Weight and the Line weight of each element as a value in the 0-31 range.

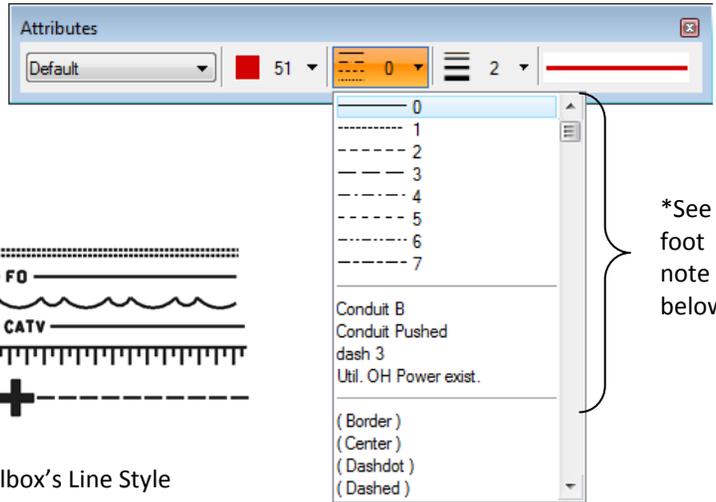
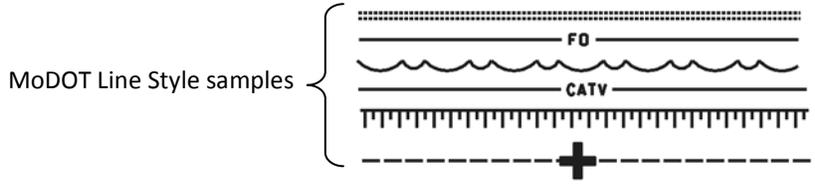
Line Weight can also be set ByCell or ByLevel. If ByCell is selected, when a cell is placed the active line weight is used in place of the line weight that was used when the cell was created. If ByLevel is selected, when an element is placed the active line weight on the active level is used to display the element.

To set the Active Line Weight from the Attributes Toolbox's Line Weight option menu, choose the Desired line weight value.



**Line Style**

MoDOT has numerous Line Styles that can be Accessed through the Settings Manager (see the Chapter on the Settings Manager) or by simply Selecting the Active Line Style from the Attributes Tool bar.



\*See foot note below

To set the Active Line Style from the Attributes toolbox’s Line Style option menu, choose the desired line style.

\*The Line Style option menu has items that correspond to the most recent active custom line styles (up to four) and the eight numbered Standard line styles.

**Other element attributes**

In addition to level, color, line weight, and line style, elements have these attributes:

- Fill (none, opaque, or outline)
- Class (primary or construction)
- The area attribute determines whether a closed element is a solid or a hole.

**Fill**

The fill attribute applies only to closed elements such as circles, ellipses, and polygons. Closed elements completely enclose the area within their boundaries.

By default, a closed element is displayed in a wire frame view by lines in the Active Color that outline the area occupied by the element. The area of the element inside the outline is transparent.

The effects of the fill attribute and the Fill view attributes are summarized in this table:

Fill Type	Fill on	Fill off
None	No fill displayed	No fill displayed
Opaque	Element filled with color of the element	No fill displayed
Outline	Element filled with Active Fill Color or a gradient	No fill displayed

**To set the Active Fill Type and Color**

- 1) Select a tool in the Polygons toolbox.
- 2) From the Fill Type option menu in the Tool Settings window, choose none, opaque, or outline.
- 3) Select the desired color from the Fill Color color palette.

**To turn Fill on or off in a view**

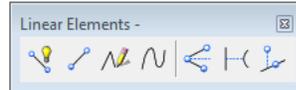
- 1) From the Settings menu, choose View Attributes (or press <CTRL-B).  
Or  
From any view window's control menu, choose View Attributes.  
The View Attributes dialog box opens.
- 2) From the View option menu in the settings box, choose the desired view.
- 3) Click the Fill check box.
- 4) Click Apply or All.

**Class**

By convention, elements with the class attribute of Construction are used as drawing aids.

**Note: Using the Settings Manager will ensure that appropriate attributes are being utilized.**

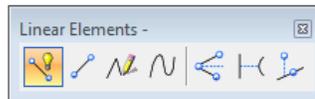
### 3.1 Linear Elements Toolbox



The tools in the Linear Elements toolbox are used to place linear elements.

- **Place SmartLine** – Place a line, line string, shape, arc, or circle, or a combination thereof as a complex element.
- **Place Line** – Place or construct a line.
- **Place Stream Line String** – Place a stream line string (primarily for tracing images when digitizing).
- **Place Point or Stream Curve** – Place a point curve or a stream curve.
- **Construct Angle Bisector** – Constructs a line that bisects an angle defined by three points.
- **Construct Minimum Distance Line** – Constructs a line between two elements at their closest points.
- **Construct Line at Active Angle** – Constructs a line at the Active Angle.

**Place SmartLine**



Used to place a chain of connected line segments and arc segments as individual elements or as a single line string, shape, circle, complex chain, or complex shape element. This tool supports all snap modes.

Rounded vertices can be created by allowing the tool to automatically place an arc tangent to two adjacent line segments. You can also round between two arc segments, or between an arc segment and a line segment. If a rounded vertex cannot be created, a sharp one is created instead. (This is often a more convenient, though less versatile, way of placing an arc than directly drawing one as a segment.)

## MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements



Tool Settings	Effect
Segment Type	<p>Sets the type of segment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lines — Sets line segments</li> <li>• Arcs — Sets arc segments</li> </ul>
Vertex Type	<p>Sets the type of vertex.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sharp</li> <li>• Rounded</li> <li>• Chamfered</li> </ul> <p>If after snapping to the first vertex point and before accepting it, you change Vertex Type, the new setting applies only to the final vertex.</p>
Rounding Radius	<p>(with Vertex Type set to Rounded) If on, sets the arc radius for a rounded vertex. If after snapping to the first vertex point and accepting it, you change Rounding Radius, the new setting applies only to the next radius. If after snapping to the first vertex point but before accepting it, you change Rounding Radius, the new setting applies to the previously placed radius as well as the next radius.</p>
Chamfer Offset	<p>(with Vertex Type set to Chamfered) Sets the two distances required to define a chamfer. Chamfer Offset requires that the two chamfer distances be equal (from the theoretical intersection point).</p>
Join Elements	<p>If on, places segments as a single element. With a tentative snap on the first vertex point, the Closed Element settings appear.</p> <p>If off, places segments as individual elements. The Closed Element settings do not appear, and the individual segments can have different symbologies.</p> <p>Toggleing this setting affects previously defined segments in the chain.</p>
Closed Element	<p>If on, accepting a tentative snap on the first vertex point closes the element. Otherwise, accepting such a tentative snap does not close the element.</p>
Area	<p>(with Closed Element on) Sets the Active Area — Solid or Hole.</p>
Fill Type	<p>(with Closed Element) Sets the Active Fill Type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None (no fill)</li> <li>• Opaque (filled with Active Color)</li> <li>• Outlined (filled with Fill Color)</li> </ul>
Fill Color	<p>(with Closed Element on) Sets the color and optional gradient with which the element is filled:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If Fill Type is Opaque, the fill color is the Active Color.</li> </ul>

### MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If Fill Type is Outlined, the fill color can be different from the Active Color.</li> </ul>
Rotate AccuDraw to segments	(in SmartLine Placement Settings) If on, after you enter line segments, AccuDraw typically rotates its compass such that the x-axis aligns with the line that you just placed. Instead of turning off AccuDraw's "context sensitivity" feature which would stop this aligning behavior in all the tools, the Rotate AccuDraw to segments setting affects only the <i>Place SmartLine</i> tool.
Always start in line mode	(in SmartLine Placement Settings) If on, when you select the <i>Place SmartLine</i> tool, the segment type normally defaults to "Lines," despite the last segment type used. If off, AccuDraw uses the last segment type that you used.

#### To place a chain of connected line segments and arc segments

- 1) Select the *Place SmartLine* tool.
- 2) From the Segment Type option menu, choose the segment type.
- 3) If this is the first segment, enter a data point to position the first vertex.
- 4) Enter data points to define the segment (follow the prompts in the status bar), snapping if necessary to previously defined segments.

Segment Type	Enter data points to	Similar to
Lines	Define endpoints of segments.	None
Arcs	Define center. Define sweep angle.	PlaceArc

To define another segment of the same type, return to step 4. If you snap to the first segment but are not completing a shape or complex shape, turn off Closed Element before accepting the tentative point.

Or

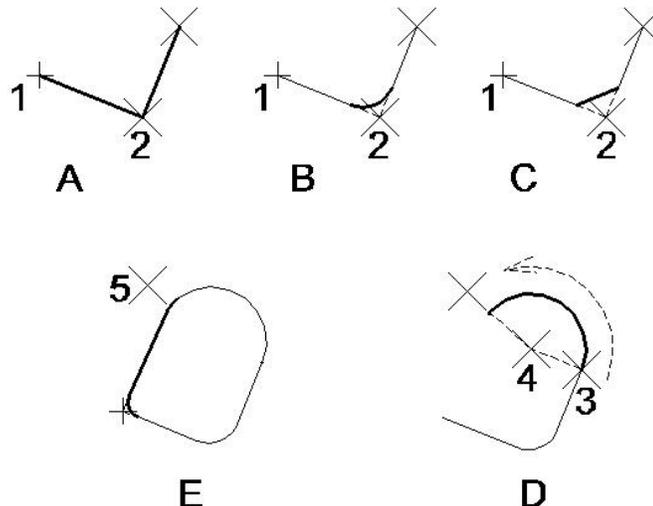
To choose a different type of segment, return to step 2.

Or

To complete a line, line string, arc, or complex chain, Reset.

Or

To complete a shape, circle, or complex shape, snap to the first vertex point, and accept the tentative point.

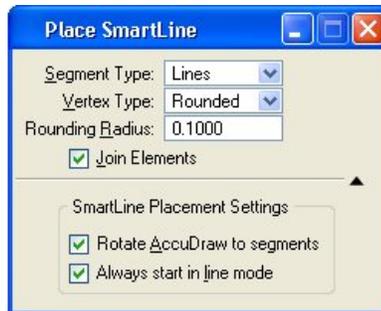


## MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements

The following table explains illustrations of the *Place SmartLine* tool starting at the top left and moving clockwise.

A	Constructing a line string by setting Segment Type to Lines, Vertex Type to Sharp, and entering data points 1 and 2.
B	Setting Vertex Type to Rounded and Rounding Radius to 3.00 causes the active vertex (at the location of data point 2) to be rounded with an arc. (If the data points entered do not allow a round of the specified radius, a sharp vertex is created. Only one vertex at a time is affected by the vertex settings.)
C	Setting Vertex Type to Chamfered and Chamfer Offset to 3.00.
D	After setting Vertex Type back to Rounded and entering data point 3, Segment Type is set to Arcs, and data point 4 is entered to define the arc center. The direction of the arc (clockwise or counterclockwise) is determined by swinging the pointer past the starting point. (The Vertex Type setting is disregarded.)
E	After entering data point 5 to complete the arc segment, setting Segment Type back to Lines and snapping to the starting point tentatively closes the element. To continue without closing the element, turn off Close Element prior to accepting the snap point. (While the snap point is active it is possible to change the vertex settings of the final vertex without affecting other vertices — here they are set to Rounded and 1.50. It is also possible to turn on Fill and change other tool settings related to closed elements while the snap point is active.)

To choose SmartLine Placement Settings, click the arrow in the lower right corner of the tool settings window.



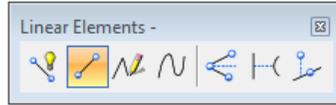
*Place SmartLine* is designed to be used with the versatile drafting aid, AccuDraw.

To negate the last data point — before Resetting (or otherwise completing the placement procedure) — without affecting previously defined segments, choose Undo from the Edit menu. (Choosing Undo after completing the procedure negates the entire chain.)

To combine contiguous open elements of *any type* into a complex chain (open) or complex shape (closed), use the *Create Complex Chain* tool or *Create Complex Shape* tool in the Groups toolbox. (With Join Elements turned on, *Place SmartLine* automatically places multiple segments defined with it as a single element.)

## MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements

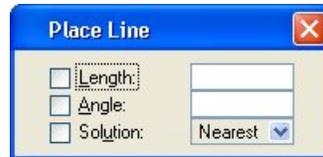
### Place Line



Used to place or construct a line. Where a line is constrained by a snap, such as Tangent or Perpendicular, and more than one result is possible, MicroStation displays icons representing each possible result. In these cases you can use the pointer to select the required solution, or you can use the Solution setting menu to choose the required result.

Alternatively, you can use the keyboard and press the:

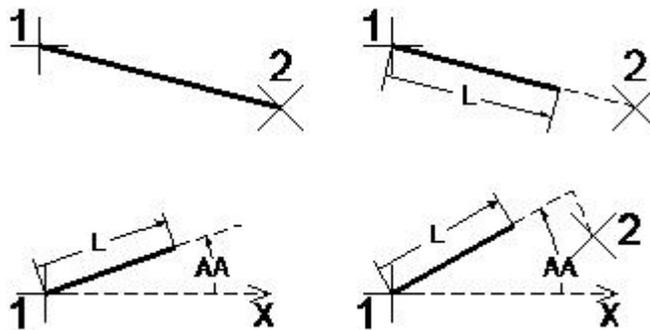
- <Alt> key to switch to the next solution.
- <Ctrl> key to select the nearest (to the pointer) solution.



Tool Settings	Effect
Length	If on, sets the length of the line in working units.
Angle	If on, constrains the line to the Active Angle, which can be keyed in here as well.
Solution	If on, and there is more than one possibility for the next data point, lets you choose a solution from the drop-down menu.

To Place a Line

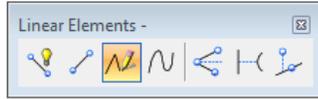
1. Select the *Place Line* tool.
2. Enter a data point to define one endpoint.
3. If necessary, enter a data point to define the other endpoint.



*Place Line. Clockwise from top left: Unconstrained, with Length "L" constrained, with Angle "AA" constrained, with both Length and Angle constrained.*

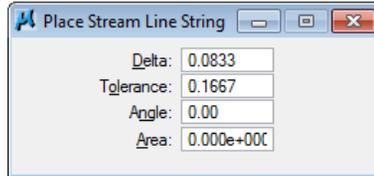
## MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements

### Place Stream Line String



Used to place a stream line string — primarily for tracing images when digitizing. Many vertices can be defined without having to enter a large number of individual data points.

The movement of the pointer is sampled, and data points are recorded based on the tool settings:



Tool Settings	Effect
Delta	Sets the minimum distance, in working units, between sampled points.
Tolerance	Sets the maximum distance, in working units, between recorded data points.
Angle	Sets the angle, in degrees, that when exceeded, causes the last sampled point to be recorded as a data point.
Area	Sets the area that, when exceeded, causes a sampled point to be recorded as a data point.

### To place a stream line string

- 1) Select the *Place Stream Line String* tool.
- 2) Enter a data point to define the origin.
- 3) Move the pointer. A stream of data points is entered without pressing the Data button.
- 4) Reset to end the line string.

A line string element can have a maximum of 5000 vertices. If more than 5000 vertices are defined, a complex chain consisting of one or more line string elements is created.

### Place Point or Stream Curve



Used to place a point or stream curve.

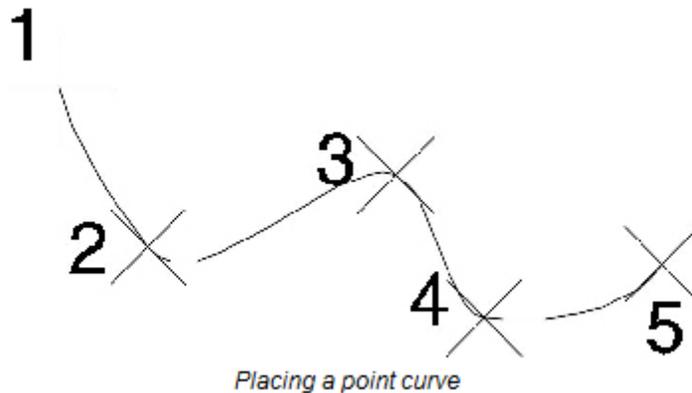
Tool Settings	Effect
Method	Sets how the curve is defined. Points — Traditional MicroStation curve: “Flat” between the first and second and next-to-last and last data points entered. In many cases, B-splines are more accurate and easier to manipulate. Stream — Primarily for tracing images when digitizing. Many vertices can be defined without having to enter a large number of individual data points. The movement of the tablet cursor is sampled and data points are recorded based on the Active Stream Delta, Tolerance, Angle, and Area.
Non-planar	If on and Method is set to Points, a space curve can be placed (the active design must be 3D).
Delta	If Method is Stream, sets the minimum distance, in working units, between sampled points.

## MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements

Tolerance	If Method is Stream, sets the maximum distance, in working units, between recorded data points.
Angle	If Method is Stream, sets the angle, in degrees, that when exceeded, causes the last sampled point to be recorded as a data point.
Area	If Method is Stream, sets the area that, when exceeded, causes a sampled point to be recorded as a data point.

### To place a point curve

- 1) Select the *Place Point or Stream Curve* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Method to Points.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the curve's beginning.
- 4) Enter a second data point for the first curve segment.
- 5) Enter a data point to complete the first curve segment.
- 6) Enter additional data points to add segments to the curve.
- 7) Reset to end the curve.

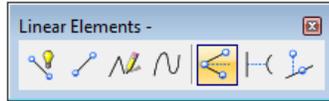


### To place a stream curve

- 1) Select the *Place Point or Stream Curve* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Method to Stream.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the origin.
- 4) Move the pointer. A stream of data points is entered without pressing the Data button.
- 5) Reset to end the curve.

A curve element can have 3 to 5000 vertices. If more than 5000 vertices are defined, a complex chain consisting of one or more curve elements is created.

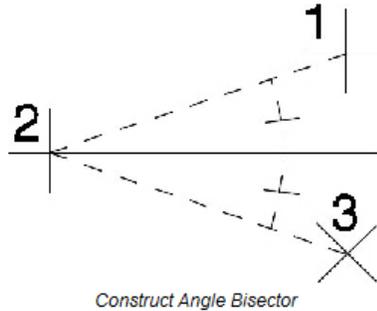
### Construct Angle Bisector



Used to construct a line that bisects an angle defined by three data points.

#### To construct an angle bisector

- 1) Select the *Construct Angle Bisector* tool.
- 2) Enter a data point to define one endpoint of the angle that is to be bisected.
- 3) Enter a second data point to define the vertex of the angle.
- 4) Enter a third data point to define the second endpoint of the angle.

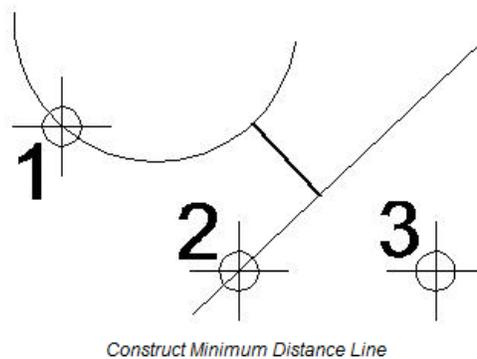


### Construct minimum Distance Line

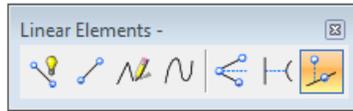
Used to construct a line between two elements at their closest points.

#### To construct a minimum distance line

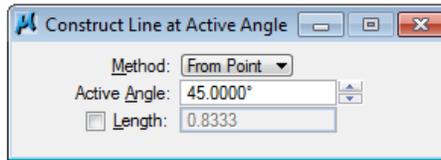
- 1) Select the *Construct Minimum Distance Line* tool.
- 2) Enter a data point to identify the first element.
- 3) Enter a data point to identify the second element.
- 4) Accept the line.



**Construct Line at Active Angle**



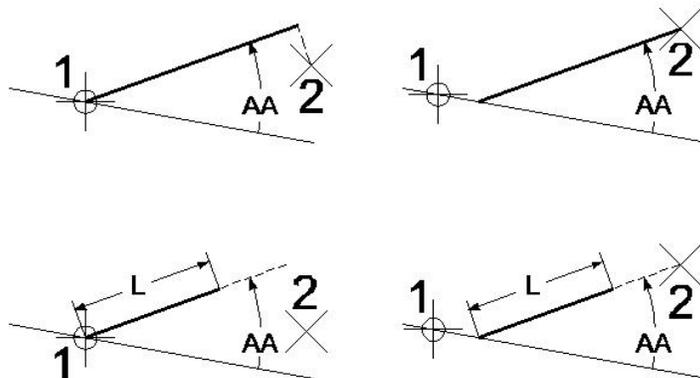
Used to construct a line that intersects a line segment (line or segment of a line string or shape) at the active angle.



Tool Settings	Effect
Method	<p>Sets when the intersection is defined.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Point — The intersection is defined when the element being intersected is identified (step 2).</li> <li>To Point — The intersection is defined by the second data point, as shown in step 3.</li> </ul>
Active Angle	Sets the angle, measured counter-clockwise from the intersected line segment, at which the line is constructed.
Length	If on, the length is constrained to the value that is keyed in the field.

**To construct a line that intersects a line segment at the Active Angle**

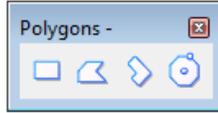
1. Select the *Construct Line at Active Angle* tool.
2. Identify the element to intersect.  
If the Method is From Point, this data point defines the intersection.
3. Enter a data point.  
If Length is off, this data point defines the length.  
If the Method is To Point, this data point defines the intersection.



### MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements

Construct Line at Active Angle (“AA” denotes the Active Angle). Top Left: Method: From Point Length not constrained. Top Right: Method: To Point Length not constrained. Bottom Left: Method: From Point Length constrained. Bottom Right: Method: To Point Length constrained.

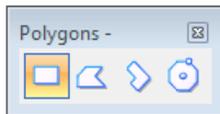
## 3.2 Place Polygons Tool Bar



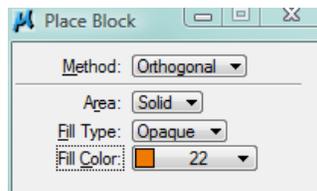
The tools in the Polygons toolbox are used to place planar polygonal shapes.

To	Select in the Polygons toolbox
Place a rectangular shape.	<b>Place Block</b>
Place a polygonal shape.	<b>Place Shape</b>
Place a shape with each segment either perpendicular or parallel to all other segments in the shape.	<b>Place Orthogonal Shape</b>
Place a regular polygon (one with all sides and angles the same).	<b>Place Regular Polygon</b>

### Place Block



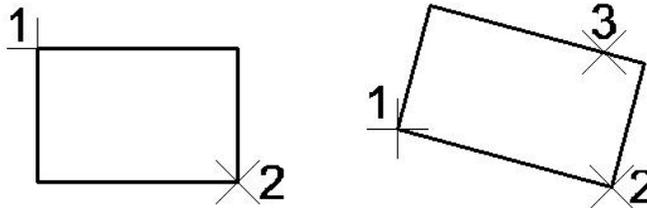
Used to place a block (rectangular shape).



Tool Settings	Effect
Method	<p>Sets how the block's orientation is determined.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Orthogonal — Block is orthogonal to the view in which the first data point is entered.</li> <li>Rotated — Orientation is defined with a data point (step 3).</li> </ul>
Area	Active Area — Solid or Hole.
Fill Type	Active Fill Type — None (no fill), Opaque (filled with Active Color), or Outlined (filled with Fill Color).
Fill Color	<p>Sets the color and optional gradient with which the block is filled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If Fill Type is Opaque, the Active Color is the fill color.</li> <li>If Fill Type is Outlined, the fill color can be different from the Active Color, and the Active Color becomes the outline color.</li> </ul>

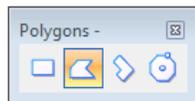
**To place a rectangular shape.**

1. Select the *Place Block* tool.
2. Enter a data point to define one corner.
3. If Method is set to Rotated, enter a data point to define the orientation.
4. Enter a data point to define the corner that is diagonal from the first.

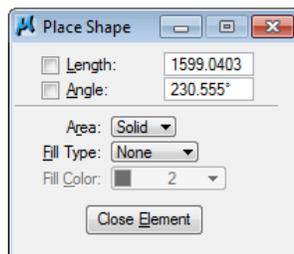


*Place Block. Left: Method set to Orthogonal; Right: Method set to Rotated.*

**Place Shape**



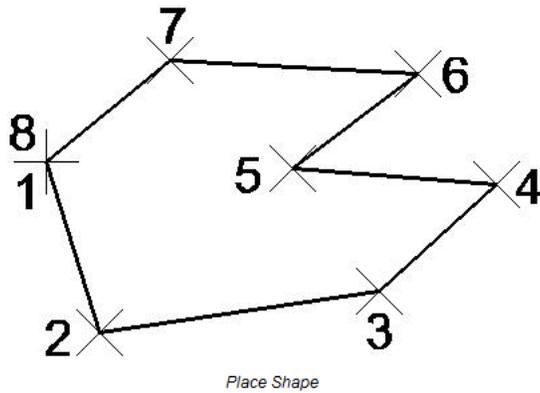
Used to place a polygonal shape by entering a series of data points to define the vertices.



Tool Settings	Effect
Length	If on, sets segment length, in working units.
(Active) Angle	If on, constrains sides to the Active Angle, which can be keyed in.
Area	Active Area — Solid or Hole.
Fill Type	Active Fill Type — None (no fill), Opaque (filled with Active Color), or Outlined (filled with Fill Color).
Fill Color	Sets the color and optional gradient with which the shape is filled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If Fill Type is Opaque, the Active Color.</li> <li>• If Fill Type is Outlined, the fill color can be different from the Active Color.</li> </ul>
Close Element	Closes a shape by connecting the first point with the last point.

**To place a polygonal shape**

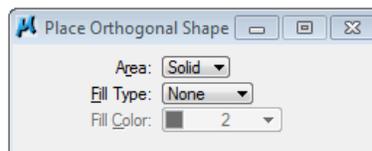
- 1) Select the *Place Shape* tool.
- 2) Enter a data point to define the first vertex.
- 3) Continue entering data points to define the other vertices.
- 4) To close the shape, enter a data point at the location of the first vertex.  
or  
Click the Close Element button.



**Place Orthogonal Shape**



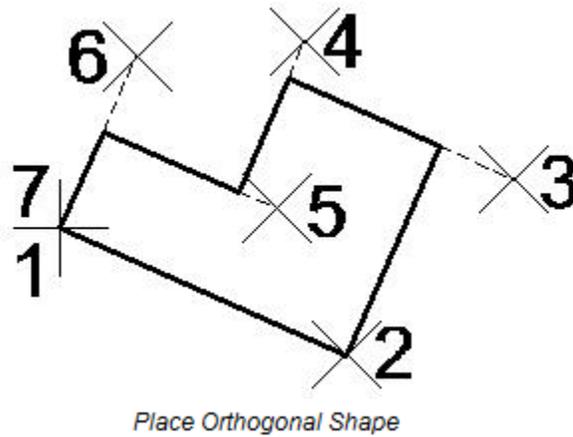
Used to place a non-rectangular shape in which each segment is either perpendicular or parallel to all other segments.



Tool Settings	Effect
Area	Active Area — Solid or Hole.
Fill Type	Active Fill Type — None (no fill), Opaque (filled with Active Color), or Outlined (filled with Fill Color).
Fill Color	Sets the color and optional gradient with which the shape is filled. If Fill Type is Opaque, the Active Color. If Fill Type is Outlined, the fill color can be different from the Active Color.

**To place an orthogonal shape**

- 1) Select the *Place Orthogonal Shape* tool.
- 2) Enter a data point to define the first vertex.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the orientation and second vertex.
- 4) Continue to enter data points to define the other vertices.
- 5) Close the shape by entering the last data point at the location of the first vertex.

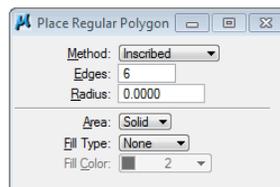


In 3D, the *Place Orthogonal Shape* tool forces the shape vertices to be planar. If non-planar data points are entered, the vertices of the shape are forced to a plane defined by the first three non-collinear vertices.

**Place Regular Polygon**



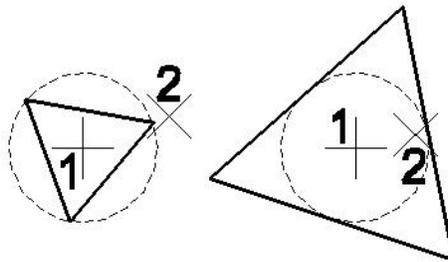
Used to place a regular polygon — a shape with 3-4999 equal length sides and equal angles at each vertex. For example, a square is a four-sided regular polygon.



Tool Settings	Effect
Method	Sets how a polygon is positioned in the design. Inscribed — Polygon is inscribed in an imaginary circle. If the Radius is keyed in, one vertex is placed at center's right. Circumscribed — Polygon is circumscribed in an imaginary circle. If the Radius is keyed in, the midpoint of one side is placed at center's right. By Edge — One edge is defined graphically.
Edges	Sets the number of edges (3-4999).
Radius	If a non-zero value is keyed in, determines the inscribing or circumscribing circle's radius. If zero, the radius is defined with a data point.
Area	Active Area — Solid or Hole.
Fill Type	Active Fill Type — None (no fill), Opaque (filled with Active Color), or Outlined (filled with Fill Color).
Fill Color	Sets the color and optional gradient with which the polygon is filled. If Fill Type is Opaque, the Active Color. If Fill Type is Outlined, the fill color can be different from the Active Color.

**To place a regular polygon with the radius keyed in**

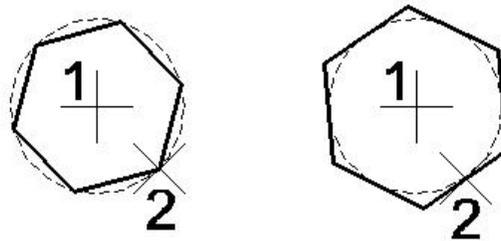
- 1) Select the *Place Regular Polygon* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window's Radius field, key in a non-zero value.
- 3) Set Method to Inscribed or Circumscribed.
- 4) Enter a data point to define the center.
- 5) Enter a data point to define the orientation.
- 6) (Optional) Repeat steps 4 and 5 to place an additional polygon.



*Place Regular Polygon with Radius keyed in. Method is Inscribed (left), Circumscribed (right).*

**To place a polygon with the radius defined graphically**

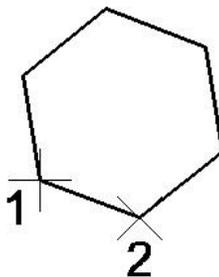
- 1) Select the *Place Regular Polygon* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window's Radius field, key in 0.
- 3) Set Method to Inscribed or Circumscribed.
- 4) Enter a data point to define the center.
- 5) Enter a data point to define the radius of the imaginary circle, the polygon's rotation, and one vertex (inscribed) or the center of one side (circumscribed).
- 6) Return to step 4 to place additional polygons or Reset.



*Place Regular Polygon with the Radius defined by a data point. Method is Inscribed (left), Circumscribed (right).*

**To place a polygon by defining an edge**

- 1) Select the *Place Regular Polygon* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Method to By Edge.
- 3) Enter a data point to define one vertex.
- 4) Enter a data point to define the other vertex of that edge.



*Place Regular Polygon, By Edge.*

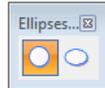
### 3.3 Ellipses Tool box



The tools in the Ellipses toolbox are used to place ellipses and circles.

To	Select in the Ellipses toolbox
Place a circle.	 <i>Place Circle</i>
Place an ellipse, precisely positioning the center and one end of the primary axis.	 <i>Place Ellipse</i>

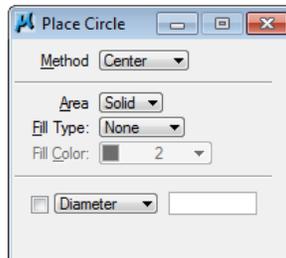
#### Place Circle



Used to place a circle. Where a circle is constrained by a snap, such as Tangent or Perpendicular, and more than one result is possible, MicroStation displays icons representing each possible result. In these cases you can use the pointer to select the required solution.

Alternatively, you can use the keyboard and press the:

- <Alt> key to switch to the next solution.
- <Ctrl> key to select the nearest (to the pointer) solution.

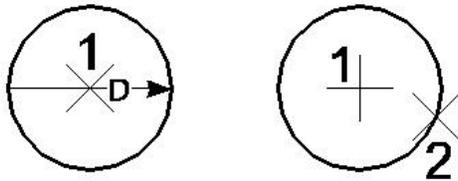


Tool Settings	Effect
Method	Sets the method by which the circle is placed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Center — position by center.</li> <li>• Edge — position by three data points on the circumference.</li> <li>• Diameter — position by diameter's endpoints.</li> </ul>
Area	Active Area — Solid or Hole.
Fill Type	Active Fill Type — None (no fill), Opaque (filled with Active Color), or Outlined (filled with Fill Color).
Fill Color	Sets the color and optional gradient with which the circle is filled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If Fill Type is Opaque, the Active Color.</li> <li>• If Fill Type is Outlined, the fill color can be different from the Active Color.</li> </ul>

Diameter	If on, sets the diameter, in working units (if Method is set to Center or Edge). To instead set the radius, choose Radius from the adjacent option menu.
----------	--

**To place a circle by its center**

- 1) Select the *Place Circle* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Method to Center.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the center
- 4) If Diameter (or Radius) is off, enter a data point to define the radius.

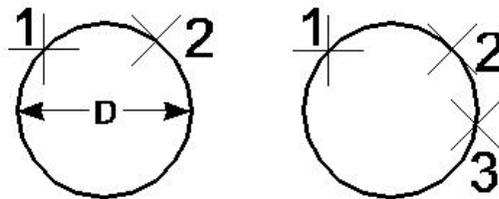


*Place Circle, with Method set to Center. Left: Diameter on; Right: Diameter off.*

**To place a circle by defining three points on its circumference**

- 1) Select the *Place Circle* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Method to Edge.
- 3) Enter a data point on the circumference.
- 4) Enter a second data point on the circumference.

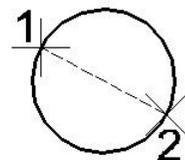
If Diameter (or Radius) is off, enter a third data point on the circumference.



*Place Circle, with Method set to Edge. Left: Diameter on; Right: Diameter off.*

**To place a circle by its diameter**

- 1) Select the *Place Circle* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Method to Diameter.
- 3) Enter a data point to define one endpoint of a diameter.



*Place Circle, with Method set to Diameter*

- 4) Enter a second data point to define the other endpoint of the diameter.

**Place Ellipse**



Used to place an ellipse.



See the MicroStation on-line help documents for more information on the use of this tool.

**3.4 Arc Tool Box**



The tools in the Arcs toolbox are used to place and modify arcs.

To	Select in the Arcs toolbox
Place a circular arc.	 <i>Place Arc</i>
Place an elliptical arc with a sweep angle of 180°.	 <i>Place Half Ellipse</i>
Place an elliptical arc with a sweep angle of 90°.	 <i>Place Quarter Ellipse</i>
Modify a circular arc's radius, sweep angle, and center.	 <i>Modify Arc Radius</i>
Extend or shorten an arc's length (sweep angle).	 <i>Modify Arc Angle</i>
Lengthen or shorten an axis of an arc.	 <i>Modify Arc Axis</i>

**Place Arc**

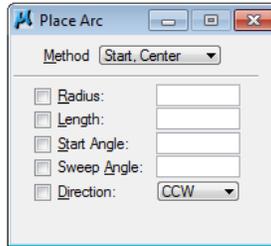


Used to place a circular arc. Arcs can be placed clockwise or counterclockwise. Where an arc is constrained by a snap, such as Tangent or Perpendicular, and more than one result is possible, MicroStation displays icons representing each possible result. In these cases you can use the pointer to select the required solution.

## MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements

Alternatively, you can use the keyboard and press the:

- <Alt> key to switch to the next solution.
- <Ctrl> key to select the nearest (to the pointer) solution.

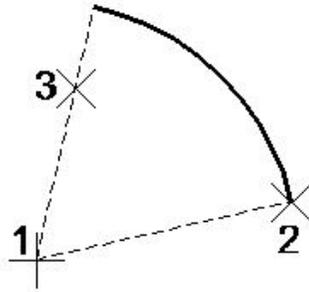


Tool Settings	Effect
Method	<p>Option menu that sets the method to be used for constructing the arc:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start, Center — Arc is constructed by placing its start point, center point, then sweep angle and direction.</li> <li>• Center, Start — Arc is constructed by placing its center point, start point, then sweep angle and direction.</li> <li>• Start, Mid, End — Arc is constructed by placing three points defining its start point, a second point on the arc, and its end point.</li> <li>• Start, End, Mid — Arc is constructed by placing three points defining its start point, end point, and a third point on the arc.</li> </ul>
Radius	If on, sets the radius.
Length	If on, sets the length of the arc.
Start Angle	If on, sets the angle between the view's x-axis and an imaginary line between the start of the arc, and its center.
Sweep Angle	If on, sets the arc's sweep angle.
Direction	<p>If off, you can define the direction of the arc interactively with the pointer. If on, the direction of the arc is controlled by the option menu.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CW — The arc is constrained to a clockwise direction.</li> <li>• CCW — The arc is constrained to a counter-clockwise direction.</li> </ul>

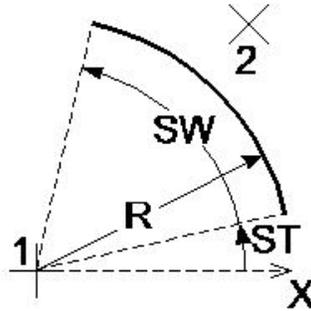
### To place an arc by its center

- 1) Select the *Place Arc* tool.
- 2) Set Method to Center, Start.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the arc's center.  
If Radius, Start Angle, Direction, and either Length or Sweep Angle are all on, the arc is placed.
- 4) If necessary, enter a data point to define the arc's start point.  
If Radius *and* Start Angle are on, this data point defines the arc's sweep angle and direction, and places the arc.  
If Sweep Angle also is on, this data point defines the arc's direction and places the arc.
- 5) If necessary, enter a data point to define the arc's sweep angle and place the arc.

## MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements



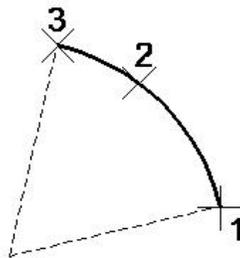
*Place Arc, with Method set to Center, Start and no constraints.  
Enter a data point to define the center (1), the radius/start (2) and the direction/sweep angle (3).*



*Place Arc with Method set to Center, Start, and all constraints on, except direction: Radius <sup>®</sup>, Start Angle (ST),  
Sweep Angle (SW).  
Enter a data point to define the center (1) and the direction (2).*

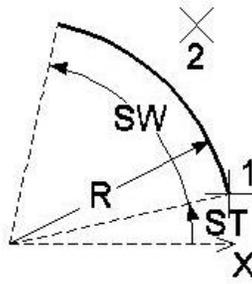
### To place an unconstrained arc by three points

- 1) Select the *Place Arc* tool.
- 2) Set Method to Start, Mid, End.
- 3) With no constraints on, enter a data point to define the arc's beginning.
- 4) Enter a second data point to define a point on the arc.
- 5) Enter a third data point to define the endpoint and sweep angle.



*Place unconstrained arc with Method set to Start, Mid, End.  
Define the start point (1), a point on the arc (2) and the end point (3).*

## MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements



Place Arc, with Method set to Start, Mid, End, and Radius (R), Start Angle (ST) and Sweep Angle (SW) constraints. Place the start point (1) and define the direction (2).

### Place Half Ellipse



See the MicroStation on-line help documents for more information on the use of this tool.

### Place Quarter Ellipse



Used to place an elliptical arc with a sweep angle of 90°.



See the MicroStation on-line help documents for more information on the use of this tool.

### Modify Arc Radius



Used to modify the radius, sweep angle, and center of a circular arc. The endpoints do not move.



See the MicroStation on-line help documents for more information on the use of this tool.

### Modify Arc Angle



Used to extend or shorten the length (sweep angle) of an arc.



See the MicroStation on-line help documents for more information on the use of this tool.



**Modify Arc Axis**

Used to lengthen or shorten an axis of an arc.



See the MicroStation on-line help documents for more information on the use of this tool.

**3.5 Points Tool Box**



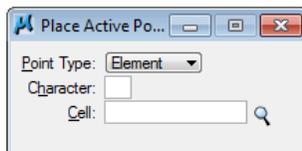
The tools in the Points toolbox are used to place the Active Point.

To	Select in the Points toolbox
Place the Active Point.	 <i>Place Active Point</i>
Construct equally spaced Active Points between two data points.	 <i>Construct Points Between Data Points</i>
Place the Active Point on an element at the point closest to the data point.	 <i>Project Active Point Onto Element</i>
Construct a point at an intersection.	 <i>Construct Active Point at Intersection</i>
Construct a specified number of Active Points along an element between two data points.	 <i>Construct Points Along Element</i>
Construct the Active Point on an element at a keyed in distance.	 <i>Construct Active Point at Distance Along Element</i>

**Place Active Point**



Used to place the Active Point.

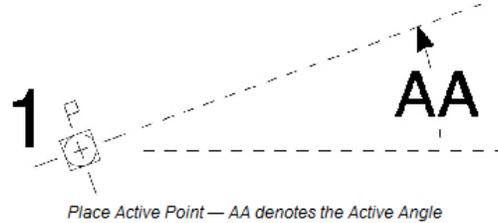


## MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements

Tool Settings	Effect
Point Type	Sets the Active Point type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Element — A zero-length line.</li> <li>• Character — A character.</li> <li>• Cell — A cell.</li> </ul>
Character	If the Active Point Type is Character, the character or symbol.
Cell	If the Active Point Type is Cell, the Active Point Cell.
Browse Cell(s)	Opens the Cell Library dialog for setting an Active Point Cell

### To place the Active Point

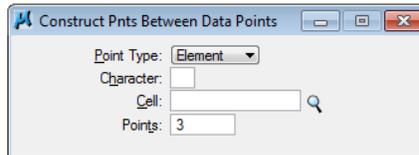
- 1) Select the *Place Active Point* tool.
- 2) Enter a data point to position the Active Point.
- 3) Continue to enter data points to place the same Active Point.



### Construct Points between Data Points



Used to construct a number of equally spaced Active Points between two data points.

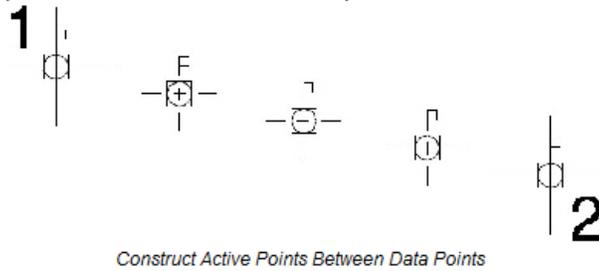


Tool Settings	Effect
Point Type	Sets the Active Point Type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Element — A zero-length line.</li> <li>• Character — A character.</li> <li>• Cell — A cell.</li> </ul>
Character	If the Active Point Type is Character, the character.
Cell	If the Active Point Type is Cell, the Active Point Cell.
Browse Cell(s)	Opens the Cell Library dialog for setting an Active Point Cell.
Points	Sets how many Active Points are constructed.

### To construct Active Points between data points

## MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements

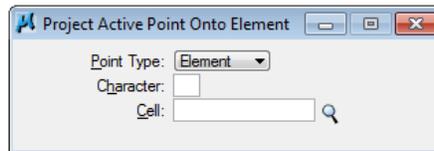
- 1) Select the *Construct Active Points Between Data Points* tool.
- 2) Enter a data point to define the location of the first Active Point.
- 3) Enter a second data point to define the location of the last Active Point.  
The remaining Active Points are equally spaced between the two data points.
- 4) Continue from step 3 to enter additional Active Points from the last data point entered, or Reset to return to step 2.



### Project Active Point onto Element



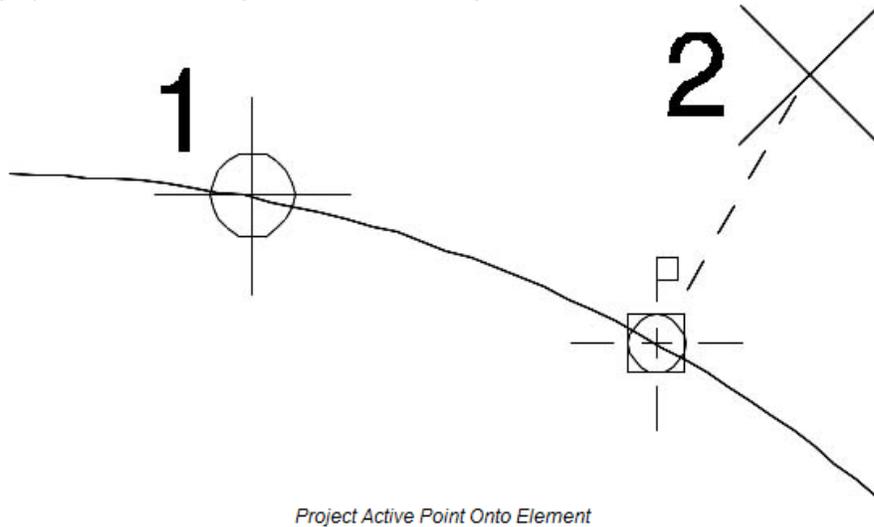
Used to construct the Active Point on an element at the point closest to the data point.



Tool Settings	Effect
Point Type	Sets the Active Point Type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Element — A zero-length line.</li> <li>• Character — A character.</li> <li>• Cell — A cell.</li> </ul>
Character	If the Active Point Type is Character, the character.
Cell	If the Active Point Type is Cell, the Active Point Cell.
Browse Cell(s)	Opens the Cell Library dialog for setting an Active Point Cell.

**To project the Active Point onto an element**

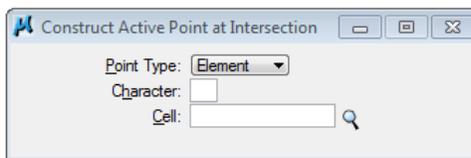
- 1) Select the *Project Active Point onto Element* tool.
- 2) Identify the element.
- 3) Enter a data point to project the Active Point—that is, place it on the element at the point closest to the data point.



**Construct Point at Active Intersection**



Used to construct the Active Point at the intersection of two elements.

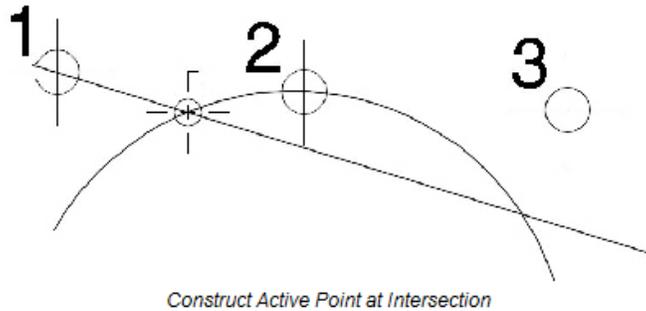


Tool Settings	Effect
Point Type	Sets the Active Point Type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Element — A zero-length line.</li> <li>• Character — A character.</li> <li>• Cell — A cell.</li> </ul>
Character	If the Active Point Type is Character, the character.
Cell	If the Active Point Type is Cell, the Active Point Cell.
Browse Cell(s)	Opens the Cell Library dialog for setting an Active Point Cell.

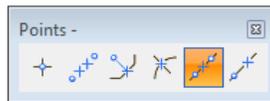
**To construct an Active Point at an intersection**

## MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements

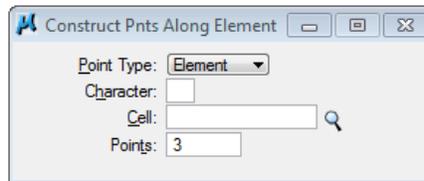
- 1) Select the *Construct Active Point at Intersection* tool.
- 2) Identify the first element close to the desired point of intersection. .
- 3) Identify the second element.
- 4) Accept the construction.



### Construct Points along Element



Used to construct the Active Point a specified number of times along an element between two data points. The distance along the element between each instance of the Active Point is the same.

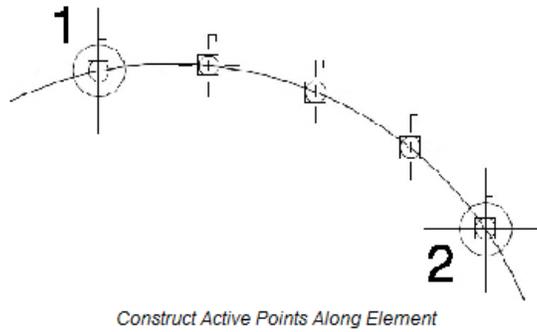


Tool Settings	Effect
Point Type	Sets the Active Point Type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Element — A zero-length line.</li> <li>• Character — A character.</li> <li>• Cell — A cell.</li> </ul>
Character	If the Active Point Type is Character, the character.
Cell	If Active Point Type is Cell, the Active Point Cell.
Browse Cell(s)	Opens the Cell Library dialog for setting an Active Point Cell.
Points	Sets how many Active Points are constructed.

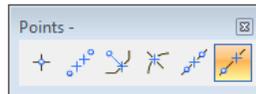
### To construct Active Points along an element

- 1) Select the *Construct Active Points Along Element* tool.
- 2) Identify the element to define one end of the segment on which to construct Active Points.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the other end of the segment.

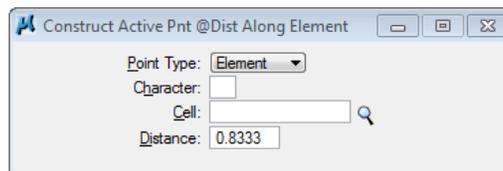
## MicroStation V8i – Creating Elements



### Construct Active Point at Distance along Element



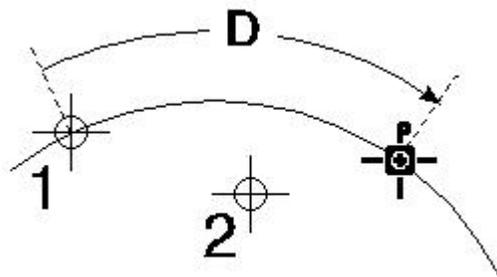
Used to construct the Active Point on an element at a keyed-in Distance from where the element is identified.



Tool Settings	Effect
Point Type	Sets the Active Point Type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Element — A zero-length line.</li> <li>• Character — A character.</li> <li>• Cell — A cell.</li> </ul>
Character	If the Active Point Type is Character, the character.
Cell	If the Active Point Type is Cell, the Active Point Cell.
Browse Cell(s)	Opens the Cell Library dialog for setting an Active Point Cell.
Distance	Sets the distance along the element from the point identified in step <a href="#">2</a> at which the active point is constructed.

**To construct the Active Point at a distance along an element**

- 1) Select the *Construct Active Point at Distance Along Element* tool.
- 2) Identify the element at the point from which to measure the distance.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the direction in which to construct the Active Point.



*Construct Active Point at Distance Along Element*



# Snapping

## Section 4

<b>4.0</b>	<b>Identifying Elements</b>	<b>Page 400</b>
<b>4.1</b>	<b>Snapping to Points on Elements</b>	<b>Page 401-406</b>
<b>4.2</b>	<b>Using AccuSnap</b>	<b>Page 407-410</b>
<b>4.3</b>	<b>AccuSnap and Snap Mode Settings</b>	<b>Page 410-414</b>
<b>4.4</b>	<b>Using Tentative Points (middle mouse button)</b>	<b>Page 414-415</b>



### 4.0 Identifying Elements

Many of the operations that you perform in a design session rely on the ability to identify existing elements. MicroStation provides the tools to perform these tasks. You can quickly and conveniently identify elements, or keypoints on elements, using *tentative snap points* and *data points*.

#### Identifying elements manually (Snaps)

Many tools require that you identify one or more elements. You can do this manually by placing the pointer over the element and entering a data point to highlight the element. If you want to preview which element is being selected, you can enter tentative snap points first, until the correct element highlights, and then accept with a data point.

#### AccuSnap

AccuSnap automates the identification of elements and the placement of tentative snap points, so that you do not have to enter all tentative snap points manually. You can turn on the Enable AccuSnap setting in the General tab of the AccuSnap Settings dialog to automatically locate and snap a tentative point to elements. You simply move the screen pointer to the region of the element that you want to identify and AccuSnap snaps to it automatically.



#### Automatic identification of elements

Separately or in conjunction with AccuSnap, you can enable the capability to automatically identify elements for various tools. This feature is enabled with the Identify Elements Automatically setting in the AccuSnap Settings dialog, General tab.

Like AccuSnap, this setting can greatly reduce the number of button presses required in a design session. Using this setting with the Delete Element tool, for example, you only have to move the screen pointer over the required element in any view and it highlights. A single data point then deletes the highlighted element.

#### Pup-up Info

As part of the automatic element identification functions, you can turn on Pop-up Info in the AccuSnap Settings dialog, General tab. With this setting enabled, when you hover, or pause, the pointer over a highlighted element, information about it appears in a pop-up window.

# MicroStation V8i - Snapping

## 4.1 Snapping to Points on Elements

During a drawing session, much of your time will revolve around joining new elements to existing elements in the design, or modifying existing elements. In manual drafting, this is done by eye. With MicroStation, you can work precisely, letting the system find the exact location of elements, or various points on elements. You can define points relative to other points as well. All this is done using tentative snap points.

### Tentative snap points

A tentative snap point is a form of graphic input that is used to:

- Preview the location of the next data point. Accepting the tentative point location enters the data point there.
- Define a point of reference for entry of the next data point.

It is also possible to snap a tentative point to an existing element (put it directly on the element). Tentative point snapping helps you accurately construct new elements that are either connected to existing ones or precisely related to existing ones.



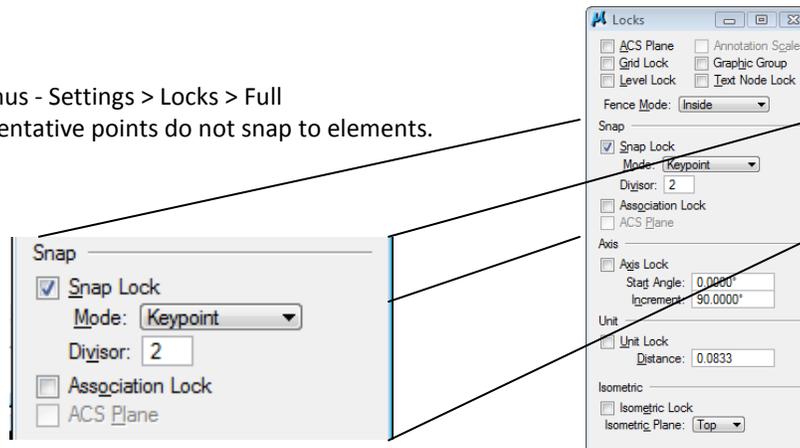
### Snapping to tentative points on elements

Snapping is affected by the Snap Lock settings. There are three basic Snap Lock settings: the snap on/off toggle, the Snap Mode, and the Snap Mode override.

### Snap Lock

Access through pull down menus - Settings > Locks > Full

If the Snap Lock toggle is off, tentative points do not snap to elements.



### Snap Mode

When Snap Lock is on, how a tentative point snaps to an element is set by the active Snap Mode (or the override setting if one is active).



*Snap Mode button bar showing the active snap mode highlighted and speckled. The override snap mode to the right is highlighted in a lighter color.*

# MicroStation V8i - Snapping

## To set the Snap Mode via the status bar

- 1) Place the pointer in the Snap Mode field located on the status bar.
- 2) Click the Data button.  
The pop-up Snap Modes menu opens. A button with a filled black circle is displayed to the left of the active Snap Mode.
- 3) While holding down the <Shift> key, choose the desired Snap Mode by clicking it (or drag the pointer to it and release the Data button).
- 4) Release the <Shift> key.



## Snap modes button bar

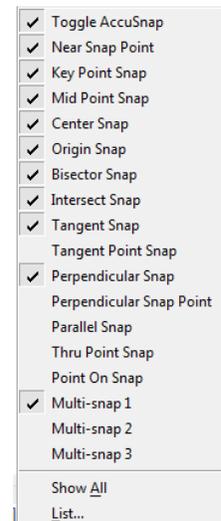
Choosing the “Button Bar” option from the Snap Modes menu via the status bar can launch the Snap Modes button bar.

The appearance of this bar can be customized by right-clicking over any of the snap mode buttons on the button bar and toggling on/off any desired snap modes. If right-clicking over the AccuSnap button or the Multi-Snap button you must choose the “Show/Hide Tools” option from the context menu in order to customize.

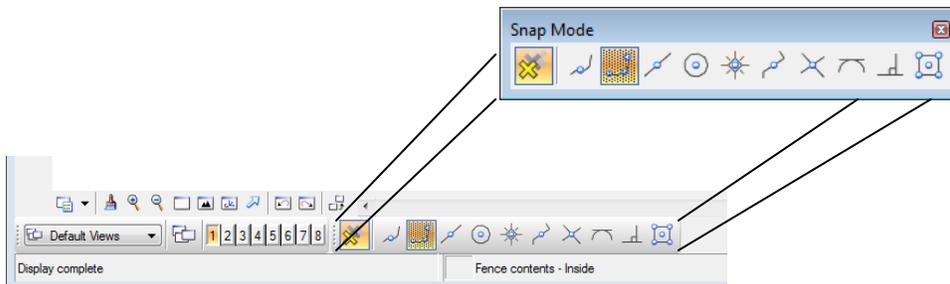
## Snap Modes Bar – Default Configuration



## Snap Modes Bar – Custom Configuration



The Snap Modes button bar is dockable and resizable

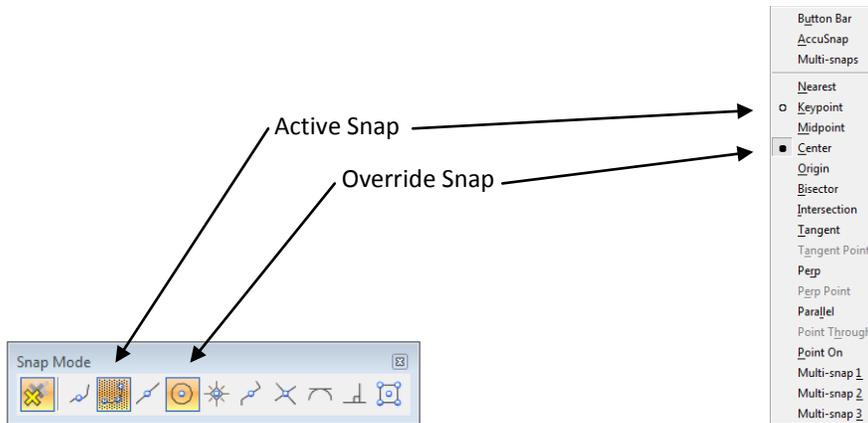


# MicroStation V8i - Snapping

## Snap Mode Override

During a session, you will most likely use a particular Snap Mode for a majority of operations, but occasionally you want to use a different snap mode. At any time, you can override the current Snap Mode by choosing a Snap Mode override. The override mode is effective only for the next operation. After you have snapped the tentative point and accepted the data point (or reset), the override is cancelled and the active Snap Mode becomes effective again.

You can set the Snap Mode override via the Setting menus Snap submenu, the Snap Mode button bar, the pointer's pop-up menu, or the status bar menu. The active Snap Mode, or Snap Mode override, is indicated in the status bar.



### To set the Snap Mode override via the Settings menu

- 1) From the Settings menu Snaps sub-menu, choose the desired Snap Mode override. If you open the menu again, you will see that the snap override has a button with a black filled circle to its left, while the active snap has an open black circle to its left.

### To set the Snap Mode override via the Snap Mode button bar

- 1) From the Settings menu Snaps sub-menu (or the pop-up Snaps menu in the status bar), choose Button Bar. The Snap Mode button bar will open.
- 2) In the button bar, select the desired Snap Mode override. The Snap Mode override's button is highlighted in a light color; while the active Snap Mode's button remains highlighted with speckles.



### To set the Snap Mode override via the Snap Modes pop-up menu

- 1) Place the pointer in any view.
- 2) While holding down the <Shift> key, click the Tentative button.  
The pop-up Snap Modes menu opens. If a Snap Mode override is already in effect, a button with a filled black circle is displayed to the left of the override and an open black circle is displayed to the left of the active Snap Mode. Otherwise, the button with a filled black circle is displayed to the left of the active Snap Mode.
- 3) Release the <Shift> key.
- 4) Choose the desired Snap Mode override by clicking it (or drag the pointer to it and release the Tentative button).

## MicroStation V8i - Snapping

### To set the Snap Mode override via the status bar

- 1) In the status bar, click the Snap Mode indicator.  
The pop-up Snap Modes menu opens.
- 2) Choose the desired Snap Mode override by clicking it (or drag the pointer to it and release the Data button).

### Effect of Snap Modes

With Snap Lock on, each snap mode setting has an effect on tentative snap points. When you enter a tentative point on or near an element, the following occurs:

Snap Mode: (or override)	Tentative point snaps to:
Nearest	Point on the element nearest to the pointer.
Keypoint	The nearest of the Element keypoints on the element. This is the most generally useful of the snap modes.
Midpoint	Midpoint of the segment of the element closest to the pointer.
Center	Center of elements (such as circles, arcs, text, and so on) with centers. Centroid of other elements, including shapes, line strings, and B-splines.
Origin	Origin of a cell or text, centroid of a B-spline, the first data point in a dimension element, or the first vertex of a line, multi-line, line string, or shape.
Bisector	Midpoint of an entire line string, multi-line, or complex chain, rather than to the midpoint of the closest segment. It also snaps to the midpoint of a line or arc.
Intersection	Intersection of two elements. (Two tentative points are required, although more can be used.) The first tentative point snaps to one element, and that element is highlighted. The second tentative point snaps to another element, and the two segments used to find the intersection of the two elements are displayed in dashed lines. (If the two elements do not actually intersect, but projections of the elements would intersect, the segments include projections of the elements to the intersection.) You can continue snapping until the desired intersection is found; the last two tentative points define where the intersection snap lies.
Tangent	An existing element — the edge of the element being placed is constrained to be tangent to an existing element. The tentative point dynamically slides along the element to maintain the tangency as you move the pointer to finish placing the element.
Tangent From	An existing element — the edge of the element you are placing is constrained to be tangent to the existing element at the tentative point. The tentative point does not move dynamically as you move the pointer, but is locked in place.
Perpendicular	An existing element — the line you are placing is constrained to be perpendicular to the element — the tentative point slides dynamically along the element in order to maintain the perpendicularity as you move the pointer to finish placing the element.
Perpendicular From	An existing element — the line you are placing is constrained to be perpendicular to the element at the tentative point. The tentative point doesn't move dynamically as you move the pointer, but is locked in place.
Parallel	An existing element, but does not define a point through which the line you are placing will pass. Instead, when you accept the tentative point, the line you then place is parallel to the line to which the tentative point was snapped.
Through Point	Defines a point through which the element you are placing (or an extrapolation of it) must pass.
Point On	To nearest element, as follows: When entering <i>second or later data point</i> , constrains the next data

## MicroStation V8i - Snapping

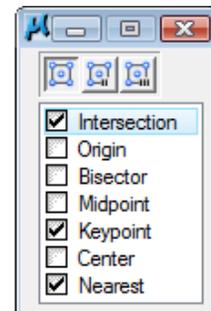
	point to lie on it (if it is a closed element) or anywhere on the line on which it lies (if it is a linear element). When entering <i>first data point</i> , constrains the element being placed to extend to that element (or the line on which it lies) from the second data point.
Multi-snap1	Multi-snap mode 1 by default is Intersection, Keypoint, Nearest.
Multi-snap2	Multi-snap mode 2 by default is Intersection, Keypoint, Center.
Multi-snap3	Multi-snap mode 3 by default is Midpoint, Intersection, Center.

### Multi-Snaps

MicroStation gives its users the ability to use multiple snap functions in conjunction with each other through the Multi-Snap tool. There are three separate multi-snap modes that can be set up to utilize any of the available snap functions. When a multi-snap is active, and you move the pointer near an element with AccuSnap enabled or you enter a tentative snap point, MicroStation sequentially processes the list of snaps defined for that multi-snap. Simply dragging the entry to the desired location in the list and dropping it off in the new position can change the order in which these functions are processed.



To access the multi-snap dialog box, you can choose The Snaps>Multi-Snaps option from the Settings menu at the top of the MicroStation screen, choose the “Multi-Snaps” option from the Snaps menu via the Information/Status bar at the bottom of the MicroStation screen, or you can right-click over the Multi-Snap button on the Snap Modes button bar and select the “Properties” option.

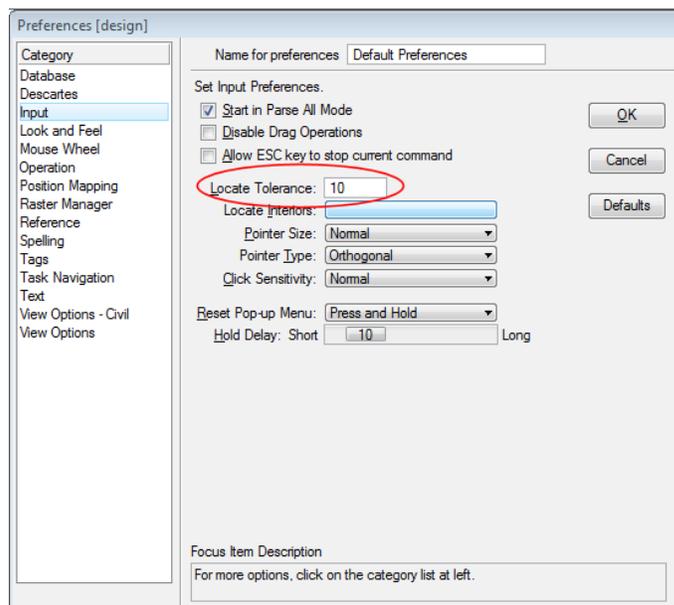


### Snapping to cells

A cell is a small drawing, usually of a frequently used or complex symbol, notation, or detail created in MicroStation. To snap to the origin of a cell, set the Snap Mode to Origin. When the Snap Mode is not set to origin, tentative points snap to component elements within the cell. For example, when the Snap Mode is Keypoint, tentative points will snap to a keypoint on the line, not the origin of the cell.

### Locate Tolerance

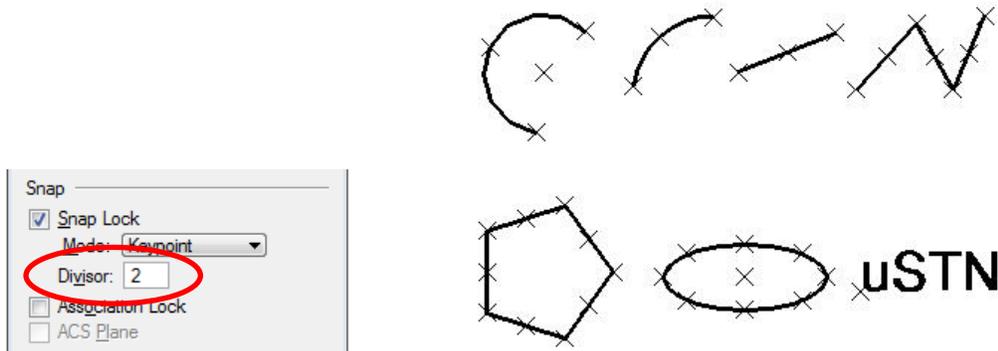
How close the pointer must be to an element in order to snap a tentative point to it depends upon the Locate Tolerance. Locate Tolerance is a user preference that is adjustable in the Input category of the Preferences dialog box (Workspace menu > Preferences). Tolerance values are set in screen resolution (pixels).



## MicroStation V8i - Snapping

### Element Key Points

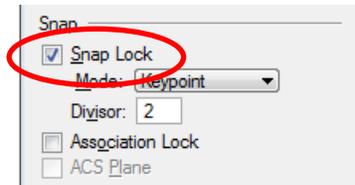
Key Points are regularly spaced points on an element to which a tentative point will snap when the Snap Mode (or override) is set to Key Point. The number of key points on each segment of a linear element (line, line string, or shape) is one greater than the Snap Lock Divisor setting. If Snap Lock Divisor is set to 2 (as in all seed files supplied with MicroStation), key points are shown in the figure below. The midpoint of a linear element is a key point only if the Snap Lock Divisor is an even number.



*Element keypoints (with Snap Lock Divisor set to 2 and the text element left bottom justified).  
Clockwise from upper left: Arc, arc, line, line string, text, ellipse, and shape.*

### To enable snapping

- 1) From the Settings menu Locks submenu (or the pop-up Locks Menu in the status bar) choose Full.  
The Locks dialog box opens.
- 2) Turn on Snap Lock.



## MicroStation V8i - Snapping

### 4.2 Using AccuSnap

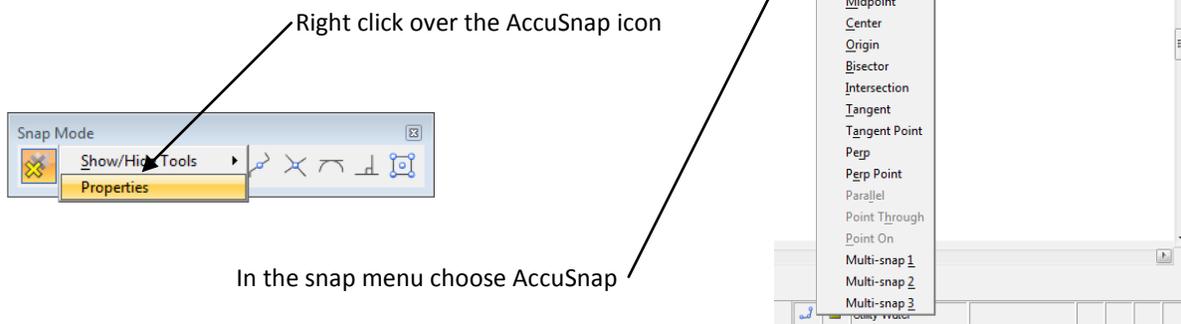
AccuSnap provides tentative snap functionality, which may be used stand-alone or in combination with AccuDraw. It provides graphical assistance — a “smart” pointer — for snapping to elements. This automates the tentative snap process, virtually eliminating the need to press the tentative snap button, thus reducing the number of “button presses” required during a design session. When in AccuSnap mode, you simply select a tool and move the pointer over the elements, letting AccuSnap find and display the nearest tentative snap point for you. When the correct snap point is displayed, you enter a data point to accept. If required you can adjust various AccuSnap settings to configure AccuSnap for your mode of operation.

AccuSnap complements the standard, or manual, method of placing tentative points. That is, even with AccuSnap enabled, you can still use the standard tentative snap method (pressing the tentative button). Additionally, when you are using AccuSnap in conjunction with AccuDraw, you can use AccuDraw shortcuts, which include <HU> to suspend AccuSnap for the current tool operation, and <HS> to toggle AccuSnap on and off. Alternatively, if the elements are selected first and then the manipulation tool, you can press (and hold down) <Ctrl + Shift> to temporarily toggle AccuSnap on or off, as required.

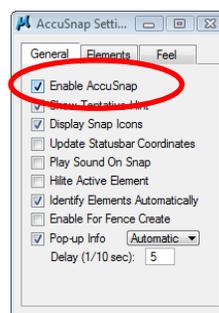
#### Turning AccuSnap On/Off

AccuSnap can be turned On or Off:

- 1) Access the AccuSnap Settings dialog box



- 2) In the AccuSnap Settings dialog box  
(Enable AccuSnap setting).



- 3) In the Snap Mode button bar (clicking the Toggle AccuSnap button).



- 4) By pressing and holding down the <CTRL + SHIFT> keys, which temporarily toggles AccuSnap on or off. Releasing the <CTRL + SHIFT> keys returns AccuSnap to its previous setting

# MicroStation V8i - Snapping

## AccuSnap settings

AccuSnap works in conjunction with the current Snap Mode setting and, for the most part, is similar in operation to the manual method of tentative snap points — minus the button presses. How close to an element or a keypoint that the pointer must be, before AccuSnap finds it, is governed by the Locate Tolerance setting in the Input category of the Preferences dialog. These settings can be further refined by the following settings in the AccuSnap Settings dialog's Feel tab:

Snap Tolerance – for locating elements.

Keypoint Sensitivity – for locating snap points

The Snap Mode setting still controls location of snap points on elements.

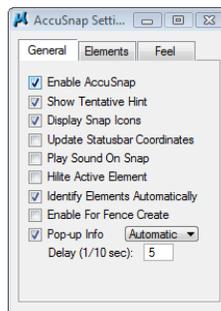


*With both Show Tentative Hint, and Display Icon turned on.*

*Left: With the pointer within the snap tolerance of an element, AccuSnap shows a prospective snap point with a crosshair (+) along with the current snap mode icon.*

*Right: When the pointer is within the Keypoint Sensitivity range, AccuSnap highlights the element and displays the tentative snap point as a heavy weight "X". A data point at this stage will be placed at the tentative snap point location.*

Settings in the AccuSnap Settings dialog box are divided into three tabbed sections – General, Elements, and Feel.

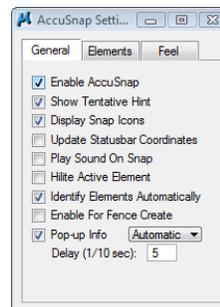


## General Settings

Contains controls to enable/disable AccuSnap, and to define the way it operates.

### Enable AccuSnap

If on (default), AccuSnap is automatically enabled when you start MicroStation.



## MicroStation V8i - Snapping

### Show Tentative Hint

If on, (default) and the pointer is within the range of the Snap Tolerance, AccuSnap displays the nearest snap point with a cross hair.

### Display Snap Icons

If on, (default) AccuSnap displays the icon of the current snap mode at the snap point.

### Update Status bar Coordinates

If on, the coordinate readout in the status bar updates for each tentative snap point. That is, each time AccuSnap snaps to a point on an element, or when you press the tentative snap button, the coordinates for the snap point appear in the status bar.

### Play Sound on Snap

If on, a sound is played when you snap to an element.

### Highlight Active Element

If on, AccuSnap highlights the active element as soon as the pointer is within the range of the Snap Tolerance.

### Identify Elements Automatically

If on, elements are identified automatically as you pass the pointer over them.

### Enable for Fence Create

If on, AccuSnap is active when placing a fence.

### Pop-up Info

If on, and you pause or hover the pointer over a highlighted element, a pop-up displays information about the element. An option menu lets you define when this information appears.

Automatic — Pop-up information appears whenever you pause or hover the pointer over a highlighted element.

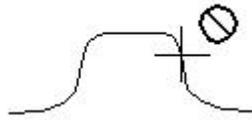
Tentative — Pop-up information appears only when you manually snap a tentative point to an element and then hold the pointer over any part of the highlighted element.

### Element Settings

Controls in this group let you control whether or not AccuSnap snaps to Curves, Dimensions, Text, and/or Meshes. When snapping is turned off for any of these, AccuSnap will not snap to the particular element, but it will display an icon to show that the element is being ignored.

Even if snapping to an element is turned off in AccuSnap's settings, you can still snap to the element manually with a tentative snap point.

## MicroStation V8i - Snapping



With Curves turned off, AccuSnap displays an icon to show that the B-spline curve is being ignored.

### Feel Settings

Using the controls in the Feel group of the AccuSnap settings you can set AccuSnap's sensitivity when snapping to elements, as follows:

- 1) Keypoint sensitivity — lets you adjust how close the screen pointer must be, to the snap point, before AccuSnap snaps to it.
- 2) Stickiness — lets you adjust the sensitivity of AccuSnap to the current element. When you have snapped to an element, as long as you move the pointer along that element, the snap system will have a preference for that element over other elements that may have snap points closer to the pointer. The further to the right (+) that you set the Stickiness slider, the further away from the element the pointer may be before AccuSnap will snap to another element.
- 3) Snap Tolerance — lets you adjust how close the pointer must be to an element in order to snap a tentative point to it.

## 4.3 AccuSnap and Snap Mode settings

AccuSnap enhances many of the standard snap mode settings by displaying and automatically snapping to the next tentative snap point as you move the pointer over an element. With AccuSnap enabled, you very rarely need to enter a tentative snap point manually. In the following examples, it is assumed that a tool has been selected and that *Show Tentative Hint* and *Display Snap Icon* are enabled (the default settings).

### Near Snap Point



When working with this snap mode, manually, you move the pointer to the position that you want the snap to be located and then enter a tentative snap point, followed by a data point to accept the location. If the location is incorrect, you move the pointer along the element and enter another tentative snap point.

With AccuSnap, as you move the pointer to the required element, it highlights and the proposed tentative snap point marker displays. To position the “nearest” snap point, you simply move the pointer along the highlighted element, until the required location is reached, and enter a data point.

### To select a near snap point (with AccuSnap)

- 1) Select Near Snap Point mode
- 2) With AccuSnap enabled, move the pointer over the required element.  
The element highlights, and AccuSnap displays the nearest tentative snap point.
- 3) Move the pointer, and tentative snap point, along the element to the required position.
- 4) Enter a data point to accept the tentative snap point.

## MicroStation V8i - Snapping

### Key Point Snap



When you move the pointer over an element in the design, AccuSnap displays the nearest keypoint snap with the crosshair hint, or the tentative point marker if the pointer is within the Keypoint Sensitivity range. To select a different keypoint, simply move the pointer to the required region of the element and AccuSnap will again show you where the nearest keypoint is located.

### To select a keypoint snap point (with AccuSnap)

- 1) Select KeyPoint Snap mode.
- 2) With AccuSnap enabled, move the pointer over the required element. AccuSnap displays the nearest keypoint snap.
- 3) If necessary, using the tentative hint as a guide, move the pointer toward the required snap point until the tentative snap point marker displays.
- 4) Enter a data point to accept the tentative snap point.

### Mid Point Snap



When you move the pointer over an element, AccuSnap displays the MidPoint Snap location with the crosshair hint, or the tentative snap point marker if the pointer is within the Keypoint Sensitivity range of the midpoint.

### To select the midpoint of an element (with AccuSnap)

- 1) Select MidPoint Snap mode.
- 2) Move the pointer over the required element. AccuSnap displays the element's midpoint location.
- 3) If necessary, using the tentative hint as a guide, move the pointer toward the required snap point until the tentative snap point marker displays.
- 4) Enter a data point to accept the tentative snap point.

### Center Snap



When Center Snap is active, the pointer does not have to be close to the actual center point of the element, whether it be a line string, curve, arc, or circle. As soon as you place the pointer over an element, AccuSnap highlights the element and displays the tentative snap point marker at its center point.

### To select the center point of an element (with AccuSnap)

- 1) Select Center Snap mode.
- 2) Move the pointer over the required element. The element highlights and AccuSnap displays the tentative snap point marker at the center point of the element.
- 3) Enter a data point to accept the tentative snap point.



## MicroStation V8i - Snapping

### Tangent Snap and Tangent Point Snap

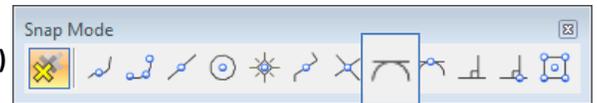


(For AccuSnap, applies only when using the *Place SmartLine* tool) The *Fixed Point for Perp. /Tan. From* setting in the General tab of the AccuSnap settings determines whether Tangent Snap or Tangent Point Snap is used when either snap is active.

When you are placing a SmartLine with either Tangent Snap, or Tangent Point Snap, as the active snap mode, setting Fixed Point for Perp. /Tan. From to:

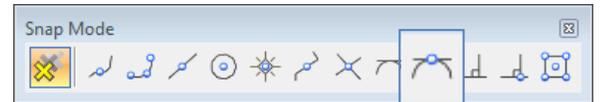
- On — sets the snap mode to Tangent Point Snap.
- Off — sets the snap mode to Tangent Snap.

### To use Tangent Snap with the Place SmartLine tool (with AccuSnap)



- 1) In the AccuSnap Settings dialog, General tab, turn off Fixed Point for Perp. /Tan. From.
- 2) Select either Tangent Snap, or Tangent Point Snap, as the active snap mode.
- 3) Move the pointer over the curved element, so that it is highlighted.
- 4) Enter a data point to accept the element.  
As you move the pointer, the SmartLine segment is restricted to remaining at a tangent to the selected curve.

### To use Tangent Point Snap with Place SmartLine tool (with AccuSnap)



- 1) In the AccuSnap Settings dialog, General tab, turn on Fixed Point for Perp. /Tan. From.
- 2) Select either Tangent Snap, or Tangent Point Snap, as the active snap mode.
- 3) Move the pointer over the curved element, so that it highlights and AccuSnap displays the tentative point.
- 4) Enter a data point to accept the tentative snap point.  
The SmartLine segment is restricted to being at a tangent from the highlighted element, at the accepted snap point.

### Perpendicular Snap and Perpendicular Snap Point



(For AccuSnap, applies only when using the *Place SmartLine* tool) The *Fixed Point for Perp. /Tan. From* setting in the General tab of the AccuSnap settings determines whether Perpendicular Snap or Perpendicular Snap Point is used when either snap is active.

When you are placing a SmartLine with Perpendicular Snap, or Perpendicular Snap Point, as the active snap mode, setting Fixed Point for Perp. /Tan. From to:

- On — sets the snap mode to Perpendicular Snap Point.
- Off — sets the snap mode to Perpendicular Snap.

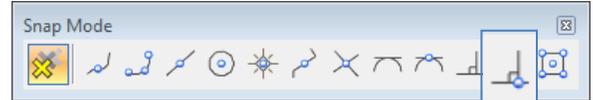
## MicroStation V8i - Snapping

### To use Perpendicular Snap with the Place SmartLine tool (AccuSnap)



- 1) In the AccuSnap Settings dialog, General tab, turn off Fixed Point for Perp. /Tan. From.
- 2) Select either Perpendicular Snap, or Perpendicular Snap Point, as the active snap mode.
- 3) Move the pointer over the element, so that it is highlighted.
- 4) Enter a data point to accept the element.  
As you move the pointer, the SmartLine segment is restricted to remaining perpendicular to the selected element.

### To use Perpendicular Snap Point with the Place Line tool (with AccuSnap)



- 1) In the AccuSnap Settings dialog, General tab, turn on Fixed Point for Perp. /Tan. From.
- 2) Select either Perpendicular Snap, or Perpendicular Snap Point, as the active snap mode.
- 3) Move the pointer over the element, so that it highlights, and AccuSnap displays the tentative point.
- 4) Enter a data point to accept the tentative snap point.  
The SmartLine segment is restricted to being perpendicular to the highlighted element, from the accepted snap point.



## 4.4 Using Tentative Points (middle mouse button)

Tentative points let you see where the next data point will be placed before you are committed. They also let you define a data point relative to the tentative point. You can specify the distance from the tentative point using a key-in or, better still, using AccuDraw and its input window. The exact location of tentative points, on elements, are determined by the current Snap Mode, or snap override, setting.

You can enter tentative snap points manually, or you can turn on AccuSnap and let it display tentative points interactively as you move the pointer over elements in a view. With AccuSnap active, when the Tentative Point marker displays, you can enter a data point to accept it. Even when AccuSnap is active, you can enter a tentative snap point manually, by pressing the Tentative button on your system's graphical input device.

### To enter a tentative point (manually) to preview a data point

- 1) Select the required Snap Mode.
- 2) Position the pointer on the location at which you plan to enter a data point.
- 3) Press the Tentative button.  
The tentative point coordinates are shown in the status bar. Large crosshairs are displayed. The intersection of the lines in the crosshairs marks the location of the tentative point. If you snap to an element, the element is highlighted.

## MicroStation V8i - Snapping

### To accept a tentative point's location and enter a data point there

- 1) With the tentative point location displayed, and the pointer in any view, press the Data button.
- 2) Press the Data button.

When using AccuSnap, to snap to elements, only one button press is required. You let AccuSnap find and display the tentative snap point.

### Using AccuSnap to view a tentative point location and place a data point there

- 1) With AccuSnap active, select the required Snap Mode.
- 2) Move the pointer to the required element and then position the pointer so that the Tentative Point marker (a heavy line weight "X") displays.
- 3) Enter a data point to accept the tentative point and place the point.

### To manually snap a tentative point to an element at a keypoint

- 1) Select the required Snap Mode.
- 2) Position the pointer on or near the desired keypoint.
- 3) Press the Tentative button.  
If the tentative point successfully snaps to the element, the element is highlighted.

### To snap a tentative point to an element when more than one element lies at the desired snap point

- 1) Enable snapping.
- 2) Position the pointer on or near the desired point.
- 3) Press the Tentative button.  
Of the elements at the desired snap point, a tentative point will snap to the element that was placed in the design earliest. That element is highlighted.
- 4) (Optional) If the desired element was not snapped to (highlighted), press the Tentative button again.  
Of the remaining elements at the desired snap point (the ones to which a tentative point has not snapped), a tentative point snaps to the element that was placed in the design earliest. That element is highlighted.
- 5) (Optional) Repeat step 4 until the desired element is highlighted.

## MicroStation V8i - Snapping

# Working with AccuDraw

## Section 5

<b>5.0</b>	<b>Working with AccuDraw</b>	<b>Page 500-503</b>
<b>5.1</b>	<b>AccuDraw's Settings dialog box</b>	<b>Page 503-507</b>
<b>5.2</b>	<b>Controlling and using AccuDraw</b>	<b>Page 507-511</b>
<b>5.3</b>	<b>AccuDraw and the Popup Calculator</b>	<b>Page 511</b>
<b>5.4</b>	<b>AccuDraw's shortcut key-ins</b>	<b>Page 512-515</b>
<b>5.5</b>	<b>Smart Lock</b>	<b>Page 515-517</b>
<b>5.6</b>	<b>Unit Roundoffs and their effect on AccuDraw</b>	<b>Page 517-518</b>
<b>5.7</b>	<b>Moving the AccuDraw compass</b>	<b>Page 518-519</b>



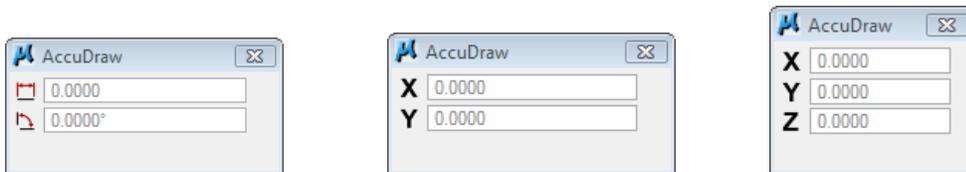
## 5.0 Working with AccuDraw

AccuDraw is a drafting aid that evaluates such parameters as your current pointer location, the previously entered data point, the last coordinate directive, the current tool's needs, and any directive you have entered via shortcut key-ins or AccuDraw options. AccuDraw then generates the appropriate precision coordinates and applies them to the active tool.

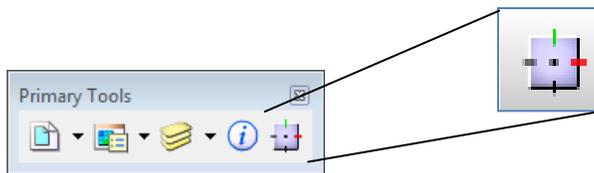
### Activating AccuDraw



By default, when MicroStation is started, AccuDraw is activated automatically. With AccuDraw activated, all drawing tools utilize it for dynamic data input.



AccuDraw window: Left: Polar. Center: Rectangular 2d file. Right: Rectangular 3d file



### To toggle AccuDraw on/off

- 1) In the Primary Tools toolbox, select the *Toggle AccuDraw* tool.  
The AccuDraw window opens or closes.

Normally, the AccuDraw compass does not appear until you enter the first data point after selecting a tool. AccuDraw's behavior changes slightly with tools that utilize dynamics before the first data point. The *Place Text* and *Place Active Cell* tools are examples of such tools. Instead of “waiting” for the first data point to display the compass, AccuDraw activates the compass at the last data point location. In this way, you can place the element with respect to this location by using any of AccuDraw's relative directives.

AccuDraw also affects operations like placing text or cells in another way. When you place a string of text with AccuDraw active, its initial orientation will be along the current AccuDraw drawing plane. In other words, when you have a Front-oriented drawing plane, the text will be oriented along the front axis *regardless of the view orientation*.

AccuDraw will not activate when it would conflict with other tools — for instance, during fence placement and element selection operations, dimensioning, and so on.

Although most users will activate and use AccuDraw during the entire design session, there may be times when its actions might interfere with the current operation. For this reason, AccuDraw can be turned off. MicroStation's tools return to their non-AccuDraw operation.

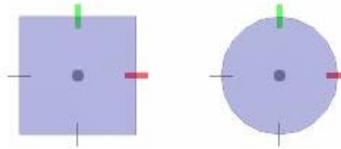
## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

### To deactivate AccuDraw

- 1) In the Primary Tools toolbox, select the *Toggle AccuDraw* tool.  
Or  
With the focus in the AccuDraw window, press <Q>.

### AccuDraw's compass

AccuDraw's most recognizable feature is its compass. Visible only when AccuDraw is active and has control of MicroStation's coordinate input, the compass acts as both a status indicator and a focus for your input.



*AccuDraw compass. Left: Rectangular coordinate system. Right: polar coordinate system.*

### The origin point

At the center of the compass is AccuDraw's origin point. This is the focal point of all AccuDraw operations. As you select various AccuDraw options, their functions operate from this origin point.

This last point is important. All AccuDraw directives (distance key-ins, shortcut key-ins, and so on) operate in conjunction with the compass. In most cases, the compass is located at the last entered data point. In addition, there are AccuDraw directives that allow you to move the compass to entirely different locations without generating a new data point. This is not unlike a tentative point.

### The frame (drawing plane indicator)

Surrounding the origin point is the frame, or drawing plane indicator. Its primary purpose is to show the current orientation of AccuDraw's drawing plane and the current coordinate system in effect. When the frame appears as a rectangle, the rectangular coordinate system (X, Y) is in effect. When the frame appears as a circle then the polar coordinate system (Distance, Angle) is active. By default, when AccuDraw has focus, the frame's color is grey, and its fill color is blue, but you can change this in the Display tab of the AccuDraw Settings dialog box.

### To change the color of the AccuDraw frame

- 1) With AccuDraw active, open the AccuDraw Settings dialog by pressing <G> followed by <S> (Get Settings).  
Or  
Choose Settings > AccuDraw.
- 2) In the AccuDraw Settings dialog, click the Display tab.
- 3) From the Frame option menu, choose a new color (the button color indicates the current setting).

### To change the color of the AccuDraw compass

- 1) With AccuDraw active, open the AccuDraw Settings dialog by pressing <G> followed by <S> (Get Settings).  
Or  
Choose Settings > AccuDraw.
- 2) In the AccuDraw Settings dialog, click the Display tab.
- 3) From the Fill option menu, choose a new color (the button color indicates the current setting).

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

### The X/Y axis

To differentiate between the two axes, each is color coded. By default, the positive or +X axis is displayed in red while the positive or +Y axis is green in color. If these colors do not suit you or are hard to discern, you can change them via the Display tab section of the AccuDraw Settings dialog. As well, you can change the highlight color for when the pointer is indexed to the X or Y axes.

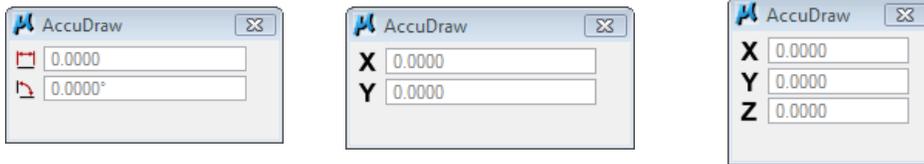
### To change the colors of AccuDraw's X and Y axis, or its indexing highlight

- 1) With AccuDraw active, open the AccuDraw Settings dialog by pressing <G> followed by <S> (Get Settings).  
Or  
Choose Settings > AccuDraw.  
The AccuDraw Settings dialog opens.
- 2) Click the Display tab.
- 3) From the X Axis or Y Axis option menu, choose a new color (the button color indicates the current setting).
- 4) From the Hilite option menu, choose a new color (the button indicates the current setting).

### AccuDraw's drawing plane

AccuDraw's drawing plane is central to its operation. As you work, AccuDraw orients this drawing plane based on a number of factors including cues from the active tool, the last placed coordinate, and key AccuDraw settings. This is known as context sensitive operation.

### The AccuDraw window



Used to facilitate data point entry. The AccuDraw window opens or closes when you click the AccuDraw icon on the Primary Tools toolbox. If you are using the default function key menu, pressing <F11> opens the AccuDraw window. If it is already docked or open, pressing <F11> sends focus to the AccuDraw window.

Once opened, the AccuDraw window automatically takes the focus whenever dynamic update occurs with a drawing tool selected. The AccuDraw window is dockable.

An option in AccuDraw is to use polar coordinates. To shift from rectangular to polar coordinates, first check that focus is in the AccuDraw window, then press the <spacebar>. Repeated pressing of the <spacebar> toggles between rectangular and polar coordinates. Rectangular or polar coordinates also can be set from the AccuDraw settings dialog.

The fields in the AccuDraw window depend on the type of drawing plane coordinate system in effect:

Coordinates	Fields	Used to specify
Rectangular	X,Y, (Z in 3D)	Distances along the drawing plane axes
Polar	Distance, Angle, (Z in 3D)	Distances and angles relative to the drawing plane origin, and Z value in 3D.

The coordinate type is set with a keyboard shortcut (highlight AccuDraw and tap the space bar to toggle between polar and rectangular mode).

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

### AccuDraw's window and the input focus

The AccuDraw window initially comes up floating just like any other window. However, it can be docked to either the top or bottom edge of the MicroStation application window.

When AccuDraw is active it becomes part of the input focus order controlled by the <Esc> key, initially, and others. How focus is controlled depends on whether or not you have Use Position Mapping enabled (Workspace > Preferences > Position Mapping).

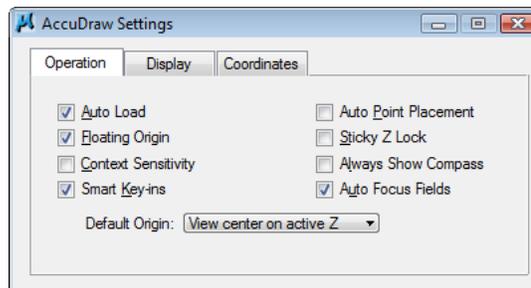
This is important to remember as no AccuDraw shortcut key-in works unless focus is in the AccuDraw window. Fortunately, after every data point or tentative point, the focus is forced to the AccuDraw window where it remains until you press the <Esc> key, or enter a Reset from a tool.

## 5.1 AccuDraw's Settings dialog box

Many aspects of AccuDraw's behavior are specified using the controls in the AccuDraw Settings dialog. A few have already been mentioned (such as context sensitivity, and axis display colors).

### To open the AccuDraw Settings dialog box

- 1) From the Settings menu, choose AccuDraw.  
Or  
With the focus in the AccuDraw window, press <G>, <S>.



### Operation Tab

Contains controls that are used to select preferences for operation and alter aspects of the way AccuDraw performs.

#### Auto Load

If on (the default), AccuDraw starts up automatically when MicroStation is started.

#### Floating Origin

If on (the default), the origin moves to the last point placed.

#### Context Sensitivity

If on (the default), enables tools to provide “hints” to AccuDraw to override its default behavior for smoother operation. This may include setting custom “Context” rotations, setting the origin, locking values, or setting the coordinate system type.

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

### Smart Key-ins

If on (the default), AccuDraw interprets a number as positive or negative, depending on the direction of the pointer from the compass.

In rectangular mode only, Smart Key-ins cause AccuDraw to move the focus to either the x or the y field depending on pointer position.

### Auto Point Placement

If on, places data points automatically when they have been fully constrained (if you have locked both the X and Y values, or if you have locked one or the other while the pointer is indexed to zero). The default is off (this feature is recommended for experienced users).

### Sticky Z Lock

If on, when you lock the Z axis, it will remain locked through consecutive operations. Normally, locks are cleared when you enter a data point. This setting is useful, for example, where you want to draw on the one plane (that is, you want to lock Z=0), while snapping to elements that are on another plane. With Sticky Z Lock enabled, the Z value will remain locked until you turn it off.

### Always Show Compass

If on, when you activate AccuDraw, the compass displays prior to you placing a data point for the current operation.

### Auto Focus Fields

(Polar coordinates only) If on, the <A> and <D> AccuDraw shortcuts set focus to the selected field and lock the current value.

If off, the <A> and <D> AccuDraw shortcuts lock the current value without affecting the focus.

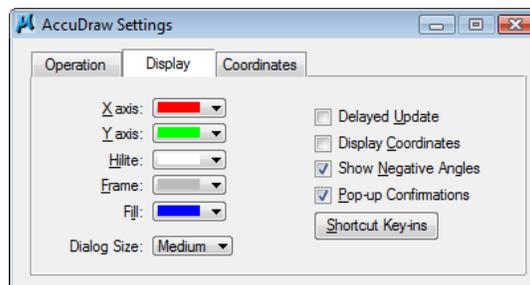
### Default Option

Lets you choose the default origin. When a tool starts AccuDraw and there is no origin currently defined, then this setting specifies the default location of the AccuDraw drawing plane origin. Options are:

- View Center on active Z — Sets AccuDraw's origin to the center of the view, at the Active Z depth of the view.
- Global origin — Sets AccuDraw's origin to the Global Origin of the file.
- Global origin on active Z — Sets AccuDraw's origin to the Global Origin (X, Y) at the Active Z depth of the view.

### Display Tab

Contains controls that control various display features of AccuDraw.



## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

### **X axis**

Lets you select, via an option menu, the color for the positive X axis indicator on the AccuDraw compass.

### **Y axis**

Lets you select, via an option menu, the color for the positive Y axis indicator on the AccuDraw compass.

### **Hilite**

Lets you select, via an option menu, the color for the negative X and Y axis indicators on the AccuDraw compass.

### **Frame**

Lets you select, via an option menu, the color for the AccuDraw compass frame.

### **Fill**

Sets the fill color of the inside of the AccuDraw compass.

### **Dialog Size**

Sets the width of the AccuDraw window.

- Small — 100 pixels.
- Medium — 126 pixels.
- Large — 152 pixels.

### **Delayed Update**

If on, X/Y coordinates are updated in the AccuDraw window when the screen pointer comes to a rest. If off (default), coordinates are updated in the AccuDraw window continuously, as you move the screen pointer.

### **Display Coordinates**

If on, a coordinate display at the pointer shows the increments in the x, y, and z (for 3D) directions from the previous data point.

### **Show Negative Angles**

If on (default), AccuDraw displays negative angles (that is, +/-180°). If off, AccuDraw displays angles as 0° to 360°.

### **Pop-up Confirmation**

If on (default), AccuDraw displays shortcut popups.

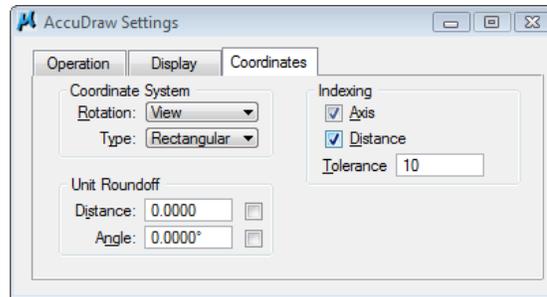
### **Shortcut Key-ins**

Opens the AccuDraw Shortcuts window that lists AccuDraw shortcut keys.

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

### Coordinates Tab

Contains controls that are used set AccuDraw's Coordinate System, unit roundoff, and indexing functionality.



### Rotation

Sets the rotation of the drawing plane axes, via an option menu. While the AccuDraw window has the focus, pressing the key combination indicated in parentheses has the same effect as choosing the specified Rotation.

Choosing	Aligns drawing plane
Top (T)	with axes in a standard Top view
Front (F)	with axes in a standard Front view
Side (S)	with axes in a standard (Right) side view
View (V)	with View axes
Auxiliary	with Active ACS axes
Context (R,Q)	as specified interactively, or as hinted by the current drawing tool

Unlike ACS rotation, context rotation is temporary, lasting only for the duration of the current drawing tool.

### Type

Sets the method used in the AccuDraw window to specify distances and angles relative to the drawing plane origin.

Type	Effect
Rectangular	The X and Y fields (plus, in 3D, the Z field), along with their lock controls, are displayed in the AccuDraw window.
Polar	The Distance and Angle fields, along with their lock controls, are displayed in the AccuDraw window.

While the AccuDraw window has the focus, pressing <space bar> toggles Type.

### Distance

Sets the roundoff value for distances relative to the drawing plane origin. While the accompanying check box is on, the roundoff value is effective, except if overridden by keyed in values or snapped tentative points. The check box turns on automatically when the Distance setting is entered.

This setting does not affect keyed in values and snapped tentative points.

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

### Angle

Sets the roundoff value, in degrees, for angles relative to the drawing plane origin when in Polar mode. While the accompanying check box is on, the roundoff value is effective except if overridden by keyed in values or snapped tentative points. The check box turns on automatically when the Angle setting is entered.

This setting does not affect keyed in values and snapped tentative points

### Axis

If on, indexing is activated for AccuDraw's drawing plane X and Y axes. The distance required to move the pointer from the indexed axis is controlled by the Tolerance setting.

### Distance

If on, sets the minimum distance that the pointer must move from the AccuDraw origin in order to place a new data point. The minimum distance is controlled by the Tolerance setting.

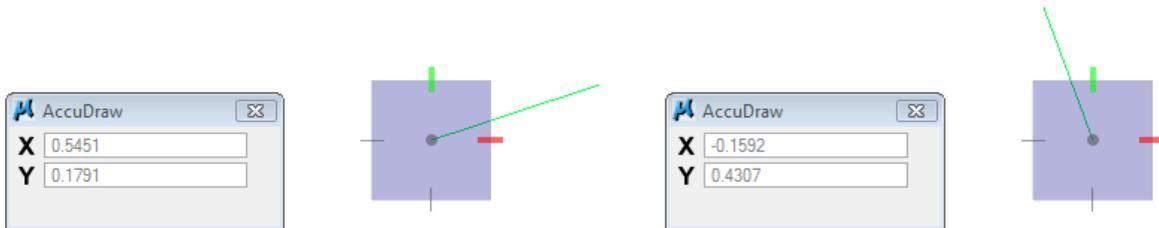
### Tolerance

Sets the minimum distance, in screen pixels, used by the Axis and Distance settings. Allowable values 1–99.

## 5.2 Controlling and Using AccuDraw

### How AccuDraw reacts to pointer movement

When active, AccuDraw reacts to pointer movement by trying to anticipate your intent.



*Moving the pointer (Rectangular coordinates). Left: Toward the x-axis; Right: Toward the y-axis.*

As you move the pointer, the fields in the AccuDraw window automatically update to reflect the drawing plane coordinates of the current pointer location (expressed as relative x, y, and z offsets, or as a distance and an angle) with respect to the location of the AccuDraw compass.

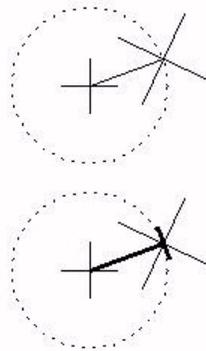
Furthermore, the AccuDraw window's input focus automatically adjusts, based on the general direction of the pointer movement. As you move the pointer in the same direction as either drawing plane axis the focus moves to the field that you would use to precisely locate the data point along that axis.

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

### Previous Distance Recall

Another example of how AccuDraw tries to help you is its previous distance feature. As you place elements in your model, AccuDraw keeps track of the distance between your last two data points. Known as the Previous Distance, AccuDraw uses this distance as a hint for your next data point.

Think of previous distance as a radius length from the compass origin. When you move the pointer within the Tolerance distance to this radius, AccuDraw displays a small tangent line called the previous distance indicator, and locks the pointer to this point.



*Previous distance indicator.*

As you keep the pointer within the Tolerance distance of this previous distance, AccuDraw will keep it locked. This, of course, only works with Polar coordinates. If you are using Rectangular coordinates, the previous distance only works when you are indexed to either drawing plane axis.

A data point will result in an offset distance from your last data point precisely the same as the distance between your previous two data points.

This “lock” on feature is not hard to override. Just continue dragging the pointer until it is outside the Tolerance and the previous distance lock disengages.

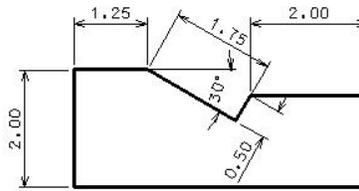
### Recalling previous values

AccuDraw stores all entered values for its X, Y, Distance, and Angle fields for recall as needed. When in the X, Y, (Z in 3D), Distance, or Angle fields, pressing the <PgUp> key recalls the last distance or angle value entered in any of these fields. Pressing <PgUp> again recalls the next to last entered value and so on. You should note that the X, Y, Z, and Distance fields share a common value buffer but that Angular data is stored separately. This means you can enter a value in the X field, for instance, change the input focus to Y, and by pressing <PgUp>, enter the same value as placed in the X field.

### A Simple Example of Using AccuDraw

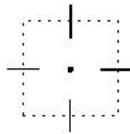
To help you understand what AccuDraw does, the following is a description of a simple design session using AccuDraw and the Place SmartLine tool. The task presented is the creation of a simple bracket. If a 3D file is used, the Top view is assumed in the exercise.

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw



*The design subject is a simple bracket with the important dimensions and features noted.*

With AccuDraw activated (*Toggle AccuDraw* tool in the Primary Tools toolbox), select the *Place SmartLine* tool in the Linear Elements toolbox. When you enter your first data point for the lower left corner of the bracket, AccuDraw displays a square or circular shaped “compass.”



*The AccuDraw compass appears whenever AccuDraw is active and a data point is placed*

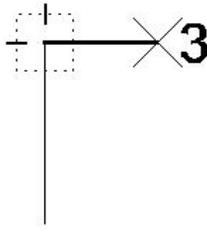
Next, you need to draw the left edge of the bracket. As you move the dynamic line around the view window nothing interesting happens until you get close to one of the axes of the AccuDraw compass. In this case, because you want a vertical edge, you should move the line close to the Y axis. When AccuDraw senses the axis, the line snaps or *indexes* to it. While the axis is highlighted you can key in a number for the vertical distance, in this case, 2 inches. Don't worry about telling AccuDraw the direction, it has already figured that out and also has placed the input focus (where the key-in data will appear) in the correct field, in this case the Y field. After keying in the distance value, entering a data point results in what you would expect, a line segment oriented along the vertical axis and exactly two inches long.



*The start of the bracket's left edge with its 2 inch measurement courtesy of AccuDraw.*

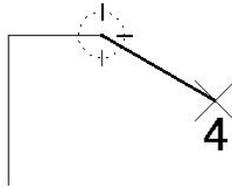
At this point the AccuDraw compass moves to the end point of the line you just placed. Moving the dynamic line segment around, it acts as before. This time you need to place the line with a fixed length of 1.25 inches in the horizontal direction. You do this by moving the dynamic line so that it snaps onto the positive horizontal axis, key in 1.25, and enter a data point.

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw



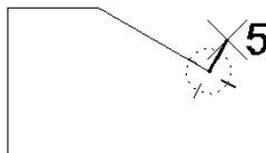
*The bracket's top edge is taking shape as the indexed line is placed along the horizontal axis*

The next part of the bracket involves going off at a 30 degree angle for a given distance. Pressing the Space bar changes the AccuDraw compass to its polar mode (indicated by a circular compass), which lets you enter an angle and a distance. Entering 30 degrees in the Angle field and 1.75 inches in the Distance field locks the line in the right direction. A data point accepts the new location.



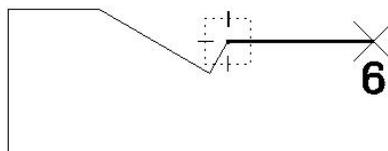
*The notch appears next with the Polar compass oriented along the new line.*

Note how the compass orients along the 30 degree line. This illustrates AccuDraw's context sensitivity. AccuDraw provides a method for associating coordinate information with respect to existing elements. To place the half inch line at a right angle to the 30 degree line only requires indexing to the appropriate axis, keying-in 0.5 and entering a data point to accept.



*The notch is nearing completion.*

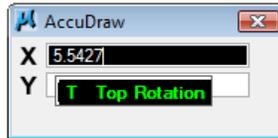
With the bracket's notch complete, all that remains is the completion of the bracket's right edge. Currently, however, the compass still is rotated to the 60 degree angle of the notch and not the horizontal direction you need. To override the context nature of AccuDraw you press <T> to orient the compass to the Top view (the default). Pressing the Space bar brings up the rectangular compass. Indexing, again, to the X axis and keying in 2 inches followed by a data point locks the final known dimension of the bracket.



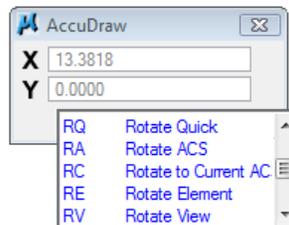


## 5.4 AccuDraw’s shortcut key-ins

Although AccuDraw tries to anticipate your next move it cannot always predict your intentions. AccuDraw therefore includes a wide variety of single and double character command directives known as the shortcut key-ins. By pressing the appropriate key, you can direct AccuDraw to perform a specific task. In operation, AccuDraw is the default input focus in most cases, thus letting you just type in the shortcut without having to consider where the input focus is.



Pop-ups confirm single letter shortcuts below the focused input field. This function is not only useful to confirm the key-in, but also it serves to communicate that the shortcut is received via AccuDraw's input fields.



Two letter shortcuts appear attached to the focused input field, and confirm the action through the temporary appearance of the AccuDraw Shortcuts window. The pop-down list adjacent to the input field illustrates where the shortcut comes from, thereby making it easy to “follow the action.”

The following is a list of the more common shortcut key-ins:

Key	Effect
<?>	Opens the AccuDraw Shortcuts window.
<Enter>	Smart Lock <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Rectangular coordinates, locks X to 0 if the pointer is on the drawing plane y-axis or Y to 0 if the pointer is on the x-axis.</li> <li>In Polar coordinates, locks Angle to 0°, 90°, -90°, or 180° if the pointer is on a drawing plane axis or otherwise locks Distance to its last entered value.</li> </ul>
<space bar>	Switches between Rectangular and Polar coordinates.
<O>	Moves the drawing plane origin to the current pointer position. This can also be used to explicitly activate AccuDraw before you enter a data point.
<X>	Toggles the lock status for the X value.
<Y>	Toggles the lock status for the Y value.
<D>	Toggles the lock status for the Distance value.
<A>	Toggles the lock status for the Angle value.

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

### To review a list of the available AccuDraw shortcuts

- 1) Within the focus of the AccuDraw window, press the <?> key. The AccuDraw Shortcuts window opens.



### General Procedure – To activate a shortcut key-in

- 1) With the focus in the AccuDraw window, simply press the keyboard key(s) that correspond(s) to the shortcut you wish to use. If the first letter is, by itself, a valid shortcut, the shortcut activates. Otherwise, the AccuDraw Shortcuts window opens. The window lists the available shortcuts. Typing the second letter activates the shortcut.

### Complete List of AccuDraw Shortcut Key-ins

Key	Effect
<Enter>	Smart Lock In Rectangular coordinates, locks X to 0 if the pointer is on the drawing plane y-axis or Y to 0 if the pointer is on the x-axis. In Polar coordinates, locks Angle to 0°, 90°, -90°, or 180° if the pointer is on a drawing plane axis or otherwise locks Distance to its last entered value.
<Space bar>	Switches between Rectangular and Polar coordinates.
<O>	Moves the drawing plane origin to the current pointer position.
<V>	Rotates the drawing plane to align with the view axes. Pressing this key a second time restores context-sensitive rotation.
<T>	Rotates the drawing plane to align with the axes in a standard Top view. Pressing this key a second time restores context-sensitive rotation.
<F>	Rotates the drawing plane to align with the axes in a standard Front view. Pressing this key a second time restores context-sensitive rotation.
<S>	Rotates the drawing plane to align with the axes in a standard Side view. Pressing this key a second time restores context-sensitive rotation.
<B>	Rotates the drawing plane to align with the active ACS, or if you set up a rotation in the dialog, it will return you to that rotation. In a new file (where you haven't used an ACS yet) it will be the rotation of the view.
<E>	Rotates between three main planes: top, front, and side (3D only). This also works when your original plane is an ACS or context rotation, so you do not have to use RX, RY to rotate to a 90° plane.
<X>	Toggles the lock status for the X value.
<Y>	Toggles the lock status for the Y value.
<Z>	Toggles the lock status for the Z value.

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

<D>	Toggles the lock status for the Distance value.
<A>	Toggles the lock status for the Angle value.
<L>,<I>	Locks the current index state. If an axis or distance is not indexed, indexing is disabled. If an axis or distance is indexed, it is locked. The effect is temporary, lasting until a data point is entered or the shortcut is run again. This is useful if you need to index to one axis but not the other, or to enter a data point very close to an axis but not on the axis.
<L>,<P>	Toggles ACS Grid Plane lock, which toggles the ACS Plane and ACS Plane Snap locks, and the Grid view attribute for all views.
<L>,<A>	Toggles ACS Plane lock.
<L>,<S>	Toggles ACS Plane snap lock.
<L>,<Z>	Toggles Sticky Z Lock, which is used in conjunction with ACS Plane Snap Lock to force a series of snap points to lie on the active ACS' XY plane (Z=0).
<R>,<Q>	Used to quickly and temporarily rotate the drawing plane. The procedure is described in The Rotate Quick keyboard shortcut.
<R>,<A>	Used to permanently rotate the drawing plane. Because it rotates the current ACS, this rotation will still be active after the tool in use is exited. If on, the tool setting Use Current Origin causes the drawing plane origin to be used as the x-axis origin, thereby eliminating the need to enter an extra data point. Of course, in many cases it is desirable to be able to define the x-axis origin at a different location than the drawing plane origin.
<R>,<C>	Rotates the drawing plane to the current ACS.
<R>,<E>	Rotates the drawing plane to match the orientation of a selected element.
<R>,<V>	Rotates the active view to match the current drawing plane.
<R>,<X>	Rotates the drawing plane 90° about its x-axis.
<R>,<Y>	Rotates the drawing plane 90° about its y-axis.
<R>,<Z>	Rotates the drawing plane 90° about its z-axis.
<?>	Opens the AccuDraw Shortcuts window.
<~>	Bumps an item in the tool settings dialog (shortcut is ~, usually right under the <Esc> key — there is no need to press the <Shift> key). It finds the first enabled item in the tool settings dialog that is a toggle button or an option button, and either toggles it or bumps it to the next valid value. For instance, if you are drawing a SmartLine and the focus is in the AccuDraw window, you can just press the <~> key and it switches to arcs without moving the focus from the AccuDraw window.
<G>,<T>	Moves focus to the Tool Settings window.
<G>,<K>	Opens (or moves focus to) the Key-in window (same as choosing Utilities > Key-in).
<G>,<S>	Opens (or moves focus to) the AccuDraw Settings dialog (same as choosing Settings > AccuDraw).
<G>,<A>	Opens the Get ACS dialog, which lets you select a saved Auxiliary Coordinate System.
<W>,<A>	Opens the Write to ACS dialog, which lets you save the drawing plane alignment as an ACS.
<P>	Opens the Data Point Key-in dialog for entering a single data point.
<M>	Opens the Data Point Key-in dialog for entering multiple data points.
<I>	Activates Intersect snap mode.
<N>	Activates Nearest snap mode.
<C>	Activates Center snap mode.
<K>	Opens the Keypoint Snap Divisor dialog, which is used to set the Snap Divisor for keypoint snapping.
<H>,<A>	Suspends AccuDraw for the current tool operation. Selecting a new tool or entering a Reset re-enables AccuDraw.

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

<H>,<S>	Toggles AccuSnap on/off.
<H>,<U>	Suspends AccuSnap for the current tool operation. Selecting a new tool or entering a Reset re-enables AccuSnap.
<Q>	Deactivates AccuDraw.

Keyboard shortcuts are *not* case sensitive.

### 5.5 Smart Lock

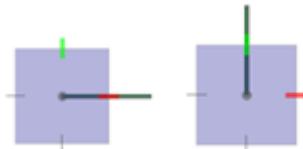
One of the first keyboard shortcuts you will use is Smart Lock. Similar in operation to striking a line along a T-square, Smart Lock is invoked by pressing the <Enter> key. Depending on where the pointer is located, at the time you select Smart Lock, one of two things will occur:

- If the pointer is oriented closer to the X axis of the compass, the pointer will lock to the X axis.
- If the pointer is oriented closer to the Y axis of the compass, the pointer will lock to the Y axis.

You know the pointer is locked on an axis when the dynamic line highlights. Pressing the <Enter> key again deactivates Smart Lock and releases the dynamic line back to free motion.

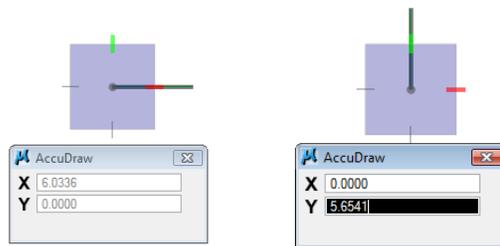
#### To constrain the pending data point to a drawing plane axis

- 1) Position the pointer near the desired axis. When the pointer is on an axis, a highlighted line is displayed from the drawing plane origin to the pointer location.



*Positioning the pointer on a drawing plane axis – Left: on the x-axis. Right: on the y-axis*

- 2) Press the <Enter> key.  
Smart Lock is engaged. Its effect is to constrain the pending data point to the axis.

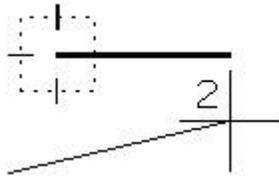


*Constraining the data point along the x-axis (left) and the y-axis (right)*

You now can constrain the pending data point to a precise distance along the axis by keying in a value, or simply by snapping a tentative point to an element or monument point and accepting the tentative point as the data point location.

To disengage Smart Lock and unconstrain the pending data point, press <Enter> again. The <Enter> key toggles Smart Lock.

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw



*Snapping to constrain the pending data point to a precise distance along the x-axis.*

Smart Lock will not lock to an axis when you are entering coordinate values into its field. Instead, AccuDraw returns the dynamic element to free motion.

### X and Y locks

When using the Rectangular coordinate system, you can force AccuDraw to lock the current distance along an axis by activating the <X> or <Y> keyboard shortcut. AccuDraw responds by locking the dynamic line to the chosen axis at the current pointer distance from the origin point of the compass. Having done this, the focus of the complement AccuDraw axis data field becomes the focus for your next keyboard entry.

- AccuDraw automatically switches its coordinate system to rectangular in response to the X or Y lock.
- All X and Y values entered are relative to the plane of the previous element segment.
- To override this, AccuDraw provides an option in its settings called Context Sensitivity. Turning this off forces AccuDraw to stay oriented to the DGN file's XY axes

### Distance lock

You can use the <D> shortcut to lock the distance from the compass origin point to the current location of the pointer and, if necessary, change AccuDraw's coordinate system to Polar. The input focus automatically shifts to the Angle field.

#### To interactively enter the distance of the dynamic element

- 1) In the AccuDraw window's Distance field (Polar coordinates), type the distance.  
The pending data point is constrained automatically, as indicated by the pressed Distance button.  
Dynamic update occurs in response to each keystroke.

#### Alternative Method – To interactively enter the distance of the dynamic element

- 1) Move the pointer away from the drawing plane origin until the desired distance is displayed in the AccuDraw window's Distance field. As the pointer is moved, the displayed distance is rounded off to the increment specified by the Unit Roundoff's Distance setting (if the setting is turned on) in the Coordinates tab section of the AccuDraw Settings dialog.
- 2) Press the <D> key.

### Angle lock

You can use the <A> shortcut to set the angle portion of the polar drawing plane and, if necessary, change AccuDraw's coordinate system to Polar. AccuDraw sets the angle to the current position of the pointer.

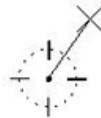
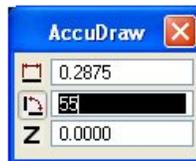
## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

### To interactively lock the angle of a dynamic element

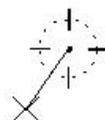
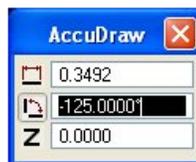
- 1) In the AccuDraw window's Angle field (Polar coordinates), type the angle, in degrees.  
The pending data point is constrained automatically, as indicated by the pressed Angle button. Dynamic update occurs in response to each keystroke.

### Alternative Method – To interactively lock the angle of a dynamic element

- 1) Move the pointer around the drawing plane origin until the desired angle is displayed in the AccuDraw window's Angle field. As the pointer is moved, the displayed angle is rounded off to the increment specified by the Unit Roundoff's Angle setting (if the setting is turned on) in the Coordinates tab section of the AccuDraw Settings dialog.
  - 2) Press the <A> key.
- The Angle value automatically switches to the “opposite” angle if the pointer position dictates.



*Angle value automatically switches to the “opposite” value.*



*Angle value automatically switches to the “opposite” value.*

## 5.6 Unit roundoffs and their effect on AccuDraw

### Distance Roundoff

When you enable the Distance field in Unit Roundoff, AccuDraw acts as if there is an invisible grid in effect. The Distance Roundoff, however, always is calculated from the current compass location. In addition, at any time you can override this value by snapping to an element, or entering a value in the X, Y, Z, or Distance fields of the AccuDraw window.

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

**To round off the values displayed in AccuDraw's X, Y, Z and Distance fields as the pointer moves**

- 1) In the AccuDraw Settings dialog, click the Coordinates tab.
- 2) In the Unit Roundoff section, turn on Distance.
- 3) In the Distance field, key in the desired increment.

**To cancel distance roundoff**

- 1) In the AccuDraw Settings dialog, click the Coordinates tab.
- 2) In the Unit Roundoff section, turn off Distance.

**Angle roundoff**

You can use the Angle Unit Roundoff to lock elements along specific axes. For instance, setting the Angle Roundoff to 30 degrees assures that all elements placed will occur along one of the normal isometric drawing axes. As with the X, Y, Z, or Distance fields, at any time you can override this value by snapping to an element, or entering a value in the Angle field of the AccuDraw window.



*Drawing in progress showing AccuDraw window with angle locked to 30 degrees*

**To round off the values displayed in the AccuDraw's Angle field as the pointer moves**

- 1) In the AccuDraw Settings dialog, click the Coordinates tab.
- 2) In the Unit Roundoff section, turn on Angle.
- 3) In the Angle field, key in the desired increment in degrees.

**To cancel angle roundoff**

- 1) In the AccuDraw Settings dialog, click the Coordinates tab.
- 2) In the Unit Roundoff section, turn off Angle.

## 5.7 Moving the AccuDraw Compass

By default, AccuDraw places its compass at the last data point location. There are, however, times when you need to take over control of the AccuDraw compass. Tentative point operations can take better advantage of AccuDraw's capabilities when you "unlock" the compass and place it wherever needed. The following covers how you do this and some interesting ways in which you can use AccuDraw to accomplish otherwise difficult operations.

## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

### The floating origin option

At any time, you can move AccuDraw's compass to the pointer location. You do this with the "O" keyboard shortcut, which forces AccuDraw to move the compass to the current pointer location.

This occurs *regardless of the tool or operation currently selected*. This last point is important to recognize. AccuDraw is considered a non-modal feature in that you don't have to be in a predetermined part of a procedure in order for it to operate.

In practice, the most common use for a relocated compass origin point is to index the element under construction from an existing point. For instance, if you want to locate the corner of a block a specified distance from a given location, you can tentative snap to the given location, then press O to move the drawing plane origin to the snap. From there you can use AccuDraw to position the tentative point from this relocated origin point. This procedure is explained in AccuDraw and the tentative point.

### Rotating the drawing plane in 2D

Along with the standard drawing plane orientations, the rotation of the drawing plane axes can be altered using keyboard shortcuts. In 2D, you are limited to rotating AccuDraw's drawing plane about the view axis. This matches the same restriction placed on rotating views in 2D.

### Rotation sensitive tools

Depending on the tool in use, dynamically rotating the drawing plane axes yields slightly different results. For example, consider the scenario of placing a block (rectangle) with the Place Block (Orthogonal) tool, which takes its orientation from the drawing plane XY axes.

Once the drawing plane axes are rotated, the block's main axis is constrained to the rotated XY axis.

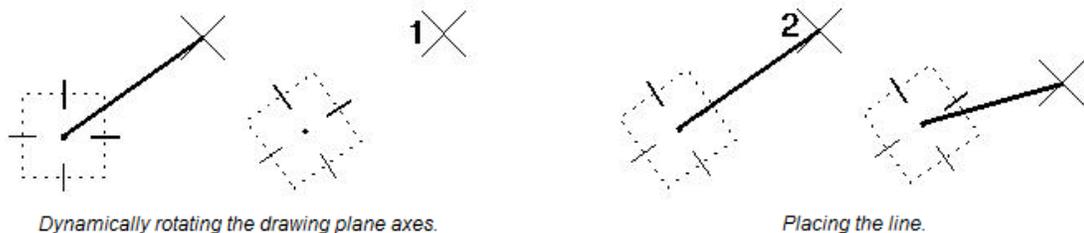
Contrast this to the effect when using the Place Line tool: The drawing plane axes rotate, and while dynamic readout is a function of the newly rotated system, the tool itself remains available to dynamically place the line wherever desired.

### The Rotate Quick shortcut key-in

You can use the Rotate Quick (<R>, <Q>) shortcut to change the orientation of the drawing plane only for the current data point, after which it resumes its normal orientation. This will vary, depending on the tool being used.

### To quickly rotate the drawing plane axes

For example, suppose you are using the Place Line tool to start a construction and wish to align the drawing plane axes with the new line. After establishing the drawing plane origin (with the first data point of the line), pressing <R>, <Q> lets you rotate the drawing plane axes interactively



## MicroStation V8i – Working with AccuDraw

# Element Selection

## Section 6

<b>6.0</b>	<b>Element selection tool box</b>	<b>Page 600-607</b>
<b>6.1</b>	<b>Fence Tools</b>	<b>Page 608-611</b>
<b>6.2</b>	<b>Select By Attributes</b>	<b>Page 612-615</b>



### 6.0 Element Selection Tool

Selection tool



Used to select and deselect elements for modification or manipulation. The set of selected elements is called the **selection set**.

In the extended settings for the *Element Selection* window, tabs let you select elements by one or more attributes — Level, Color, Line Style, Line Weight, Element Type, Element Class, Element Template, Text Style, Dimension Style, Multi-line Style, Transparency and Display Priority. Alternatively, when you select elements graphically, the active set of attributes displays as a highlighted group in each tab's list box.

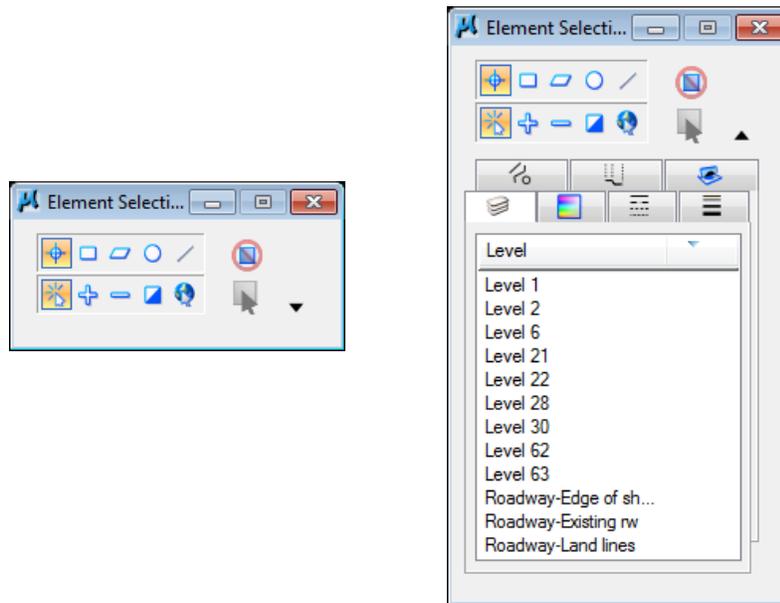
- Under the extended settings, you can add to the attribute set by clicking on additional (unhighlighted) attributes. If an element exists with an attribute, the attribute is included in the set. Similarly, you can remove an attribute from the set by clicking on it. Switching tabs lets you continue the process of adding or eliminating other attributes. Where you have a number of attributes selected you can <Ctrl-click> a highlighted attribute and all other highlighted attributes will be deselected.
- If you choose an attribute that exists in a complex element such as a cell, the entire complex element is selected. For example, if you choose the Element Type attribute for text, Element Selection finds normal text elements as well as cells that contain text. In each tab's list box, attributes that belong to complex elements are highlighted in gray, rather than the standard highlighting for attributes that belong to simple elements.
- If you choose a Color, Line Style, or Line Weight attribute, Element Selection finds all elements with this active symbology, including ByLevel attributes. For example, if you select the color blue, Element Selection finds blue elements as well as elements with ByLevel color that are set to blue. ByLevel attributes are listed separately in the list box.

While the *Element Selection* tool is selected, the pointer becomes an arrowhead with an aperture encircling the tip. The aperture denotes the design plane area in which MicroStation searches for elements. The aperture size or Locate Tolerance is a user preference that is adjustable in the Preferences dialog (Input category).

If the desired element is visible in the aperture but you cannot select it, check the following:

- To select a shape, the pointer must be close to one of the enclosing lines. To select a circle or an ellipse, the pointer must be close to the circumference or center. A filled element can be selected by its interior or surface, which is set in the Locate Interiors option menu of the Preferences dialog Input category.
- If Level Lock is on, you can only select elements on the active level.

## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection



Tool Settings	Effect
Method	<p>Sets the selection method. The method works in conjunction with the Mode setting. The Method settings allow you to select individual elements or drag to select elements with a dynamic rectangle, block, shape, circle, or line. Use a left-right direction for inside selection and a right-left direction for overlap selection. The line style for the dynamic rectangle/block/shape/circle changes from a solid line (inside) to a dashed line (overlap). A tap of the &lt;Shift&gt; key while dragging/defining points will invert the current inside/overlap direction.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Individual — Lets you select individual elements graphically. To select additional elements: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ (when mode is set to New) Hold the &lt;Ctrl&gt; key, then click on the elements.</li> <li>○ (when mode is set to Add) Click on the elements.</li> <li>○ (when mode is set to New or Add) Click in the view window, then drag to select elements with a dynamic rectangle.</li> </ul> </li> <li>— If you double-click an existing text element with the <i>Element Selection</i> pointer, the <a href="#">Edit Text</a> tool activates and the <a href="#">Text Editor window</a> opens.</li> <li>-If you double-click an existing tag element with the <i>Element Selection</i> pointer, the <a href="#">Edit Tags dialog</a> opens.</li> <li>-If you double-click an existing flag with the <i>Element Selection</i> pointer, the <a href="#">Show/Edit Flag</a> tool activates and the Define Flag Information dialog opens.</li> <li>-If you double-click a blank area of a view, the selection mode toggles between Block and Individual.</li> <li>• Block — When set to inside selection, all elements inside the block are selected. When set to overlap selection, all elements inside or overlapping the block are selected.</li> <li>• Shape — When set to inside selection, all elements inside the shape are selected. When set to overlap selection, all elements inside or overlapping the shape are selected.</li> <li>• Circle — When set to inside selection, all elements inside the circle are selected. When set to overlap selection, all elements inside or overlapping the circle are selected.</li> <li>• Line — Lets you select elements by defining a line that intersects them.</li> </ul>

## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection

Mode	<p>Sets the objective of using the tool. The Mode works in conjunction with the Method setting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New — Clears the current selection set and starts a new selection set.</li> <li>• Add — Adds elements to the selection set.</li> <li>• Subtract — Removes elements from the selection set.</li> <li>• Invert — Toggles the selection status of an element (selects deselected elements and deselects selected elements).</li> <li>• Clear/Select All — Deselects all selected elements if element handles are not visible. If handles are visible and selected (orange), selecting the Clear mode deselects the handles (blue). Selects all elements if no elements are currently selected.</li> </ul>
Disable Handles	<p>If on, handles are not displayed for selected elements.</p> <p>With the Individual method plus New mode, element handles are displayed by default if you select a single element or multiple elements using &lt;Ctrl-click&gt;. Element handles are not displayed when you select multiple elements by dragging a rectangle or with another selection method (Block, Shape, Circle, or Line).</p>
Select Handles	<p>If on, the Block/Shape/Circle/Line selection methods and the Add/Subtract/Invert/Clear selection modes apply to selecting handles rather than elements. (To use this icon, Disable Handles must be off.)</p>
Attribute Tabs	<p>Clicking the Show Extended Settings arrow expands the tool settings window to reveal the Attribute tabs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Level — Lets you select the required levels from a list of levels in the model.</li> <li>• Color — Lets you select the required colors from a list (0–254 plus By Level).</li> <li>• Line Style — Lets you select the required line styles from a list (standard line styles plus custom line styles, plus By Level).</li> <li>• Line Weight — Lets you select the required line weights from a list (0–31 plus By Level).</li> <li>• Element Type — Lets you select the required element types from a list.</li> <li>• Element Class — Lets you select the required element classes from a list.</li> <li>• Element Template — Lets you select the required <a href="#">element template</a> from a list.</li> <li>• Text Styles — You can select the required text style from a list.</li> <li>• Dimension Styles — You can select the required dimension style from a list.</li> <li>• Multi-line Styles — You can select the required multi-line style from a list.</li> </ul>

### To select a single element

- 1) Select the *Element Selection* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, select the following icons: Method - Individual, and Mode - New.
- 3) Click the element you want to select.  
The selected element is bracketed with handles.

## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection

### To select one or more elements with the individual method

- 1) Select the *Element Selection* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, select these icons: Method - Individual, and Mode - New.
- 3) Drag around the area containing the elements you want to select. As you drag, a dynamic rectangle outlines the area. Use a left-right direction for inside selection and a right-left direction for overlap selection.
- 4) (Optional) Tap the <Shift> key while dragging to invert the current inside/overlap direction.
- 5) Release the Data button.  
All elements that are inside (or overlapping) the rectangle are selected.

### To select additional elements with the individual method

- 1) Select the *Element Selection* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, select these icons: Method - Individual, and Mode - New.
- 3) Hold the <Ctrl> key, and click on the elements to select.

### To select all elements in the active model

- From the Reset pop-up menu, choose Select All.  
Or  
Choose Edit > Select All (or press <ctrl-A>).  
Or  
In the status bar, click the element selection indicator field, and choose Select All from the pop-up menu.

Note: Elements in references cannot be selected with this method.

### Alternative Method – To select all elements in the active model

- a. Select the *Element Selection* tool.
- b. In the tool settings window, select Mode — Select All.

Note: Elements in references cannot be selected with this mode.

## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection

### To select elements inside or overlapping a rectangular area

- 1) Select the Element Selection tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, select the following icons: Method - Block, and Mode - Add (+).
- 3) Enter a data point to define the first corner of the block. Use a left-right direction for inside selection and a right-left direction for overlap selection.
- 4) (Optional) Tap the <Shift> key while dragging to invert the current inside/overlap direction.
- 5) Move the pointer until the dynamically displayed block contains or overlaps the elements you want to select.
- 6) Enter a second data point to close the block.

### To select elements contained in or overlapping a polygonal area

- 1) Select the *Element Selection* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, select the following icons: Method - Shape, and Mode - Add (+).
- 3) Enter a data point to define the first vertex of the polygonal shape. Use a left-right direction for inside selection and a right-left direction for overlap selection.
- 4) (Optional) Tap the <Shift> key while defining points to invert the current inside/overlap direction.
- 5) Continue entering data points until the polygonal shape contains or overlaps the elements you want to select.
- 6) Enter a final data point to close the polygonal shape.

### To select elements contained in or overlapping a circle

- 1) Select the *Element Selection* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, select the following icons: Method - Circle, and Mode - Add (+).
- 3) Enter a data point to define the center of the circle. Use a left-right direction for inside selection and a right-left direction for overlap selection.
- 4) (Optional) Tap the <Shift> key while dragging to invert the current inside/overlap direction.
- 5) Enter a second data point to complete the circle.

## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection

### To select elements that intersect a line



- 1) Select the *Element Selection* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, select the following icons: Method - Line, and Mode - Add (+).
- 3) Enter a data point to begin the line.
- 4) Enter a data point to end the line.  
All elements touched by the line are selected.

### To select elements based on their attributes

- 1) Select the *Element Selection* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, click the Show Extended Settings icon.
- 3) Choose the desired attribute tab as the selection criterion.
- 4) In the attribute list box, click the attributes to be included in the selection criterion.  
If elements exist with these attributes in the design file, the attributes are highlighted and displayed in the list box and the elements are selected. If you select an attribute that does not coincide with an element in the design file, the attribute is not highlighted.

### To select additional elements or deselect some selected elements based on their attributes

- 1) Select the *Element Selection* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, select the following icons: Method - Block, and Mode - Add (+).
- 3) Enter a data point to define the first corner of the block. Use a left-right direction for inside selection and a right-left direction for overlap selection.
- 4) (Optional) Tap the <Shift> key while defining points to invert the current inside/overlap direction.
- 5) Move the pointer until the dynamically displayed block contains or overlaps the elements you want to select or deselect.
- 6) Enter a second data point to close the block.  
Elements that meet the criterion within the block are selected.
- 7) In the tool settings window, click the Show Extended Settings icon.
- 8) Choose the desired attribute tab.  
The attributes that exist within the selection set (block) are highlighted and displayed in the list box.
- 9) To deselect elements with specific attributes from the selection set, click the highlighted attribute.  
The attribute is no longer highlighted and the elements with that attribute are unselected.

## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection

### To deselect an element

- 1) Select the *Element Selection* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, select the following icons: Method - Individual, and Mode - New.
- 3) <Ctrl-click> the element to deselect.

### To deselect all elements

- 1) From the Reset pop-up menu, choose Select None.  
Or  
Choose Edit > Select None.  
Or  
In the status bar, click the element selection indicator field, and choose Select None from the pop-up menu.

### Alternative Method – To deselect all elements

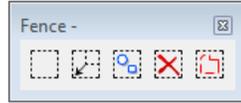
- 1) Select the *Element Selection* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, select Mode — Clear.

### To restore the previous selection set

- 1) From the Reset pop-up menu, choose Select Previous.

Note: If any currently selected elements were not in the previous selection set, choosing Select Previous will cause those elements to be deselected.

## 6.1 Place Fence tool



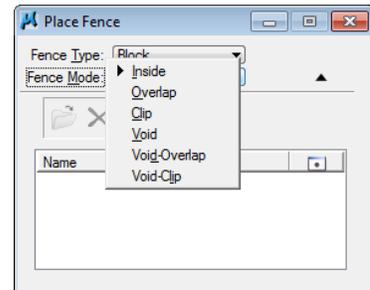
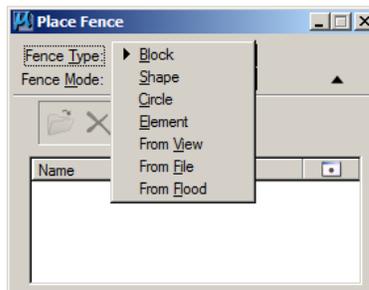
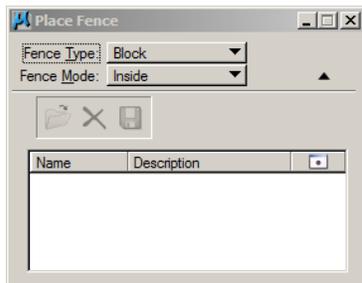
The Fence toolbox contains tools that are used to place, modify, move a fence, and delete the fence contents.

To	Select in the Fence toolbox
Place a fence.	 <i>Place Fence</i>
Modify one vertex of a fence.	 <i>Modify Fence</i>
Manipulate the fence contents. or Extend or shorten elements that overlap the fence.	 <i>Manipulate Fence Contents</i>
Delete the fence contents.	 <i>Delete Fence Contents</i>
Break up the complex elements in the fence contents into their components.	 <i>Drop Complex Status of Fence Contents</i>

### Place Fence



Used to place a fence.



## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection

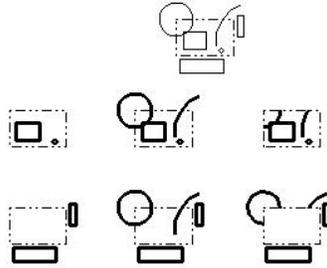
### Tool Settings

Tool Settings	Effect
Fence Type	<p>When the Fence Type is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Block, Shape, or Circle — Sets the geometric characteristics of a fence for graphical placement.</li> <li>• Element — Lets you create a fence by selecting an element. Elements that can be used for a fence include closed planar elements (shapes, circles, ellipses, complex shapes, and grouped holes), any solid (other than spheres or feature solids) or closed extrusion, or cylinders. If a planar element is used in a 3D file, then the volume is applied by sweeping the planar region through the entire model.</li> <li>• From View — Sets a fence to include the contents of the selected view.</li> <li>• From File — Sets a fence to include the contents of a DGN file. An option menu lets you choose from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Active — elements in the active model from a selected view.</li> <li>○ All — elements in the active model and its references, from a selected view.</li> <li>○ Choose — elements from a selected reference (or the active model), which you identify by identifying an element from the required model/reference.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• From Flood — Sets a fence to include the (minimum) area enclosed by a set of elements.</li> </ul>
Fence Mode	Sets the Fence (Selection) Mode that, in conjunction with the fence placement, defines the fence contents for manipulation.

The Fence (Selection) Mode determines just what constitutes the contents of a fence — that is, whether the elements (or parts of elements) inside, outside, or overlapping the fence are “contained” by the fence to be processed.

- Inside — Only those elements completely inside the fence are processed.
- Overlap — Only those elements inside or overlapping the fence are processed.
- Clip — Only elements completely inside the fence and parts of elements inside and overlapping the fence are processed.
- Void — Only those elements completely outside the fence are processed.
- Void-Overlap — Only those elements outside or overlapping the fence are processed.
- Void-Clip — Only elements completely outside the fence and parts of elements outside and overlapping the fence are processed.

## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection



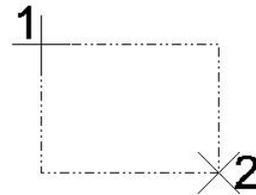
*Fence selection modes. Top, the fence and elements*

*Center Left: Inside; Center Middle: Overlap; Center Right: Clip*

*Bottom Left: Void; Bottom Middle: Void-Overlap; Bottom Right: Void-Clip*

### To place a rectangular fence

- 1) Select the *Place Fence* tool.  
If a fence already exists, it is removed.
- 2) In the Tool Settings window, set Fence Type to Block.
- 3) Enter a data point to define one corner.
- 4) Enter a data point to define the diagonally opposite corner.



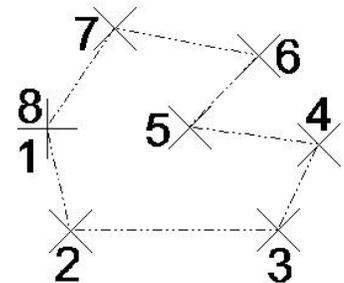
*Place Fence with Fence Type set to Block*

### Alternative Method – To place a rectangular fence

- 1) Select the *Place Fence* tool.  
If a fence already exists, it is removed.
- 2) In the Tool Settings window, set Fence Type to Block.
- 3) Click and drag the pointer from the first corner to the diagonally opposite corner.

### To place a polygonal (non-rectangular) fence

- 1) Select the *Place Fence* tool.  
If a fence already exists, it is removed.
- 2) In the Tool Settings window, set Fence Type to Shape.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the beginning (and end) point.
- 4) Continue to enter data points to define the vertices.
- 5) To close the shape, enter a data point at the location of the first data point.  
Or  
Click the Close Fence button.



*Place fence, with Fence Type set to shape*

## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection

### To place a circular fence

- 1) Select the *Place Fence* tool.  
If a fence already exists, it is removed.
- 2) In the Tool Settings window, set Fence Type to Circle.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the center.
- 4) Enter a data point to define the radius.

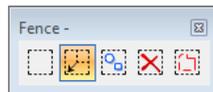
### To place a fence using an element

- 1) Select the *Place Fence* tool.  
If a fence already exists, it is removed.
- 2) In the Tool Settings window, set Fence Type to Element.
- 3) Identify a shape element that is the same shape as the fence shape you want to place.
- 4) Enter a data point to accept the element. A fence is placed.

**Note:** Selecting Place Fence automatically disables AccuDraw if it was not already disabled. To activate AccuDraw for use with Place Fence, select the Toggle AccuDraw tool in the Primary Tools toolbox.

If, after placing a fence but before selecting another tool, you decide the fence placement is unsatisfactory, simply reset to begin re-placing it.

### Modify Fence



Used to modify one vertex of a fence.



See the MicroStation on-line help documents for more information on the use of this tool.

### Manipulate Fence Contents



Used to manipulate the fence contents or extend or shorten elements that overlap the fence.



See the MicroStation on-line help documents for more information on the use of this tool.

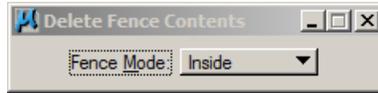
### Delete Fence Contents



Used to delete the fence contents, which are defined by a fence and the Fence (Selection) Mode, which determines what constitutes the contents of a fence.

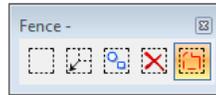
## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection

### To delete a fence's contents

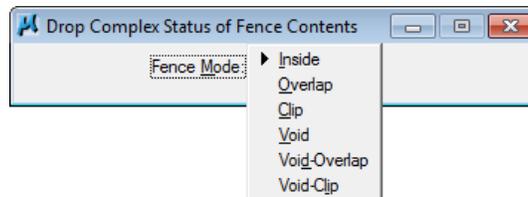


- 1) Select the Delete Fence Contents tool.
- 2) Accept the deletion.

### Drop Complex Status of Fence Contents



Used to break up the complex elements contained in a fence (cells, complex chains, complex shapes, text nodes, surfaces, and solids) into their components. The elements can then be manipulated individually.



Tool Settings	Effect
Fence Mode	<p>Sets how the fence contents are determined.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inside</li> <li>• Overlap</li> <li>• Clip</li> <li>• Void</li> <li>• Void-Overlap</li> <li>• Void-Clip</li> </ul>

### To drop the complex status of the fence contents

- 1) Select the *Drop Complex Status of Fence Contents* tool.
- 2) Accept the drop.
  - To selectively break up a specific complex element(s), use the Drop Complex Status tool.
  - The *Drop Complex Status of Fence Contents* tool cannot be used to disassociate a B-spline curve from its control polygon.

### 6.2 Select By Attributes

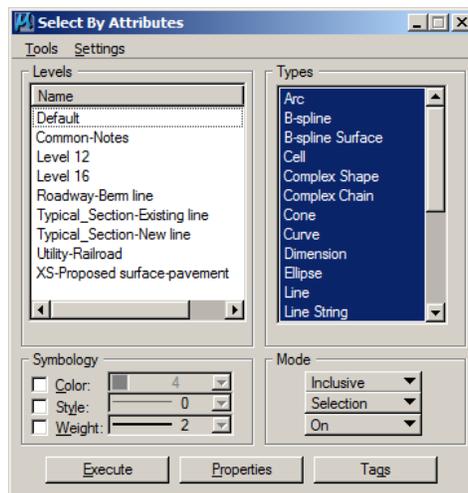
When you use the Element Selection tool, you can select, or group, the elements by a variety of means, including by:

- Level
- Color
- Line Style
- Line Weight
- Type
- Class
- Template

For example, you can request MicroStation to select all text elements or all elements with line weight 3. You can even specify search criteria based on different kinds of attributes — for example, green, dotted arc elements on level 12 and level 16.

By default, selected elements are bracketed with squares called handles. If any elements are selected, an arrowhead icon is displayed in the status bar. The number to the right of the icon is the number of selected elements.

The Select By Attributes dialog (Edit > Select By Attributes) provides additional attribute-based element selection options — selection by attached tag values and by properties. Properties include the area attribute, whether an element can be snapped to, whether it is locked, and whether it has been modified.

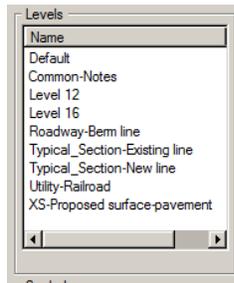


This dialog also provides the capability to filter the display of elements based on their attributes.

## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection

### Levels

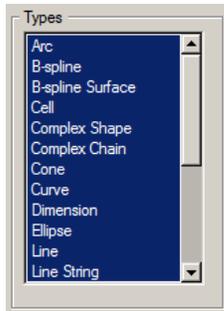
Used to specify level criteria.



To	Do this
Select a single level	Click the level.
Select many levels at once	Click and drag through the level list.
Select non-contiguous levels in the list	<Ctrl> click required levels.
Deselect a level	<Ctrl> click the highlighted level.

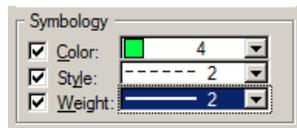
### Types

Used to specify criteria based on element type:



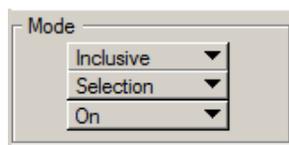
To	Do this
Select a single type	Click the type.
Select many types at once	Click and drag through the types.
Select non-contiguous types in the list	<Ctrl> click required types.
Deselect a type	<Ctrl> click the highlighted type.

### Symbology



Used to specify criteria based on element color, line style (including custom line style), and line weight.

### Mode



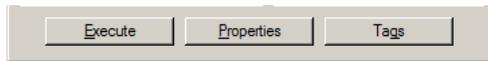
Three unlabeled option menus control the following:

Option menu	Description
Top	Controls which elements are selected, displayed, or located when the Execute button is clicked. Inclusive — All elements that match search criteria. Exclusive — All elements that do not match search criteria.

## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection

Middle	<p>Controls how criteria are used when the Execute button is clicked.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selection — Elements are selected based on Select By criteria.</li> <li>• Location — Filters location of elements based on Select By criteria. Elements can then be selected by using the Select All command.</li> <li>• Display — Filters display of elements based on Select By criteria.</li> </ul>
Bottom	<p>If set to On (the default), Select By criteria is effective. If set to Off, Select By criteria is ignored.</p>

### Execute



Selects, Locates, or Displays elements in accordance with the specified search criteria and Mode.

### Properties

Control	Criteria matched if on
Level	Levels
Symbology	Symbology
Type	Types
Properties	Properties
Class	Class

Opens the Select By Properties dialog, which is used to specify criteria based on less prominent element attributes, such as area and class.

### Tags

Opens the Select By Tags dialog, which is used to specify criteria based on tag values. If selection criteria based on tag values are specified, elements that do not have attached tags

with the specified tag name(s) will *not* be selected, located, or displayed.

### Tools menu > Set Select By from Element

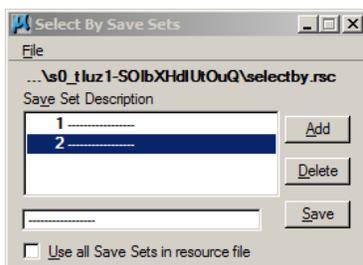


Opens the Set Select By dialog, which is used to set the search criteria so they match an element's attributes.

After you turn on the controls for the desired criteria, identify the element whose attributes you want to specify as criteria.

### Tools menu > Selector Save Sets

Opens the Select By Save Sets dialog, which is used to save and retrieve sets of search criteria settings.



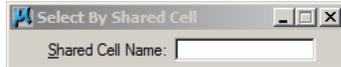
## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection

### Settings Menu > Cell



Opens the Select By Cell dialog, which is used to specify a criterion based on the name of an unshared cell.

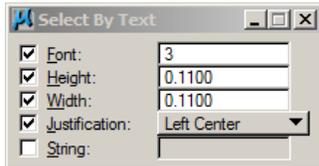
### Settings menu > Shared Cell



Opens the Select By Shared Cell dialog, which is used to specify a criterion based on the name of a shared cell.

### Settings menu > Text

Opens the Select By Text dialog, which is used to specify criteria based on element attributes specific to text elements. Text strings are case-sensitive. For example, inputting the string "North" would select "North", but not "north", nor "NORTH".



### Settings menu > Text Node

MoDOT does not use text nodes.

## MicroStation V8i – Element Selection

# Manipulate Elements

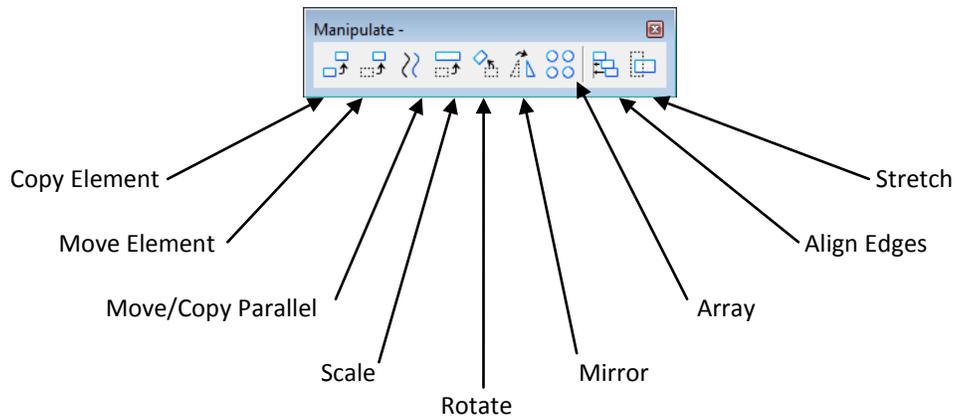
## Section 7

<b>7.0</b>	<b>Manipulate Elements tool box</b>	<b>Page 700</b>
<b>7.1</b>	<b>Copy Element</b>	<b>Page 700-701</b>
<b>7.2</b>	<b>Move Element</b>	<b>Page 701-702</b>
<b>7.3</b>	<b>Move/Copy Parallel</b>	<b>Page 702-703</b>
<b>7.4</b>	<b>Scale</b>	<b>Page 704-706</b>
<b>7.5</b>	<b>Rotate</b>	<b>Page 707-709</b>
<b>7.6</b>	<b>Mirror</b>	<b>Page 709-710</b>
<b>7.8</b>	<b>Constructing Arrays</b>	<b>Page 710-714</b>
<b>7.8</b>	<b>Align By Edge</b>	<b>Page 714-715</b>
<b>7.9</b>	<b>Stretching Elements</b>	<b>Page 715-716</b>

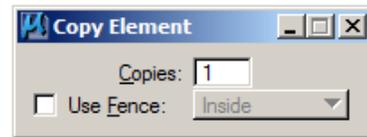


## 7.0 Manipulate Elements tool box

The tools in the Manipulate tool box are used to copy, move, resize, rotate, and/or mirror elements.



### 7.1 Copy Element



Used to copy an element(s).

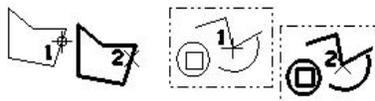
Tool Settings	Effect
Copies	Sets the number of copies to create.
Use Fence	If on, the fence contents are copied. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode.

#### To copy an element(s)

- 1) Select the *Copy* tool.
- 2) Identify the element.
- 3) Enter a data point to position the copy.

#### Alternative Method – To copy an element(s)

- 1) Select or fence the element(s).
- 2) Select the *Copy* tool.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the origin for the copy.
- 4) Enter a data point to position the copy.



## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

*Copy tool. Left, identifying an element to copy. Right, copying the fence contents with Use Fence on.*

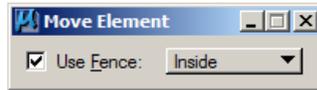
When you do not require precision, you can copy one or more selected elements by selecting them and dragging one of the elements by any point on the element except the handles while holding down the <Ctrl> key. (First start dragging and then press the key.)

Choosing Copy from the Reset pop-up menu selects the *Copy Element* tool. When the tool is selected in this manner, the copy operation affects all selected elements.

If you copy elements from an attached reference, the elements' levels will be copied if only they do not exist in the active model. To change how levels are handled, choose Preferences from the Workspace menu and select the Reference category.

### 7.2 Move Element

Used to move an element(s).



Tool Settings	Effect
Use Fence	If on, the fence contents are moved. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode

#### To move an element

- 1) Select the *Move* tool (be sure Use Fence is off).
- 2) Identify the element.
- 3) Enter a data point to reposition the element.

#### To move one or more selected elements

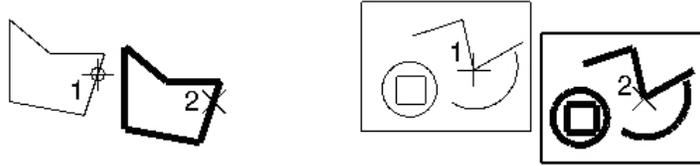
- 1) Select the element(s).
- 2) Select the *Move* tool.  
Be sure Use Fence is off.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the origin for the move.
- 4) Enter a data point to define the distance and direction of the move.  
The element(s) are repositioned.

#### To move fence contents

- 1) Place a fence around the element(s).
- 2) Select the *Move* tool.  
Be sure Use Fence is on.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the origin for the move.

## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

4) Enter a data point to reposition the fence contents.

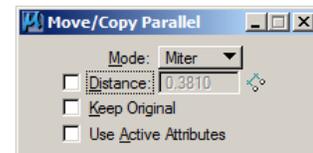


Move tool. Left, identifying an element to move. Right, moving the fence contents with Use Fence on.

When you do not require precision, you can move one or more selected elements by selecting them and dragging one of the elements by any point on the element except the handles.

Choosing Move from the Reset pop-up menu selects the *Move Element* tool. When the tool is selected in this manner, the move operation affects all selected elements.

### 7.3 Move/Copy Parallel



Used to move or copy an element (line, line string, multi-line, curve, arc, ellipse, shape, complex chain, or complex shape) parallel to the original.

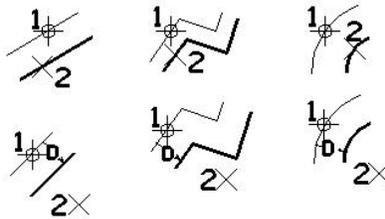
Tool Settings	Effect
Mode	<p>Determines the method by which the gap created, by moving two connected elements to a parallel location, is filled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Miter — Extends or shortens connecting segments while maintaining the angle of their connections.</li> <li>• Round — Fills the gap with a rounded arc between the two moved elements.</li> <li>• Original — Fills the gap in the same manner as the MicroStation/J implementation of this tool; the resulting element is the same type as the original element.</li> </ul> <p>For some element types — for example, ellipses — Original does not produce a true parallel offset. With an ellipse Miter or Round results in a B-spline, a true parallel offset, rather than an ellipse.</p>
Distance	If on, sets the distance to move.
Define Dist(ance)	Clicking the Define Dist button lets you define the distance to move, graphically with two data points. When you have defined the distance, the Distance setting is turned on automatically and the defined distance value is displayed in its field.
Keep Original	If on, the original elements are not manipulated.
Use Active Attributes	If on, the moved or copied element takes on the active attributes. If off, the moved or copied element retains the attributes of the existing element.

## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

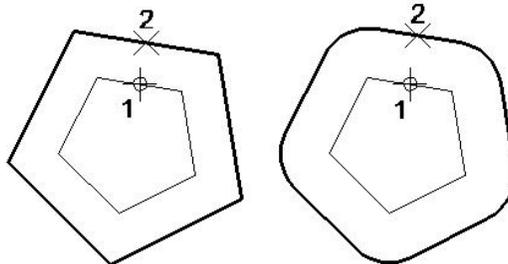
### To move or copy an element parallel to the original

- 1) Select the Move/Copy Parallel tool.
- 2) Identify the element.
- 3) Enter a data point.

Distance	Defines
Off	Distance and direction.
On	Direction only.



*Move/Copy Parallel tool. (Above) Top: Defining distance with a data point (Distance off) and Gap Mode set to Mitered. (Above) Bottom: Distance is keyed in (Distance on). In illustrations, Make Copy is on.*



Comparison of using the Move/Copy Parallel tool with Gap Mode set to Mitered (left) and Rounded (right).

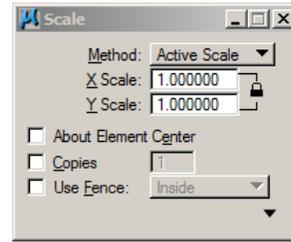
### To move or copy an element, parallel to the original, by a graphically defined distance

- 1) Select the Move/Copy Parallel tool.
- 2) Click the Define Dist button.
- 3) Define the required distance with two data points.
- 4) Identify the element.
- 5) Define the direction to move or copy the element.

You can instead use the Move Element tool in conjunction with AccuDraw to constrain element movement.

## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

### 7.4 Scale



Used to resize an element(s). Elements can be scaled individually, as a selected group, or within a fence. When About Element Center is turned on, selected elements are scaled about their (individual) center points.

Tool Settings	Effect
Method	<p>Sets the method used to scale an element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active Scale — Scale by the active scale factors (X Scale, Y Scale, and Z Scale). If a scale factor is 0-1 (for example, 0.25), size in that direction is decreased; if a scale factor is greater than 1, size in that direction is increased.</li> <li>3 points — Scale graphically, through the entry of three data points. The scale factors are computed by dividing the distance between the first and third points by the distance between the first and second points.</li> </ul>
X Scale	Scale factor along view x-axis (horizontal), when Method is Active Scale.
Y Scale	Scale factor along view y-axis (vertical), when Method is Active Scale.
Z Scale	(3D only) Scale factor along view z-axis (depth), when Method is Active Scale.
Proportional	(Method set to 3 points only) If on, the element(s) proportions are maintained.
About Element Center	<p>If on, in Extended Information section of tool settings, the selected element(s) is scaled about its center point instead of a selected point. Cells and text elements are scaled about their origins.</p> <p>Elements may be selected individually, or you can select multiple elements to scale in a selection set or using a fence. Where multiple elements are selected, they all will be scaled about their own center points.</p>
Copies	If on, the element(s) are copied and the copy(s) are scaled; the original(s) are not manipulated. The adjacent field sets the number of scaled copies to create.
Use Fence	If on, the fence contents are scaled. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode.
Scale Multi-line Offsets	If on, multi-line offsets are scaled (for example, to scale wall thickness when resizing a room).
Scale Dimension Values	<p>If on, dimension values are modified to reflect the size of the scaled dimension.</p> <p>If off, only the dimension elements are scaled, while the dimension value remains unchanged.</p>
Scale Annotations	<p>If on, annotations are scaled. An annotation is an annotation-able element that is placed with the annotation scale lock on. Annotation-able element types are dimensions, text elements, text nodes, notes, detailing symbols, annotation cells, tags, and linestyles.</p> <p>If off, size of annotations remains unchanged (We do not use Scale Annotations at MoDOT).</p>

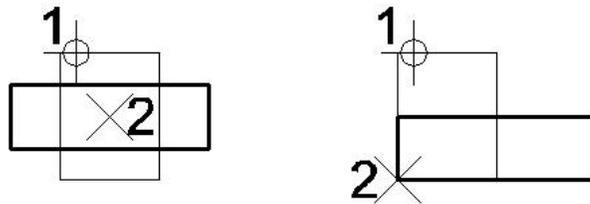
## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

### To scale an element(s) by the active scale factors

- 1) Select or fence the element(s).
- 2) Select the *Scale* tool.
- 3) In the tool settings window, set Method to Active Scale.
- 4) Enter a data point to define the point about which the element(s) are scaled.

### Alternative Method — To scale an element(s) by the active scale factors

- 1) Select the *Scale* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Method to Active Scale.
- 3) Identify the element.
- 4) Enter a data point to define the point about which the element(s) are scaled.



*Scale, with Method set to Active Scale. Illustrations show X Scale = 2.0, Y Scale = 0.5, and Make Copy on.*

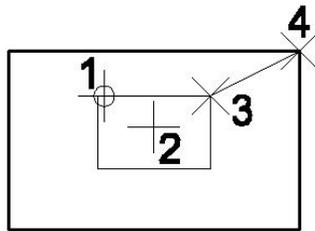
### To scale an element(s) graphically

- 1) Select or fence the element(s).
- 2) Select the *Scale* tool.
- 3) In the tool settings window, set Method to 3 points.
- 4) Enter a data point to define the point to scale about.
- 5) Enter a data point to define a known location or keypoint.
- 6) Enter a data point to define scaling factors.

## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

### Alternative Method — To scale an element(s) graphically

- 1) Select the *Scale* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Method to 3 points.
- 3) Identify the element.
- 4) Enter a data point to define the point to scale about.
- 5) Enter a data point to define a known location or keypoint.
- 6) Enter a data point to define scaling factors.



*Scale, with Method set to 3 points.*

### To scale elements, in a fence, about their centers (by a scale factor)

- 1) Use the Place Fence tool to place a fence around the elements.
- 2) Select the *Scale* tool.  
The Scale settings window opens.
- 3) Set Method to Active Scale and set the scale factor.
- 4) Turn on About Element Center (in the Extended Information section of the tool settings).
- 5) Enter a data point to accept the scaled elements.

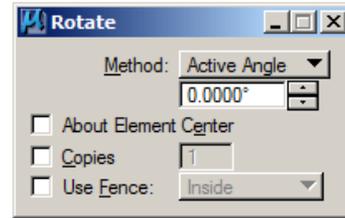


*Left: Selecting the elements to scale with a fence.*

*Right: After scaling the elements with About Element Center turned on (originals shown dashed).*

Choosing Scale from the Reset pop-up menu selects the *Scale* tool. When the tool is selected in this manner, the scale operation affects all selected elements.

## 7.5 Rotate



Used to rotate an element(s). Elements can be rotated individually, as a selected group, or within a fence. When About Element Center is turned on, selected elements are rotated about their (individual) center points.

Tool Settings	Effect
Method	<p>Sets the method used to rotate an element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active Angle — The element(s) are rotated by the Active Angle, which can be keyed in.</li> <li>2 Points — The angle of rotation is defined by entering two data points.</li> <li>3 points — The angle of rotation is defined by three data points.</li> </ul>
About Element Center	<p>If on, in Extended Information section of tool settings, the selected element(s) is rotated about its center point instead of a selected point. Cells and text elements are rotated about their origins.</p> <p>Elements may be selected individually, or you can select multiple elements to rotate in a selection set or using a fence. Where multiple elements are selected they all will be rotated about their own center points.</p>
Copies	<p>If on, the element(s) are copied and the copy(s) are rotated; the original(s) are not manipulated. The adjacent field sets the number of rotated copies to create.</p>
Use Fence	<p>If on, the fence contents are rotated. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode.</p>

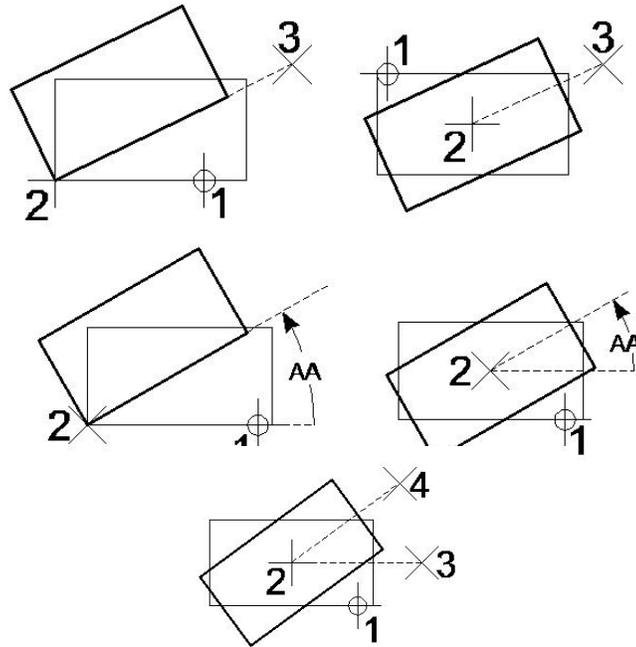
### To rotate an element(s)

- 1) Select or fence the element(s).
- 2) Select the *Rotate* tool.
- 3) Enter a data point to define the pivot point.  
If Method is set to Active Angle, the element(s) are rotated by the Active Angle; repeat to rotate the element(s) again. Otherwise, continue with step 4.
- 4) If Method is set to 2 Points, enter a data point to define the angle of rotation graphically.  
or  
If Method is set to 3 points, enter a data point to define the start of rotation.  
If Method is set to 2 Points, the element(s) are rotated; repeat to rotate the element(s) again. Otherwise, continue with step 5.
- 5) Enter a data point to define the angle of rotation graphically.

## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

### Alternative Method – To rotate an element(s)

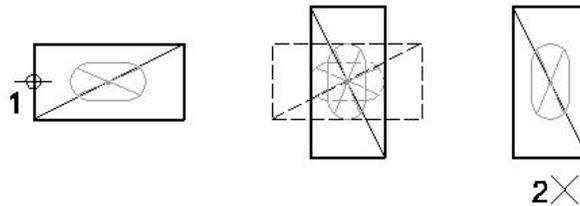
- 1) Select the *Rotate* tool.
- 2) Identify the element.
- 3) Follow steps 3–5 above.



*Rotate tool. Top: with Method set to 2 Points. Middle: with Method set to Active Angle and Active Angle set to 30°. Bottom: with Method set to 3 points.*

### To rotate an element by the Active Angle about its center

- 1) Select the *Rotate* tool.
- 2) Set Method to Active Angle and set the required angle.
- 3) Turn on About Element Center (in the Extended Information section of the tool settings).
- 4) Identify the element to be rotated.  
The rotation is displayed dynamically.
- 5) Accept to complete the rotation.



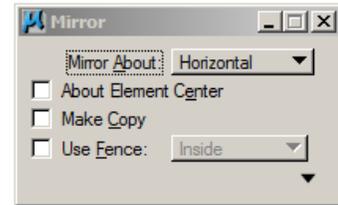
*With Method set to Active Angle and About Element Center turned on:  
 Left: Identify the element (1) — a cell in the illustration  
 Center: The rotation displays dynamically  
 Right: Accept (2) to complete the rotation about the center of the element*

## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

Choosing Rotate from the Reset pop-up menu selects the *Rotate* tool. When the tool is selected in this manner, the rotate operation affects all selected elements.

If Use Fence is on and the rotation is repeated, any element(s) inside the moved fence are copied along with the original fence contents.

### 7.6 Mirror



Used to mirror an element(s).

Tool Settings	Effect
Mirror About	Sets direction in which element(s) are mirrored: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Horizontal — about horizontal axis.</li> <li>• Vertical — about vertical axis.</li> <li>• Line — about line defined by two data points.</li> </ul>
Make Copy	If on, the element(s) are copied and the copy(s) are mirrored; the original(s) are not manipulated.
Mirror Text	If on, text is mirrored.
Mirror Multi-line Offsets	If on, multi-line profile offsets are mirrored.
Use Fence	If on, the fence contents are mirrored. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode

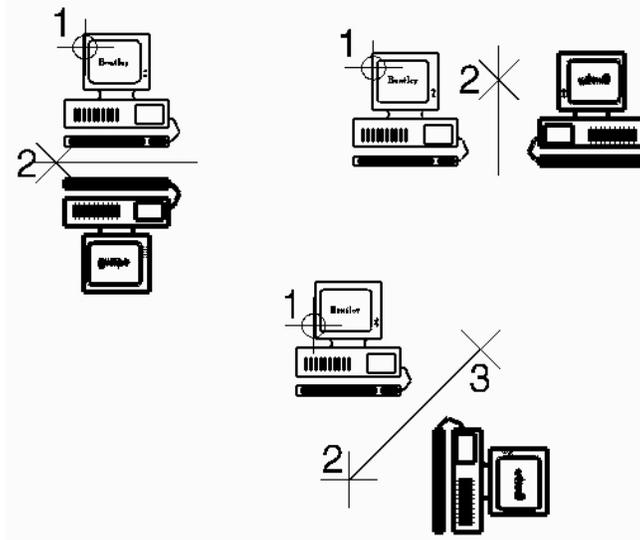
#### To mirror an element(s)

- 1) Select or fence the element(s).
- 2) Select the *Mirror* tool.
- 3) Enter a data point.  
If Mirror About is set to Horizontal or Vertical, the element(s) are mirrored.  
If Mirror About is set to Line, this data point defines one point on the mirroring line.
- 4) If Mirror About is set to Line, enter another data point to define another point on the mirroring line.  
The element(s) are mirrored. You can go back to step 3 to mirror the element(s) again.

## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

### Alternative Method – To mirror an element(s)

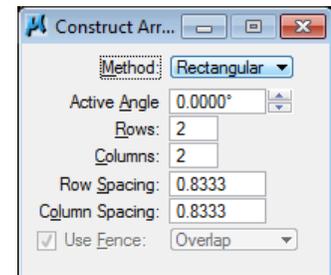
- 1) Select the *Mirror* tool.
- 2) Identify the element.
- 3) Follow steps 3 and 4 above.



*Mirror tool. Clockwise from top left: Mirror About Horizontal, Vertical, and Line. Mirror Text is on.*

Choosing Mirror from the Reset pop-up menu selects the *Mirror* tool. When the tool is selected in this manner, the mirror operation affects all selected elements.

## 7.7 Constructing Arrays



Used to copy an element(s) many times to create an array.

Tool Settings	Effect
Method	Set the type of array that is constructed; different tool settings are available depending on how this is set. Rectangular — Construct a Rectangular array Polar — Construct a Polar (circular) array Along Path — Construct an array along a path element.
Active Angle	(Rectangular array type) Aligns the imaginary orthogonal grid on which the copies are placed.
Rows	(Rectangular array type) The number of rows.

## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

Columns	(Rectangular array type) The number of columns.
Row Spacing	(Rectangular array type) The space between rows.
Column Spacing	(Rectangular array type) The space between columns.
Items	(Polar array type) Sets the number of items or copies of the fence contents in the array, including the original.
Delta Angle	(Polar array type) Sets the angle between items. If positive, copies are placed counterclockwise. If negative, copies are placed clockwise.
Rotate Items	(Polar array type) If on, the element(s) are rotated about the center of the array. (Along Path array type) If on, the element(s) are rotated to maintain their relative orientation to the path element.
Mode	(Along Path array type) Sets the way that the array is created. Number — Defines the number of items in the array, via the Copies setting. Distance — Defines the distance between items in the array, via the Distance setting. Both — Defines the number of items in the array and the distance between each item, via the Copies and Distance settings respectively.
Use Fence	If on, the fence contents are copied into an array. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode.

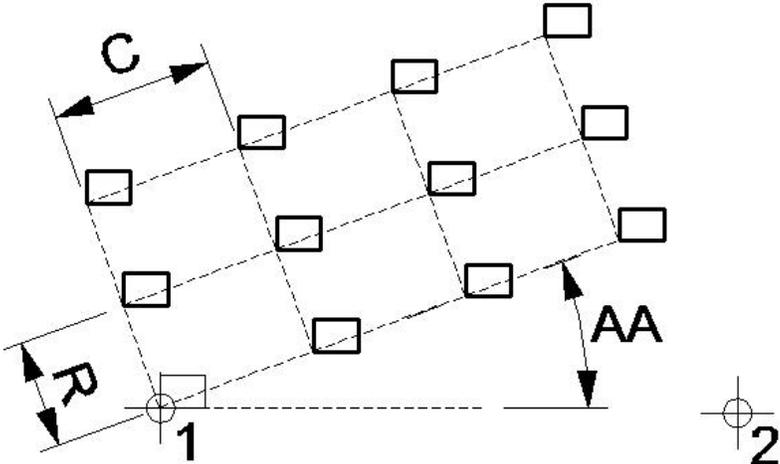
### To create a rectangular array

1. Select or fence the element(s).  
The element(s) become the lower left items of the array.
2. Select the *Construct Array* tool.
3. In the tool settings window, set Array Type to Rectangular.
4. (Optional) As needed, adjust other settings.
5. Accept the array.

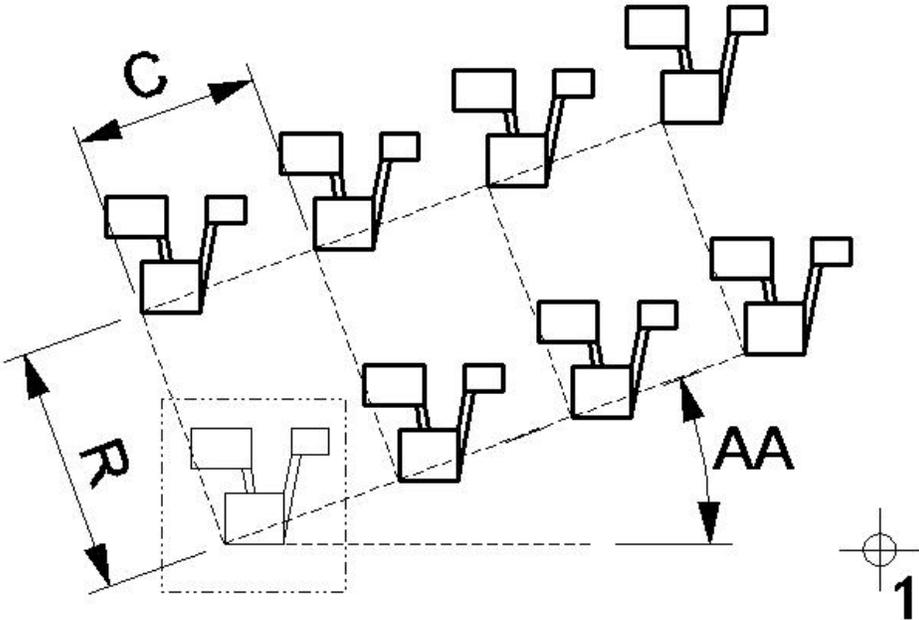
# MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

## Alternative Method – To create a rectangular array

- 1. Select the *Construct Array* tool.
- 2. In the tool settings window, set Array Type to Rectangular.
- 3. Identify the element.  
The element becomes the lower left element of the array.
- 4. Follow steps 4–5 above.



Constructing a rectangular array from an element: Identify the element (1) and accept (2). “C” denotes the column spacing, “R” the row spacing, and “AA” the active angle.



Constructing a rectangular array of fence contents (with Use Fence turned on): Accept the fence contents (1). “C” denotes the column spacing, “R” the row spacing, and “AA” the active angle.

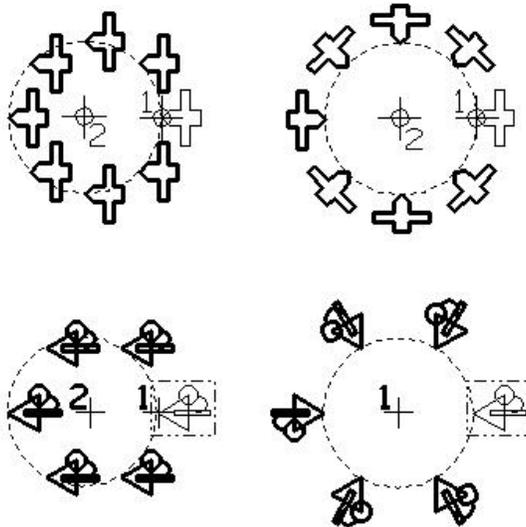
## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

### To create a polar array

1. Select or fence the element(s).
2. Select the *Construct Array* tool.
3. In the Tool Settings window, set Array Type to Polar.
4. Enter a data point to define the array's center.

### Alternative Method — To create a polar array

1. Select the *Construct Array* tool.
2. In the Tool Settings window, set Array Type to Polar.
3. Identify the element to copy.
4. Enter a data point to define the array's center.  
The point at which the element is identified (step 3) is positioned in each copy on an imaginary circle.

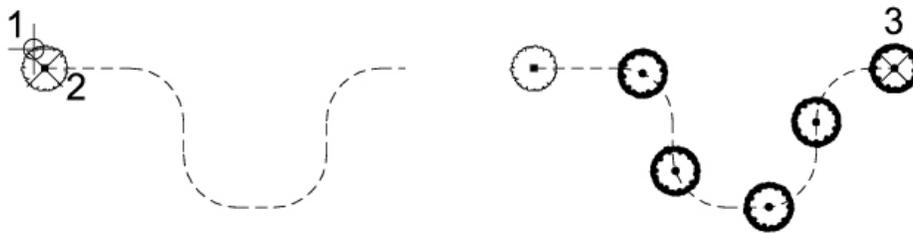


Constructing a polar array. Top: Identifying an element. Number of Items is 8 and Delta Angle is 45°. Bottom: Copying fence contents (Use Fence on). Number of Items is 6 and Delta Angle is 60°.

## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

### To create an array along a path

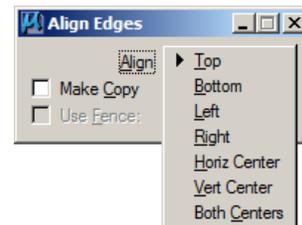
1. Select the *Construct Array* tool.
2. In the Tool Settings window, set Array Type to Along Path.
3. Adjust other settings as required.
4. Identify the element to copy, at the point to use as the array reference.
5. Identify the path element at the start point for the array.
6. Accept at the required end point along the path element.  
The array is constructed along the path, between the defined points.



*Left: Identify the element to array (1), and the start point for the path element (2).*

*Right: Accept at the required end point along the path element (3).*

## 7.8 Align Edges



Used to align an element(s) to an edge of another element.

Tool Settings	Effect
Align	Sets the manner by which to align: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Top</li> <li>• Bottom</li> <li>• Left</li> <li>• Right</li> <li>• Horiz(ontal) Center</li> <li>• Vert(ical) Center</li> <li>• Both Centers</li> </ul>
Make Copy	If on, the element(s) are copied and the copy(s) are aligned to the identified base element; the original(s) are not manipulated.
Use Fence	If on, the fence contents are aligned. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode

## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

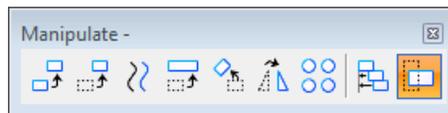
### To align elements to another element

- 1) Select or fence the elements to align.
- 2) Select the *Align Edges* tool.
- 3) Identify the base element to which to align the selected elements.  
The selected elements are aligned to the edge of the base element.
- 4) Accept the alignment to the base element.

### Alternative Method – To align elements to another element

- 1) Select the *Align Edges* tool.
- 2) Identify the base element to which to align other elements.  
The base element highlights, and a range block is displayed normal to the view.
- 3) Identify an element to align.  
The identified element is aligned to the edge of the base element, which remains highlighted with the range block.
- 4) Continue identifying elements until all of the desired elements are aligned to the base element.
- 5) Accept the last element's alignment to the base element.  
The base element remains highlighted with the range block.
- 6) Reset.

## 7.9 Stretch Element



Used to stretch fence contents, which are defined by a fence. The fence can be an existing fence, or you can define a new rectangular (only) fence with this tool.

The *Stretch Element* tool operates on elements as follows:

- A vertex of a line, line string, multi-line, or shape is moved if it is inside the fence. A vertex outside the fence is not moved.
- An endpoint of an arc is moved if it is inside the fence. An arc endpoint outside the fence is not moved.
- An ellipse, circle, or cell is moved if it is completely inside the fence.
- One or more poles (control points) of a B-spline surface, that are located inside the fence, are moved

You can use the *Stretch Element* tool to manipulate breaks (such as breaks in multi-lines, which are often used to represent windows or doorways when the multi-line itself is the wall). For instance, you can place your fence to include a window, and move the window along the wall. You may also change the size of the window by including only the start or end of the break in the fence. This means that in most cases, you do not have to drop the multi-line into its component elements to perform such manipulations.

## MicroStation V8i – Manipulate Elements

You cannot move the break off the multi-line segment that contains it. If you move the fence so the start or endpoint of a break would move off the segment, the break position will simply be projected to the nearest point on the segment. If you move a break off the end of the segment, it will simply be deleted.

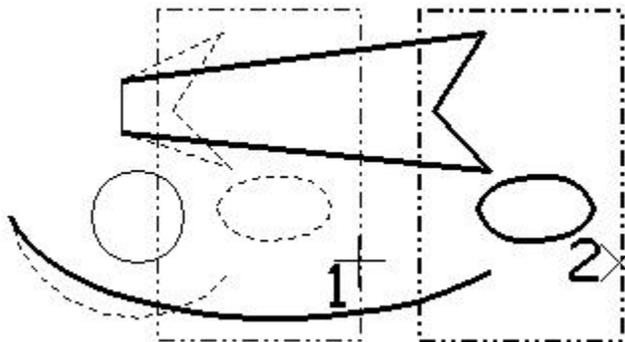
Tool Settings	Effect
Use Fence	(Fence present only) If on, the current active fence is used.
Stretch Cells	If on, cells that overlap the fence are stretched.

### To stretch segments of elements that overlap a fence

1. Select the *Stretch Element* tool.
2. Enter a data point to define one corner of the fence.
3. Enter a data point to define the diagonally opposite corner of the fence.
4. Enter a data point to define the origin point.
5. Enter a data point to reposition the fence and the affected elements and/or vertices.

### To stretch segments of elements that overlap an existing fence

1. Use the *Place Fence* tool to place a fence around the segments that you wish to stretch.
2. Select the *Stretch Element* tool.
3. Turn on Use Fence.
4. Enter a data point to define the origin point.
5. Enter a data point to reposition the fence and the affected elements and/or vertices.



*Stretching elements that overlap an existing fence.*

# Levels

## Section 8

<b>8.0</b>	<b>Levels</b>	<b>Page 800</b>
<b>8.1</b>	<b>Level Display</b>	<b>Page 800-807</b>
<b>8.2</b>	<b>Level Manager</b>	<b>Page 807-809</b>



## MicroStation V8i - Levels

### 8.0 Levels

Levels within MicroStation are very much like a series of transparent overlays. These levels can be used to organize information within the design file. They also allow the user to interact with the design file more efficiently through the ability to turn on and off levels of information to enhance viewing and working within that file.

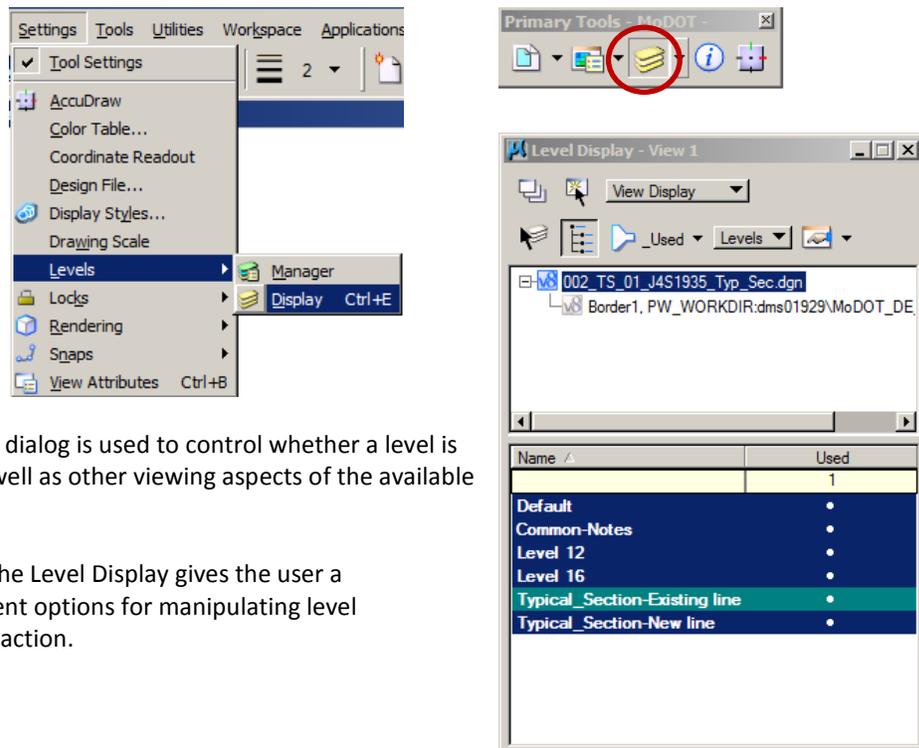
MicroStation V8i employs a “named” level system rather than a numbered level system used in older versions such as MicroStation J. MicroStation V8i is also not restricted to the 63 levels used in the previous versions. At the date of this publication, MoDOT has over 600 levels in use.

MoDOT will utilize a series of levels with names reflecting the type of elements that our different offices work within their files. The first 63 levels in MoDOT’s new level system correspond to the old numbered system from MicroStation J.

### 8.1 Level Display

Used to turn on and turn off levels in a model. Also used to apply filters created in the Level Manager dialog to a model.

Opens when the *Level Display* icon in the Primary Tools toolbox is selected, when Levels > Display is chosen from the Settings menu, or when Level Display is chosen from a view window control menu.



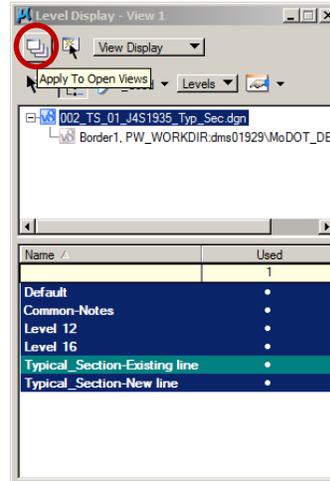
The Level Display dialog is used to control whether a level is visible or not as well as other viewing aspects of the available levels.

Once activated, the Level Display gives the user a number of different options for manipulating level viewing and interaction.

## MicroStation V8i - Levels

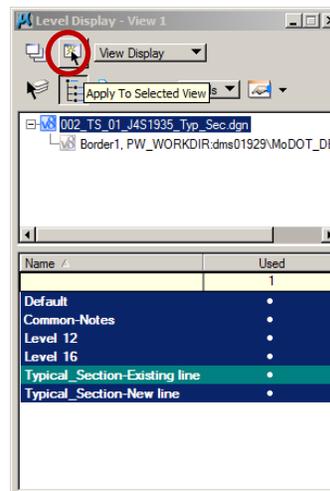
### Apply To Open Views

If on, targets the open views for level display settings adjustment.



### Apply To Selected View

If on, targets the selected view for level display settings adjustment.



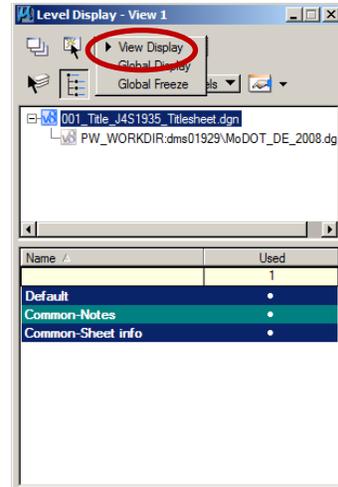
## MicroStation V8i - Levels

### Mode (option menu)

Sets the operating mode for this dialog.

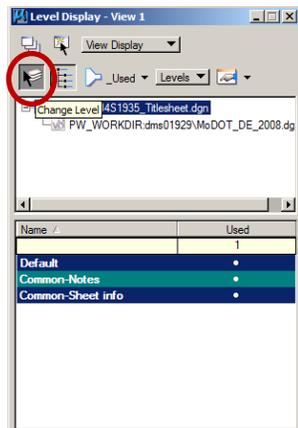
Turning on/off View Display, Global Display, or Global Freeze is basically the same as thawing/freezing levels, with one difference. When a level is frozen, any cells or references placed on that level will not be displayed, regardless of how levels are used in the elements that make up the cell or reference.

- View Display — Changes in the level display affect the chosen view in the active model or the level.
- Global Freeze — Indicates whether the level is frozen. If frozen, elements on the level are not displayed and cannot be printed. When a level is frozen, all component elements contained in shared cell instances or references placed on that level are not displayed. If a reference is assigned to a level, and the level is frozen, it does not display.
- Global Display — Changes in the level display affect all views in all models in the open file.



### Change Level

Opens the Change Level tool, which is used to toggle the display or locked status of a level.



Tool Settings	Effect
Level	<p>Sets the mode of the change.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Display Only — Turn on the display the selected level(s) only.</li> <li>• Display Off — Turn off the display of the selected level(s).</li> <li>• Lock — Lock the display of the selected level(s) in the current state.</li> <li>• Unlock — Unlock the display of the selected level(s).</li> <li>• Set Target — Set the target level for the display of the selected level(s).</li> <li>• Set Active — Set the active level for the display of the selected level(s).</li> </ul>

## MicroStation V8i - Levels

### To display elements on the selected level only

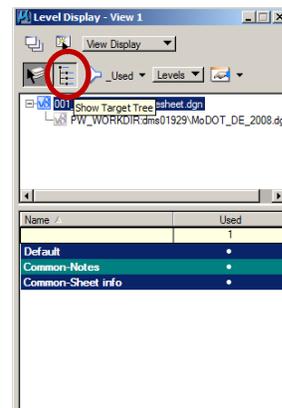
1. From the Level Display dialog, click the Change Level icon. The Change Level tool settings box opens.
2. Choose Display Only.
3. Identify an element on the level to be display
4. Accept the change  
Only elements on that level display.

### To turn off the display of a level(s)

1. From the Level Display dialog, click the Change Level icon. The Change Level tool settings box opens.
2. Choose Display Off.
3. Identify an element on the level to be turned off.
4. Accept the change  
The display of the selected level is turned off.

### Show Target Tree

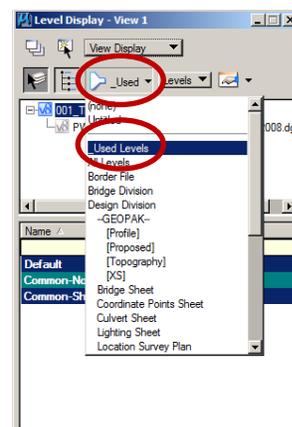
Toggles the display of the target tree, which is used to set the target model for level display settings changes or sets the model as a target.



### List filter (option menu)

If the mode option menu is set to Levels, sets the Filter — named or defined on-the-fly— applied to level display

We normally keep this set to USED so that we can see any levels that are available in the file.



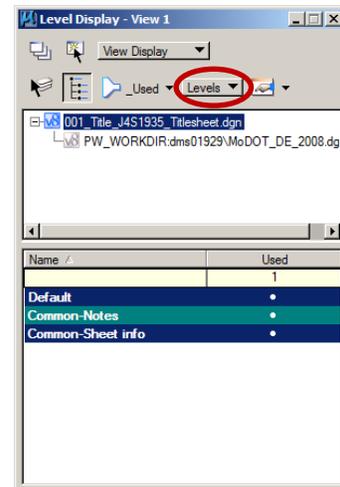
## MicroStation V8i - Levels

### Show level names or filters (option menu)

Determines the contents of the list box.

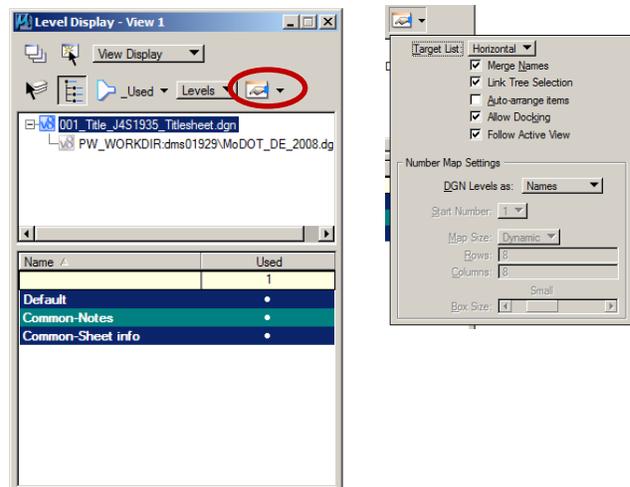
- Filters — Lists level filters defined in the open file (and in reference attachments if they are included in the target tree).
- Levels — Lists the levels in the open file (and in reference attachments if they are selected in the target tree).

At MoDOT, we normally leave this set to LEVELS.



### Dialog Properties

Pops up the Level Display Properties dialog, which is used to set the properties of the Level Display dialog.



### Target List

Sets the orientation of the Level Display dialog.

- Horizontal — Sets the Level Display dialog to display the Target Tree above the list box.
- Vertical — Sets the Level Display dialog to display the Target Tree on the left and the list box on the right side.

### Merge Names

When multiple targets are selected, only unique level names are displayed. For example, if 10 instance of the same level name exists that level name will only appear once.

### Link Tree Selection

Links the actions of the Level Manager and the Level Display dialog. When turned on, any target file(s) selected in the tree in Level Manager are selected in Level Display and vice versa..

### Auto-arrange items

## MicroStation V8i - Levels

If on, icons in the tool bar wrap when the dialog is resized.

### Allow Docking

If on, the next time you open the Level Display dialog, it will be available for docking.

### DGN Levels as:

Sets the interface of the Level Display dialog to display Names or Number Map.

- Names — Sets the Level Display dialog to display a list of levels by name.
- Number Map — Sets the Level Display dialog to display levels by a matrix of numbers and makes the following options available.

### Start Number

If DGN Levels is set to Number Map, defines 0 or 1 as the first level displayed.

- 0 — Displays zero as the first level.
- 1 — Displays one as the first level.

### Map Size

If DGN Levels is set to Number Map, sets the map size as either Fixed or Dynamic.

- Dynamic — Dynamically changes the number of rows and columns in the Number Map when the dialog is resized.
- Fixed — Sets the map size display as fixed.

### Rows

If Map Size is set to Fixed, sets the number of rows in the Number Map.

### Columns

If Map Size is set to Fixed, sets the number of columns in the Number Map.

### Box Size

Sets the size of the boxes in the Number Map. Options are:

- Smallest
- Small
- Medium
- Large
- Largest

### Target Tree

## MicroStation V8i - Levels

Used to select the target model for level display settings changes. This tree control enables selection of the active model, another model in the open DGN file, or an attached reference in the open file or another file, as the target.

Right-clicking in the target tree area opens up a pop-up menu with the following options:

- Reference — opens the References dialog or Attach Reference dialog.
- Update Levels
- Select All
- Select None
- Invert Selection
- Cut
- Copy
- Paste
- Properties

A dimmed entry in the tree indicates that the display of that reference is turned off.

### Levels (list box)

Lists the levels (or filters if Mode is set to Filters) in the target model.

Right-clicking the title of the list box brings up a pop-up menu with the following options:

- Save Layout
- Name – displays the name of the level.
- Library — shows whether the level was imported from a library.
- Number
- Description
- File in which it resides
- Logical — either Master (for the open DGN file) or the reference Logical name.
- Color – indicates either the ByLevel or Override color, depending on the value of the symbology in the Level Manager dialog.
- Style – indicates either the ByLevel or Override style, depending on the value of the symbology in the Level Manager dialog.
- Weight – indicates either the ByLevel or Override weight, depending on the value of the symbology in the Level Manager dialog.
- Material – indicates either the ByLevel or Override material, depending on the value of the symbology in the Level Manager dialog.
- Lock — indicates whether the level is locked. If locked, you cannot manipulate or modify its existing elements. However, you can copy elements on locked levels. You can click in the Lock column to change the level's Lock setting.
- Plot — indicates whether elements on the level can be printed.
- Used — shows whether the level is used in its references.
- Elements — lists the number of elements on the level.
- New Level— indicates whether the specified level is new.
- Show All
- List – opens the Show/Hide Tools option box, which allows you to turn display options on and off.
- Restore Defaults

Right-clicking on a level in the list box, pops up the following options.

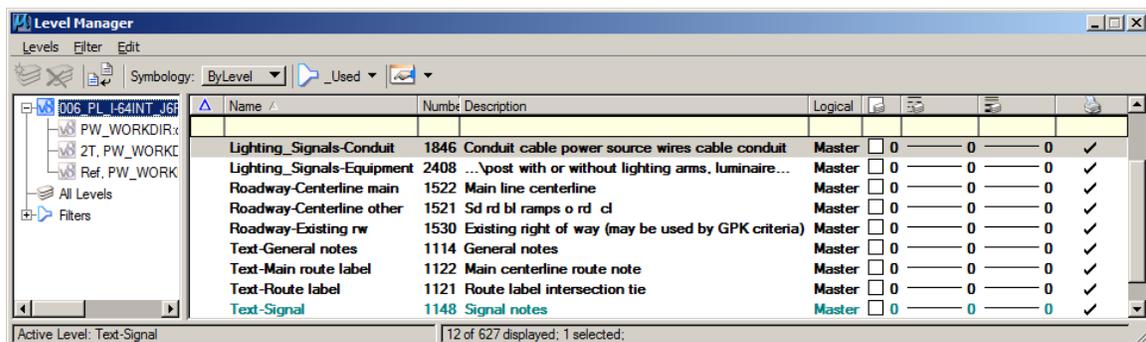
## MicroStation V8i - Levels

Menu Item	Description
Set Active	Sets the selected (highlighted) level to the active level in the active model.
Jump To Active Level	Takes you to the active level.
Create Display Set	Creates a display set.
All On	Turns on all levels in the file (and attached references if they are included in the Target field).
All Off	Turns off all levels in the file (and attached references if they are included in the Target field).
Invert On/Off	Selects all unselected and deselects all selected levels listed in the dialog.
Off By Element	Opens the Change Level tool in Display Off mode.
All Except Element	Opens the Change Level tool in Display Only mode.
Save Filter	If the Mode is Levels and Untitled, All Levels or a filter is select from the Filter List, the filter row appears allowing you to create an on-the-fly filter. Clicking Save Filter opens the Save Filter dialog for saving and naming the filter.
Level Manager	Opens the Level Manager dialog.

## 8.2 Level Manager

The Level manager displays information about levels and filters for the active design file and all available reference files. The Level manager also allows you to attach and detach reference files.

The Level Manager can be launched by choosing the Level > Manager option from the Settings menu at the top of the MicroStation screen. It can also be accessed from the context menu when right-clicking within the Levels List Box in the Level Display dialog box.

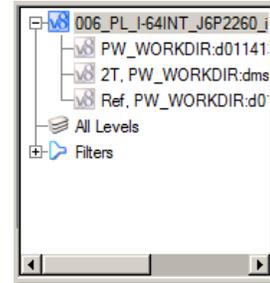


## MicroStation V8i - Levels

### Files, Levels, and Filter List

Displays the models, levels, and filters for the file.

- The current model is listed. You can expand (+) or contract (-) it to show or hide attached references. The levels for the model or selected reference are displayed in the detail section on the right.
- All Levels shows level information within all models in the open file.
- The Filters list can be expanded (+) or contracted (-) to show or hide named filters. These filters customize the level displays based on user-defined search criteria. When you select Filters, a list of all filters and their search criteria appears in the detail section. When you select a named filter, the search criteria are applied to the levels for the model.



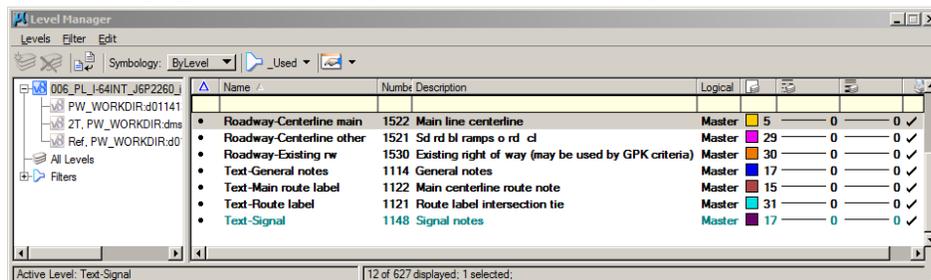
If you select a named filter and right-click, you have the following options:

Menu Item	Usage
New	Creates a new filter.
Level Group	Opens the Level Groups dialog, which lets you select a list of levels for the filter.
Filter Group	Opens the Filter Groups dialog, which lets you use existing filters with set operations to define a new filter.
Cut	Cuts a filter from its present location on the filter list to be placed in a different location. If a filter is moved under another filter, it inherits the top-level filter settings.
Copy	Copies a filter from its present location on the filter list to a different location. If a filter is moved under another filter, it inherits the top-level filter settings.
Paste	Places a filter in the selected location on the filter list. If a filter is moved under another filter, it inherits the top-level filter settings.
Move	Moves a filter from its present location on the filter list to a different location. If a filter is moved under another filter, it inherits the top-level filter settings.
Delete	Removes a filter from the filter list.
Rename	Lets you enter a new name for the filter.
Properties	Opens the Level Properties dialog, which is used to set the preferences of the filter.

### Levels list

Shows the attributes and properties of individual levels for the selected file or reference. You can filter this list using the dialog's Filter option. The list entry for the Active Level is displayed in the color cyan.

To modify attributes and properties for a level, select the level in the list, and click in a column.



## MicroStation V8i - Levels

A level's list entry shows:

- **Modified** – The field is populated if one or more of the level attributes or properties differs from the source. The source could be either a library or reference level. With respect to reference levels, Modified is always in the context of the reference source regardless of whether the reference level is also a library level.

A tool tip listing the out-of-sync attribute or property displays when the cursor is over the modified icon.

- **Name** – displays the name of the level.
- **Library** – shows whether the level was imported from a library.
- **Number**
- **Description**
- **File in which it resides**
- **Logical** – either Master (for the open DGN file) or the reference Logical name.
- **Color**
- **Style**
- **Weight**
- **Material** – allows additional, global control of material specifications.
- **Global Display** – indicates whether elements on the level are displayed. You can click the Global Display column to change the level's Display setting for all views in all models in the open DGN file.
- **Global Freeze** – indicates whether the level is frozen. If frozen, elements on the level are not displayed and cannot be printed. When a level is frozen, all component elements contained in shared cell instances or references placed on that level are not displayed.

You can click in the Global Freeze column to change the level's Global Freeze setting for all views in all models in the open DGN file.

- **Lock** – indicates whether the level is locked. If locked, you cannot manipulate or modify its existing elements. However, you can copy elements on locked levels. You can click in the Lock column to change the level's Lock setting.
- **Plot** – indicates whether elements on the level can be printed.
- **Used** – shows whether the level is used in its references.
- **Elements** – list the number of elements on the level.
- **Priority** – (2D models only) identifies the level display priority value. A level with the highest priority value displays in front, while a level with the lowest priority value displays in back. Reference and element priority values also affect the display.
- **Transparency** – identifies the level transparency value. A value of 0 indicates no transparency and a value of 100% indicates almost complete transparency.
- **Show All**
- **List** – opens the Show/Hide Tools option box, which allows you to turn display options on and off.

If you select one or more levels and right-click, a pop-up menu provides options for managing levels.

These options are also available on the Level, Filters, and Edit menus and the toolbar. In addition, you can choose:

- **Jump to Active Level** – Takes you to the active level.
- **Remap Elements** – Opens the Remap Elements to Level dialog.

A level displays as bold when it is used in a model, cell definition or dimension style.

## MicroStation V8i - Levels

# Changing & Modifying Elements

## Section 9

9.0	Change Attributes Tool Box	Page	900
9.1	Change Element Attributes	Page	900-902
9.2	Change Element Fill Type	Page	902-903
9.3	Modify Line Style Attributes	Page	903-905
9.4	SmartMatch	Page	905
9.5	Modify Tool Box	Page	906
9.6	Modify Element	Page	906-912
9.7	Delete Part of Element	Page	913
9.8	Break Element	Page	913
9.9	Extend	Page	914
9.10	Extend 2 Elements to Intersection	Page	915
9.11	Extend Element to Intersection	Page	915-916
9.12	Trim Element	Page	916
9.13	IntelliTrim	Page	917-920
9.14	Insert Vertex	Page	920
9.15	Delete Vertex	Page	920-921
9.16	Construct Circular Fillet	Page	921
9.17	Construct Chamfer	Page	922



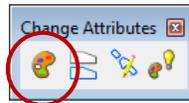
## 9.0 Change Attributes tool box



These tools in the Change Attributes tool box are used to change an elements active element attribute settings.

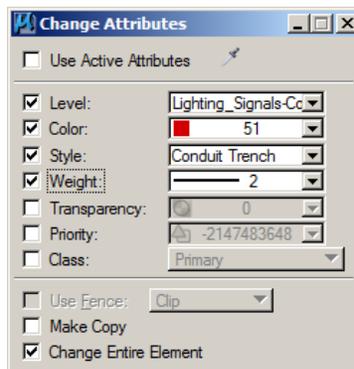
To	Select in the Change Attributes tool box
Change an elements level, color, line style or line weight	 Change Element Attributes
Change a closed element to the active fill type	 Change Element Fill Type
Modify an elements Line Style Attribute by shifting it	 Modify Line Style Attributes
Match all of the attributes of an element or text	 SmartMatch

## 9.1 Change Element Attributes



Used to change selected attributes of an element(s). *Change Element Attributes* tool settings are used to specify the new attribute settings.

The *Change Element Attributes* tool is efficient for changing the level of an element to a level that is currently turned off (the effect of “sending” an element to another level) without changing the active attributes. Also, since it allows you to match and change attributes using the same tool, *Change Element Attributes* is very useful when you are doing repetitive changes to many different elements (like going through an entire drawing cleaning up line weights).



## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

Tool Settings	Effect
Use Active Attributes	If on, the active attributes are affected when you change the attribute settings. If off (the default), the active attributes are not affected when you change the attribute settings.
Level	If on, level is included when changing or matching settings.
Color	If on, color is included when changing or matching settings.
Style	If on, line style (and any active line style modifiers) is included when changing or matching settings.
Weight	If on, line weight is included when changing or matching settings.
Transparency	We do not use this at MoDOT.
Priority	We do not use this at MoDOT.
Class	If on, element class is included when changing or matching settings.
Use Fence	If on, the selected attributes of the fence contents are changed.
Make Copy	If on, the element(s) are copied and the attributes of the copy(s) are changed; the attributes of the original(s) are not changed.
Change Entire Element	If on, the attributes for the entire element are changed. Take, for example, where you want to change the color for a text style to green, where the existing text color is red and the underline color blue. If Change Entire Element is off, only the text will change color. If Change Entire Element is on, both the text and the underline will change to the new color.

### To change an element's attributes (those that are set to on)

1. Select the Change Element Attributes tool.
2. Turn on Use Active Attributes to change an element's attributes to match the active element attribute settings.  
Or  
Turn off Use Active Attributes to change an element's attributes without using or affecting the active element attribute settings.
3. Identify the element.
4. Accept the change.

### To match the active attributes to an element and use these settings to change the attributes of other elements

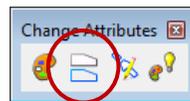
1. Select the Change Element Attributes tool.
2. Identify the element to match.
3. Turn on the attributes you want to change in the next element(s) selected.
4. Select or fence the element(s).
5. Accept the change.

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

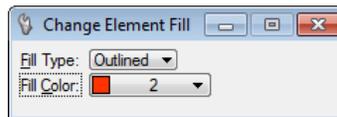
**To change the attributes of one element to match those of another, without affecting the active attributes**

1. Select the Change Element Attributes tool.
  2. Turn off Use Active Attributes.
  3. Identify the element to match.
  4. Turn on the attributes you want to change in the next element(s) selected.
  5. Select or fence the element(s).
  6. Accept the change.
- To change the Active Level, Active Color, Active Line Style, Active Line Weight, Active Element Transparency, Active Element Priority, or Active Class and the corresponding attribute of the selected element(s) in one step, use the controls in the Attributes toolbox.
  - To set the active element attributes so they match those of an element in the design, you can also use the Match Element Attributes tool.

### 9.2 Change Element Fill Type



Used to change a closed element (shape, ellipse, complex shape, or B-spline curve) to the Active Fill Type.



Tool Settings	Effect
Fill Type	Active Fill Type — None (no fill), Opaque (filled with Active Color), or Outlined.
Fill Color	<p>Sets color with which the element(s) are filled. To define the Fill Color, use the controls on the Active Color, True Color, Color Book, or Gradient Fill tab.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If Fill Type is Opaque, the element(s) are filled with the Active Color, which is also the color of the element's outline.</li> <li>• If Fill Type is Outlined, the element(s) can be filled with a color that is different from the Active Color.</li> </ul>

**To change an element to the Active Fill Type**

1. Select the closed element.
2. Select the *Change Element to Active Fill Type* tool.

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

### Alternate Method - To change an element to the Active Fill Type

1. Select the *Change Element to Active Fill Type* tool.
2. Select the closed element.
3. Accept the change.

### 9.3 Modify Line Style Attribute



Used to modify the line style attributes of an element with a custom line style. You can enter a value for the attribute, or modify it graphically. The icon bar contains options for setting the type of custom line style attribute to modify.



Tool Settings	Effect
Width	 The starting, or Origin, width and the End width of an element.
Start Width	 The starting, or Origin, width of an element.
End Width	 The End width of an element.
Scale	 The scale factor applied to strokes.
Dash Scale	 The scale factor applied to variable length dash strokes.

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

Gap Scale	 <p>The scale factor applied to variable length gap strokes.</p>
Shift	 <p>The Shift distance by which the stroke pattern is shifted relative to the beginning of an element or its segments.</p>
Width	(Width icon selected only) Specifies the starting and end width of an element. If Absolute is on, this value represents the width value. If Absolute is off, this value represents the amount to modify the existing width value.
Start Width	(Start Width icon selected only) Specifies the starting width of an element. If Absolute is on, this value represents the width value. If Absolute is off, this value represents the amount to modify the existing width value.
End Width	(End Width icon selected only) Specifies the end width of an element. If Absolute is on, this value represents the width value. If Absolute is off, this value represents the amount to modify the existing width value.
Scale	(Scale icon selected only) Specifies the scale factor applied to strokes. If Absolute is on, this value represents the scale factor. If Absolute is off, this value represents the amount to modify the existing scale factor.
Dash Scale	(Dash Scale icon selected only) Specifies the scale factor applied to variable length dash strokes. If Absolute is on, this value represents the scale factor value. If Absolute is off, this value represents the amount to modify the existing scale factor.
Gap Scale	(Gap Scale icon selected only) Specifies the scale factor applied to variable length gap strokes. If Absolute is on, this value represents the scale factor value. If Absolute is off, this value represents the amount to modify the existing scale factor.
Shift	(Shift icon selected only) Specifies the shift distance by which the stroke pattern is shifted relative to the beginning of an element or its segments. If Absolute is on, this value represents the shift distance value. If Absolute is off, this value represents the amount to modify the existing shift distance value.
Absolute	If on, the value entered in the adjacent text field represents the actual value for the width, scale, or shift distance. If off, the value in the text field represents the amount to modify the current value. For example, suppose you have a custom line style with a scale of 2.0, and you specify a Scale value of 3.0. If Absolute is on, the line style scale will be 3.0. If Absolute is off, the line style scale will be 6.0.
True Width	(Width, Start Width, or End Width icon selected only) If on, the line style width is not affected by a change in line style scale. The line style scale may be modified by the Modify Line Style Attributes tool, as well as by the global line style scale (ACTIVE LINSTYLE SCALE key-in). For example, if you set width to 2.0 and have a scale of 3.0, a line with True Width on will be 2.0 working units wide, while a line with True Width off will be 6.0 working units wide.
Use Fence	If on, the custom line style attributes of elements inside the fence are modified.

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

### To modify a line style attribute graphically

4. Select the Modify Line Style Attributes tool.
5. Select the icon that corresponds to the attribute to modify.
6. Identify the element.
7. Move the pointer to adjust the setting.
8. Accept the change.

## 9.4 SmartMatch



Used to change all active element attribute settings, including those specific to particular element types, so they match the attributes of an element in the design. When a cell is matched, the active scale factors and Active Cell are also matched.

Tool Settings	Effect
Match Multi-line Caps	If on, multi-line caps settings are matched as well.
Match Annotation Scale	If on, annotation scales are matched as well.

### To match an element's attributes

1. Select the element.
2. Select the *Match All Element Settings* tool.

### Alternative Method — To match an element's attributes

1. Select the Match All Element Settings tool.
  2. Identify the element.
  3. Accept the new active settings.
- This tool is also referred to as *SmartMatch*.
  - To change the color, line style, line weight, or level of an element(s) to the active element attributes, use the Change Element Attributes tool.

## 9.5 Modify tool box



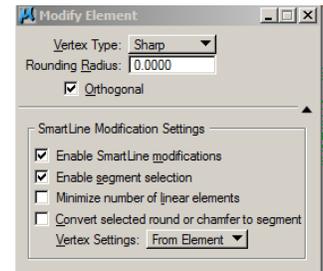
Used to do the following:

- Move a vertex or segment of a line, line string, multi-line, curve, B-spline control polygon, shape, complex chain, or complex shape.
- Scale a block about the opposite vertex.
- Modify rounded segments of complex chains and complex shapes created with the Place SmartLine tool while preserving their tangency.
- Change rounded segments of complex chains and complex shapes to sharp and vice-versa.
- Scale a circular arc while maintaining its sweep angle.
- Change a circle's radius or the length of one axis of an ellipse.
- Move dimension text or modify the extension line length of a dimension element.

Elements with multiple segments are line strings, shapes, and complex chains and complex shapes placed with the Place SmartLine tool. The *Modify Element* tool not only lets you modify vertices and segments, but also lets you change a vertex's type (Sharp, Rounded, or Chamfered).

Settings for the *Modify Element* tool vary, depending on the type of element you are modifying, and display when you select a segment or a vertex of the element.

## 9.6 Modify Elements



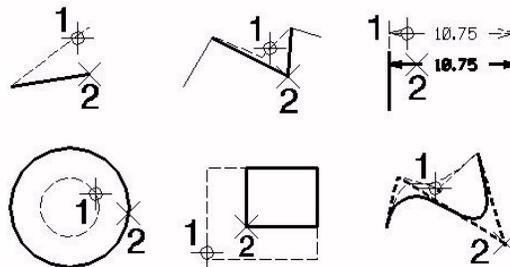
Tool Settings	Effect
Vertex Type	(Vertex selected only) Displays the type of vertex selected and lets you modify the vertex type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sharp — Sets the vertex to a point.</li> <li>• Rounded — Sets the vertex to rounded and lets you define the Rounding Radius value.</li> <li>• Chamfered — Sets the vertex to chamfered and lets you define the Chamfer Offset value.</li> </ul>
Rounding Radius	(Vertex Type set to Rounded) Sets the arc radius for a rounded vertex.
Chamfer Offset	(Vertex Type set to Chamfered) Sets the two (equal) distances from the vertex to the end points of the chamfer.
Orthogonal	(Vertex of an orthogonal shape selected only). If on, the sides adjoining the vertex remain orthogonal as the vertex is moved. If off, the sides adjoining the vertex do not remain orthogonal as the vertex is moved.
SmartLine Modification	Displays the controls for defining how SmartLine elements are modified with the <i>Modify Element</i> tool.

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

Settings icon	
Enable SmartLine modifications	<p>If on (the default), modifications to vertices and segments of SmartLines take into account the adjoining elements. For example, lines that are tangential to a rounded vertex, remain tangential.</p> <p>If off, vertices and segments of SmartLines are modified individually.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turning off this setting disables the remaining settings as they apply only to SmartLine style modifications.</li> </ul>
Enable segment selection	<p>If on (the default), segments of SmartLines may be selected, as well as the vertices.</p> <p>If off, only vertices may be modified.</p>
Minimize number of linear elements	<p>If on, attempts to reduce the number of component elements in a complex chain or shape. For example, a number of individual lines that have been chained together may be converted to a line string.</p> <p>If off, does not attempt to reduce the number of component elements in a complex chain or shape.</p>
Convert selected round or chamfer to segment	<p>If on, when a rounded or chamfered vertex is selected, it is converted to a segment (arc or linear segment) so that it can be modified as such. This applies only to the selected round or chamfer, not to the whole chain or shape. After modification, the component will not be treated as a round or chamfer again.</p>
Vertex Settings	<p>Defines the type of vertex to use.</p> <p>From Element — Uses the element's own settings.</p> <p>Last Used — Uses the type of vertex that was last used when modifying a SmartLine element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use this setting to set the vertex being modified to sharp, rounded, or chamfered, along with its radius or chamfer offset. This can be convenient when changing the type or size of many vertices, eliminating having to enter values for each vertex.</li> </ul>

### To modify an element

1. Select the *Modify Element* tool.
2. Identify the element close to the vertex, segment, or axis to modify.
3. Enter a data point to make the modification.



*Modify Element. Clockwise from top left: moving the endpoint of a line, moving a vertex of a line string, modifying dimension extension line length, moving a vertex of a B-spline control polygon, scaling a block, and changing the radius of a circle.*

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

### To modify the endpoint of a line

1. With AccuDraw active, select the *Modify Element* tool.
2. Identify the end of the line that you wish to modify.  
The drawing plane origin moves to the *opposite* end of the line, and the coordinate system aligns its x-axis with the line. Additionally, the length of the line is displayed in the AccuDraw window.
3. (Optional) Rotate the drawing plane axes.
4. (Optional) Preview the modifications by keying in desired changes in the AccuDraw window.
5. Enter a data point to complete the modification.

### To modify a circle

1. With AccuDraw active, select the *Modify Element* tool.
2. Identify the circle.  
The drawing plane origin moves to the center of the circle. In addition, the coordinate system switches to Polar, and aligns with the view axes.
3. (Optional) Rotate the drawing plane axes.
4. (Optional) Preview the modifications by keying in a radius value in the AccuDraw window. (When modifying a circle, any value keyed in the AccuDraw window defines a new radius.)
5. Enter a data point to complete the modification.

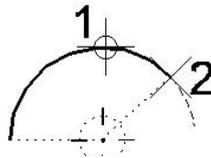
### To modify an ellipse

1. With AccuDraw active, select the *Modify Element* tool.
2. Identify the ellipse by entering a data point near the axis to modify.  
The drawing plane origin moves to the center of the ellipse, and the coordinate system aligns its x-axis with the primary axis of the ellipse.
3. (Optional) Rotate the drawing plane axes.
4. (Optional) Preview the modifications by keying in desired changes in the AccuDraw window.
5. Enter a data point to complete the modification.

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

### To modify the sweep angle of an arc

1. With AccuDraw active, select the *Modify Element* tool.
2. Identify the arc.
3. From the Method option menu in the tool settings window, choose Angle. The drawing plane origin moves to the center of the arc, and the coordinate system aligns its x-axis with the start of the arc's sweep.
4. (Optional) Rotate the drawing plane axes.
5. (Optional) Preview the modifications by keying in desired changes in the AccuDraw window.
6. Enter a data point to complete the modification.

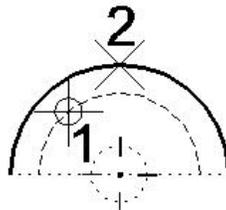


*Modifying the sweep angle of an arc*

- You can adjust the arc sweep by either complement of the angle (180° either way).

### To modify the radius of an arc without changing its center point

1. With AccuDraw active, select the *Modify Element* tool.
2. Identify the arc.
3. From the Method option menu in the tool settings window, choose Radius About Center. The drawing plane origin moves to the center of the arc, and the coordinate system aligns with the view axes.
4. (Optional) Rotate the drawing plane axes.
5. (Optional) Preview the modifications by keying in a radius value in the AccuDraw window. (When modifying an arc, any value keyed in the AccuDraw window defines a new radius.)
6. Enter a data point to complete the modification.

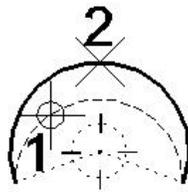


*Modifying the radius of an arc without changing its center point.*

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

### To modify the radius of an arc without changing its endpoints

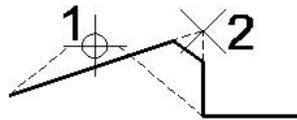
1. With AccuDraw active, select the *Modify Element* tool.
2. Identify the arc.
3. From the Method option menu in the tool settings window, choose Radius Preserve Ends. The drawing plane origin moves to the center of the arc, and the coordinate system aligns with the view axes.
4. (Optional) Rotate the drawing plane axes.
5. (Optional) Preview the modifications by keying in a radius value in the AccuDraw window.
6. Enter a data point to complete the modification.



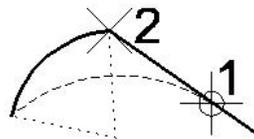
*Modifying the radius of an arc without changing its endpoints.*

### To modify a vertex of a multi-segment element

1. With AccuDraw active, select the *Modify Element* tool.
2. Identify the element by entering a data point near the vertex to modify. The drawing plane origin moves to the vertex, and the coordinate system aligns with the view axes.
3. (Optional) Rotate the drawing plane axes.
4. (Optional) Preview the modifications by keying in desired changes in the AccuDraw window.
5. Enter a data point to complete the modification.



*Modifying a chamfered vertex*

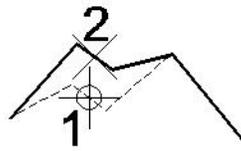


*Modifying the vertex of a Linear segment and an Arc segment*

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

### To modify a linear segment of a multi-segment element

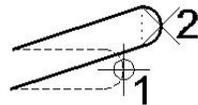
1. With AccuDraw active, select the *Modify Element* tool.
2. Identify the element by entering a data point near the segment's midpoint.  
The drawing plane origin moves to the identification point, and the coordinate system aligns its x-axis with the segment.
3. (Optional) Rotate the drawing plane axes.
4. (Optional) Preview the modifications by keying in desired changes in the AccuDraw window.
5. Enter a data point to complete the modification.



*Modifying a Linear segment*

### To modify an arc segment of a multi-segment element

1. With AccuDraw active, select the *Modify Element* tool.
2. Identify the element by entering a data point near the segment's midpoint.  
The drawing plane origin moves to the identification point.
3. (Optional) Preview the modifications by keying in desired changes in the AccuDraw window.
4. Enter a data point to complete the modification.



*Modifying an Arc segment*

### To move a linear segment parallel to itself

1. With AccuDraw active, select the *Modify Element* tool.
2. Identify the element by entering a data point near the segment's midpoint.  
The drawing plane origin moves to the identification point, and the coordinate system aligns its x-axis with the segment.
3. Position the pointer on the drawing plane's y-axis.
4. Press the <Enter> key.  
The movement of the segment is constrained parallel to its current location.
5. Enter a data point to complete the modification.

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

### To modify the vertex of orthogonal segments

1. With AccuDraw active, select the *Modify Element* tool.
2. Identify the element by entering a data point near the vertex to modify.  
The drawing plane origin moves to the vertex, and the coordinate system aligns with the segments.
3. (Optional) Rotate the drawing plane axes.
4. (Optional) Preview the modifications by keying in desired changes in the AccuDraw window.
5. Enter a data point to complete the modification.

### To change a vertex type

1. With AccuDraw active, select the *Modify Element* tool.
  2. Identify the element by entering a data point near the vertex to modify.  
The drawing plane origin moves to the vertex. If the vertex is contained within a right angle, the coordinate system aligns with the right angle.
  3. From the Vertex Type option menu in the tool settings window, choose the desired type — Sharp, Rounded, or Chamfered.
  4. If changing Vertex Type to Rounded, key in the desired rounding radius, in working units (MU:SU:PU) in the tool settings window's Rounding Radius field.
  5. If changing Vertex Type to Chamfered, key in the desired chamfer offset, in working units (MU:SU:PU) in the tool settings window's Chamfer Offset field.
  6. To maintain the vertex in its original location — *that is, to just change its type* — enter a data point at the drawing plane origin.  
Or  
To otherwise modify the vertex, follow steps 3-5 in the procedure to modify a vertex of a multi-segment element.
- You can modify a line, line string, multi-line, arc, circle, ellipse, curve, shape, text, or complex element by dragging its handles when selected.
  - To choose SmartLine Modification Settings, click the arrow in the bottom right corner of the tool settings window.
  - Arc axes cannot be modified with the *Modify Element* tool. Instead, use the Modify Arc Axis tool.

## 9.7 Delete Part of Element

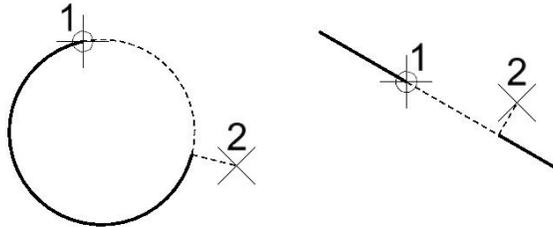


Used to delete part of an element. The first data point defines the start point of the deletion and the second data point defines the direction and extent of the deletion.

- A closed element is turned into an open element — an ellipse or circle becomes an arc; a shape becomes a line string; a closed B-spline curve becomes an open B-spline curve.
- If an interior portion of an open element — line, line string, multi-line, curve, or arc — is partially deleted, the element is divided into two elements of the same type.

### To delete part of an element

1. Select the Delete Part of Element tool.
2. Identify the element at one end of the part to delete.
3. Enter a data point to define the other end of the part to delete.



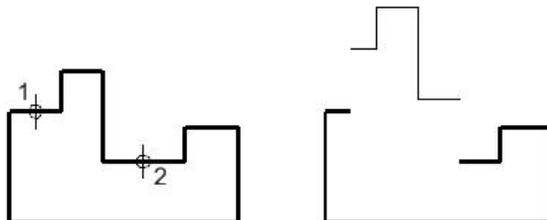
## 9.8 Break Element



Used to break a linear element at a defined point.

### To break an element at a defined point

1. Select the *Break Element* tool.
2. Identify the element at the point where the break is required.
3. Accept to place the break point.



Left: Placing break points in a shape.  
Right: After placing break points, the two sections can be manipulated individually.

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

### 9.9 Extend

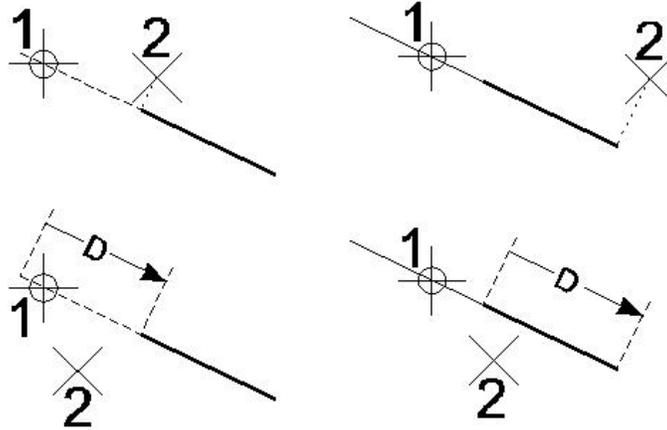


Used to extend or shorten a line or an end segment of a line string or multi-line.

Tool Settings	Effect
Distance	If on, sets the distance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A negative distance shortens the line.</li> <li>• A positive distance extends the line.</li> </ul>
From End	(Applies for Distance off only) If on, the extension, or shortening, of the line is relative to the nearest endpoint to the identification point. If off, the extension, or shortening, of the line is relative to the origin point of the line, no matter where it is identified

#### To extend or shorten a line by entering a data point

1. Select the *Extend* tool.
2. Identify the line near the endpoint to modify.
3. If Distance is on, accept the modification.  
Or  
If Distance is off, enter a data point to define the new endpoint.



*In each example, identify the line (1) and accept the extension (2). (Cont. next page)*

*Top: Defining the new endpoint graphically when Distance is off. Bottom: Defining the new endpoint when Distance is on. If the Distance, denoted by "D," is negative, the line is shortened. If the Distance is positive, the line is lengthened.*

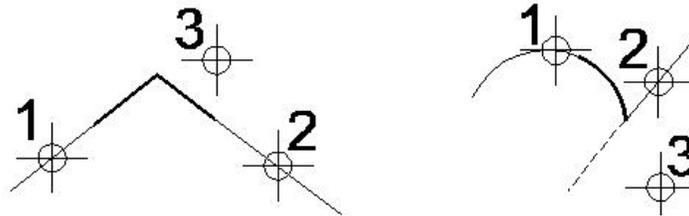
### 9.10 Extend 2 Elements to Intersection



Used to extend or shorten two lines, line strings, or arcs to their intersection.

#### To extend two elements to their intersection

1. Select the Extend Two Elements to Intersection tool.
2. Identify the first element.
3. Identify the second element.
4. Accept the modification.



*Extend Two Elements to Intersection tool. Left: Lengthening two lines. Right: Lengthening an arc and shortening a line.*

No modification is made if the identified elements cannot be extended so that they intersect. When an element is extended, the end nearest the point where it was identified is moved, and the other end remains unchanged.

When an element is shortened, the part of the element that is identified is kept.

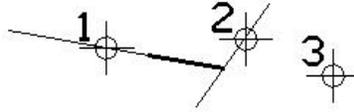
### 9.11 Extend Element to Intersection



Used to extend or shorten a line, line string, or arc to its intersection with another element.

#### To extend an element to its intersection with another element

1. Select the Extend Element to Intersection tool.
2. Identify the element to extend or shorten.
3. Identify the element to which the first element will be extended or shortened.
4. Accept the modification.



### 9.12 Trim Elements

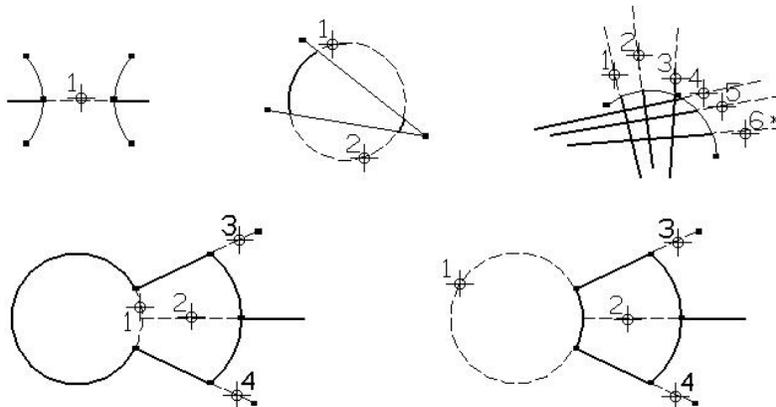
Used to trim or cut an element or series of elements at their intersection with one or more cutting elements. The cutting element and the element that is trimmed can be lines, line strings, arcs, curves, B-spline curves, shapes, ellipses, complex chains, or complex shapes.

#### To trim an element(s)

1. Use the *Element Selection* tool to select a cutting element(s).
2. Select the *Trim Element* tool.
3. Identify an element to trim.  
The element is highlighted and how it will be trimmed is dynamically displayed.
4. Accept the trimmed element.
5. Go back to step 4 to identify another element to trim.  
Or  
Reset to finish.

#### Alternative Method — To trim an element(s)

1. Select the *Trim Element* tool.
2. Identify the cutting element.
3. Follow steps 3–5 above.



*Trim Element* tool. The cutting elements are indicated by handles.

### 9.13 IntelliTrim



- Used to simultaneously trim, extend or cut multiple elements.
- The cutting elements or elements to which you can extend other elements are lines, line strings, ellipses, arcs, curves, shapes, complex strings, complex shapes, text nodes, and cell headers.
- Elements that can be cut or trimmed are lines, line strings, curves, arcs, ellipses, shapes, B-spline curves, complex strings, and complex shapes.
- The only elements that can be extended are lines, line strings, complex chains that end with a line or line string, and b-spline curves.



Tool Settings	Effect
Quick Mode	Operation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Trim — If on, elements are trimmed.</li> <li>• Extend — If on, elements are extended.</li> <li>• Cut — If on, elements are cut. (You will not actually see where the element was cut until you select it.)</li> </ul>
Advanced Mode	Operation: <p>Toggling between Trim and Extend in Advanced Mode causes all intersections and extension points to be recalculated and displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Trim — If on, elements are trimmed.</li> <li>• Extend — If on, elements are extended.</li> <li>• Cut — Dimmed if Advanced is selected.</li> </ul>
Select Elements to Trim	If selected, each element that is identified is designated as an element to trim (or extend).
Select Cutting Elements	If selected, each element that is identified is designated as a cutting element.

#### To trim (or extend) multiple elements

1. Select the elements to trim or the cutting elements.
2. Select the *IntelliTrim* tool.  
 If the tool setting Operation option is set to Trim, the selected elements are highlighted.  
 If the tool setting Operation option is set to Cut, the selected elements are highlighted and dashed.
3. If the selected elements are the elements to trim, identify each cutting element.  
 Or If the selected elements are the cutting elements, identify each element to trim.  
 All potential cutting points are shown as small dots.

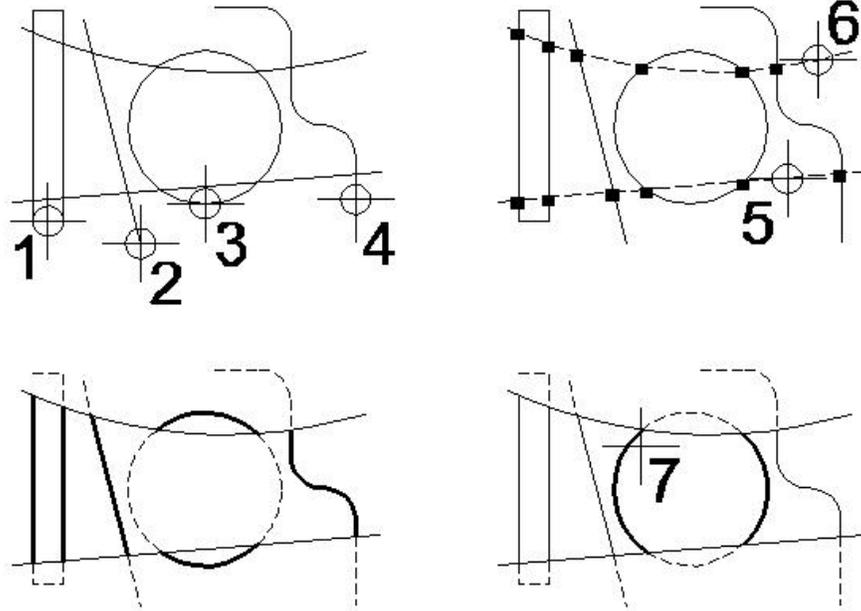
## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

4. When done identifying elements, Reset.  
The proposed results of the operation are displayed. The trimmable elements remain highlighted to indicate the tentative nature of the display.
5. If the results are satisfactory, Reset to accept them. Otherwise, continue with step 6.
6. For each element whose trim or extension result is not as you desire, enter a data point on the element on or near *the part of the element you wish to keep*. When entering these guide points, you need not be concerned about “inside” and “outside” (because the cutting elements do not have to be connected or closed).  
For each element to trim, the series of entered guide points is evaluated and the part of the element that is closest to the closest guide point is kept. Every time the element crosses a cutting element, it is cut.
7. When done modifying the results, Reset.

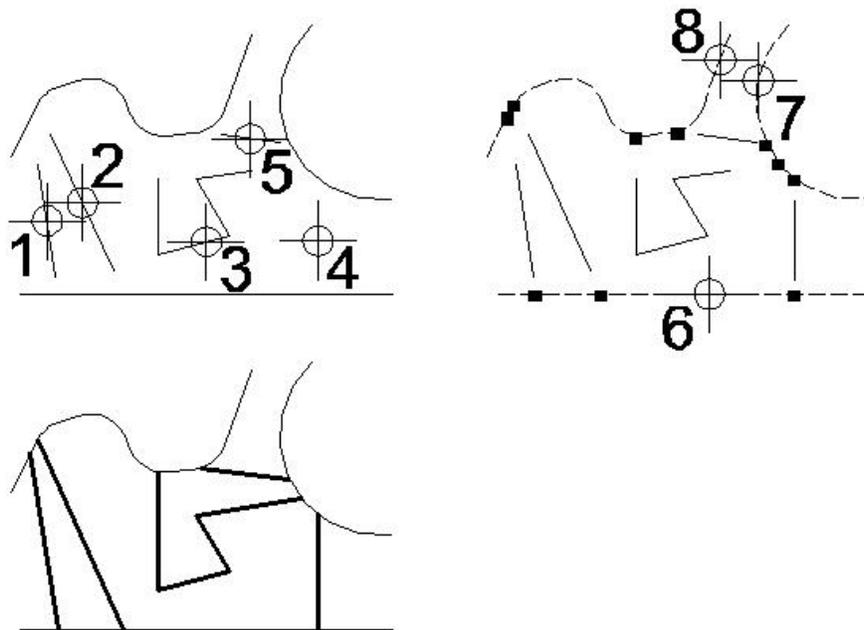
### Alternative Method — To trim (or extend) multiple elements

1. Select the *IntelliTrim* tool.
2. Identify each element to trim.
3. When done identifying elements, Reset.
4. Identify each cutting element.
5. When done identifying elements, Reset. The proposed results of the operation are displayed. The trimmable elements remain highlighted to indicate the tentative nature of the display.
6. If the results are satisfactory, Reset to accept them. Otherwise, continue with step 7.
7. For each element whose trim or extension result is not as you desire, enter a data point on the element on or near *the part of the element you wish to keep*. When entering these guide points you need not be concerned about “inside” and “outside” (because the cutting elements do not have to be connected or closed).  
For each element to trim, the series of entered guide points is evaluated and the part of the element that is closest to the closest guide point is kept. Every time the element crosses a cutting element, it is cut.
8. When done modifying the results, Reset.

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements



*Trimming multiple elements. Top Left: Identify the elements to be trimmed (points 1-4), with a Reset to finish. Top Right: Identify the cutting elements (points 5-6), with a Reset to finish. Proposed cutting points appear as small dots. Bottom Left: Reset to display the proposed result. Bottom Right: Reverse the result of any incorrect cuts by entering a data point near the part of the element that you wish to keep (point 7). Reset to finish.*



*Extending multiple elements. Top Left: Identify the elements to be extended (points 1-5), with a Reset to finish. Top Right: Identify the cutting elements (points 6-8), with a Reset to finish. Proposed cutting points appear as small dots. Bottom: Reset to display the proposed result. A further Reset completes the operation.*

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

- At any point while designating elements, you can switch between identifying elements to trim and identifying cutting elements by selecting the appropriate radio button in the tool settings window. If the focus is on one of the radio buttons, you can select the other simply by pressing <space bar> or the Reset button.
- To change an element from an element to trim to a cutting element, or vice-versa, simply reidentify it with the corresponding radio button selected. It is possible — and in some cases efficient — to select both the elements to trim and the cutting elements prior to selecting *IntelliTrim* and then reidentify those elements whose designation is wrong.
- If an element cannot be either extended or trimmed, it is deleted under the following condition: there is a cutting element directly between the closest guide point and the element; otherwise the element is not modified.

### 9.14 Insert Vertex

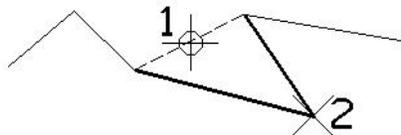


Used to do the following:

- Insert a vertex in a line, line string, multi-line, shape, or B-spline control polygon.
- Attach a line segment to the endpoint of a line or line string.
- Add an extension line to a dimension element.
- Add Control Points to curve.

**To insert a vertex in a line, line string, multi-line, shape, or B-spline control polygon**

1. Select the *Insert Vertex* tool.
2. Identify the segment on which to add the vertex.
3. Enter a data point to position the new vertex.



Using Insert Vertex to insert a vertex in a line string.

### 9.15 Delete Vertex



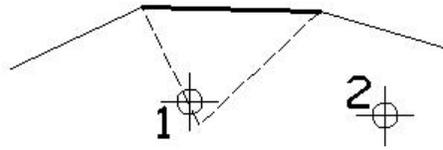
Used to do the following:

- Delete a vertex from a line string, multi-line, shape, or B-spline control polygon.
- Delete an extension line from a dimension element.

**To delete a vertex or an extension line**

1. Select the *Delete Vertex* tool.
2. Identify the vertex or extension line.
3. Accept the deletion

## MicroStation V8i – Changing & Modifying Elements

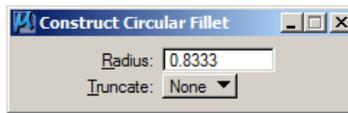


- Deleting a vertex from a line turns it into a point. It is impossible to delete a vertex from a line string element that has just two vertices.

### 9.16 Construct Circular Fillet



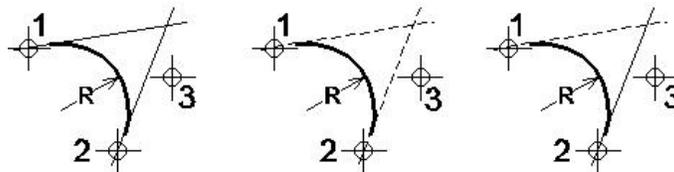
Used to construct a circular fillet (arc) between two elements (lines, line strings, circular arcs, circles, or shapes), two segments of a line string, or two sides of a shape.



Tool Settings	Effect
Radius	Sets the fillet's radius.
Truncate	Sets which side(s) are truncated. None — Neither element or segment is truncated. Both — Both elements or segments are truncated at their point of tangency with the fillet. First — The first element or segment identified (step 2) is truncated at its point of tangency with the fillet.

#### To construct a circular fillet

1. Select the Construct Circular Fillet tool.
2. Identify the first element or segment.  
If Truncate is set to First, this element or segment is truncated.
3. Identify the second element or segment.
4. Accept the fillet and truncation(s), if any.



*Construct Circular Fillet. From left: Truncate set to None, Both, and First.*

## 9.17 Construct Chamfer



Used to construct a chamfer between either of the following:

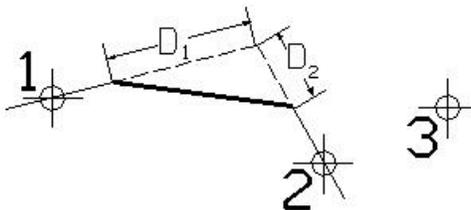
- Two lines — The original lines are trimmed and a third line element forms the chamfer.
- Adjacent segments of a line string or shape — An additional vertex is inserted and the common vertex is adjusted to form the chamfer.



Tool Settings	Effect
Distance 1	First element or segment identified (step 2).
Distance 2	Second element or segment identified (step 3).

### To construct a chamfer

1. Select the *Construct Chamfer* tool.
2. Identify the first line or segment.
3. Identify the second line or segment.  
If the first data point identifies a line element, the second data point must also identify a line element. If the first data point identifies a segment of a line string or shape, the second data point must identify an adjacent segment of the same element.
4. Accept the chamfer.



*Chamfer. D1 denotes Distance 1. D2 denotes Distance 2.*

# Standards and Settings Manager

## Section 10

<b>10.0</b>	<b>MoDOT's CADD Standards Manual</b>	<b>Page 1000-1001</b>
<b>10.1</b>	<b>What is the Settings Manager</b>	<b>Page 1001</b>
<b>10.2</b>	<b>Activating the Settings Manager</b>	<b>Page 1002</b>
<b>10.3</b>	<b>The Design Standards tool box</b>	<b>Page 1002-1005</b>
<b>10.4</b>	<b>The Settings Manager pulldowns</b>	<b>Page 1006-1008</b>
<b>10.5</b>	<b>Groups &amp; Components</b>	<b>Page 1008-1009</b>



### 10.0 MoDOT's CADD Standards Manual

A manual has been set up as a visual reference to the Settings Manager used by MoDOT's Design, Construction, Environmental, Cultural, and other Divisions. It was created in cooperation with the CADD Support Center, CADD Quality Circle, and the Support Center Design Division. The MoDOT Support Center Design Division distributes this publication.

You will find an Adobe Acrobat Reader version at the following key-in link of your Internet browser:

*[http://caddnet/index.php?title=MicroStation\\_SS2\\_Updates](http://caddnet/index.php?title=MicroStation_SS2_Updates)*

The screenshot shows an Internet Explorer browser window with the address bar containing [http://caddnet/index.php?title=MicroStation\\_SS2\\_Updates](http://caddnet/index.php?title=MicroStation_SS2_Updates). The page title is "MicroStation SS2 Updates - CADD Wiki". The browser's favorites bar includes "Intellicast - NOWrad at St...", "NOAA - 7 Day Forecast", and "Web Slice Gallery". The page content includes a MoDOT logo, a navigation menu, and a main content area with the following sections:

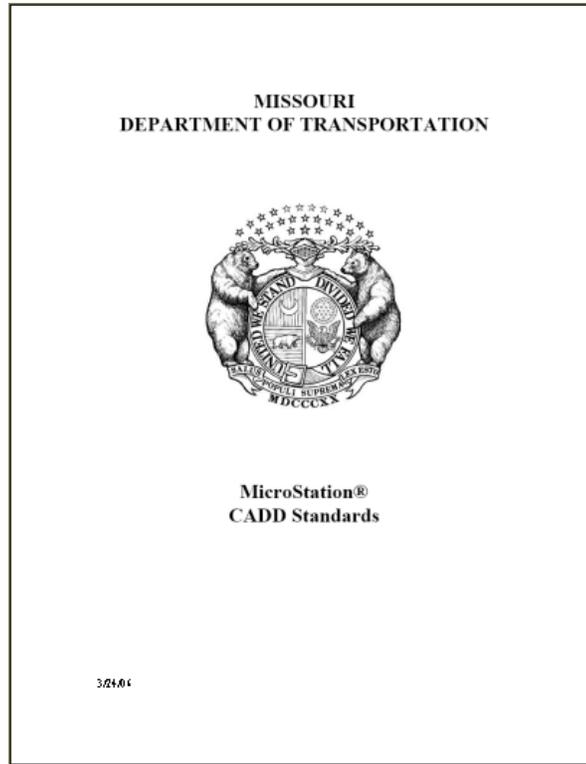
- page** | **discussion** | **view source** | **history**
- CADD Support** | **MicroStation Updates**
- Contents [hide]**
  - 1 CADD Standards
  - 2 Settings Manager
  - 3 Microstation QC Meeting Minutes
  - 4 Version Updates
  - 5 Archived PowerPoint Presentations
- CADD Standards**
  - [Cadd Standards Manual \(updated 09/09/2011\)](#)
- Settings Manager**
  - [Settings Manager Updates - \(Current Update - June 2012\)](#)
- Microstation QC Meeting Minutes**
  - [Microstation QC Meeting Minutes \(Last Meeting 08-2011\)](#)

The navigation menu on the left includes: Main Page, Project Wise, MicroStation, GEOPAK Road, GEOPAK Site, GEOPAK Survey, GIS Information, GPS Information, Drainage Apps, Other Design Apps, PC "How To's", Training, Electronic Plans, and Construction. The links section includes: CADD Forums and CADD Staff.

## MicroStation V8i - Standards & the Settings Manager

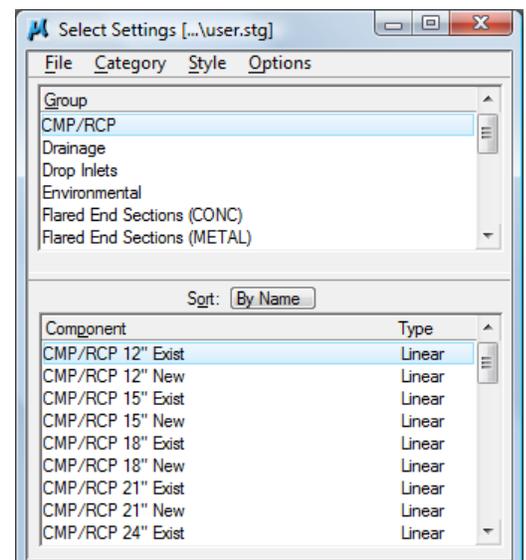
This manual was constructed to support the MoDOT Engineering Policy Guide. The items listed are in settings manager order from Title Sheet to Cross-Section/Preliminary Plan. It is intended to help all MicroStation CADD users identify and utilize the proper text and symbology, established by the department, while constructing plans for highway construction. Each item has a graphical representation and a description of its type, color, level, line weight, line style, and text height (if applicable).

These standards were developed to ensure uniformity of highway plans created by the department throughout the state of Missouri.



### 10.1 What is the Settings Manager?

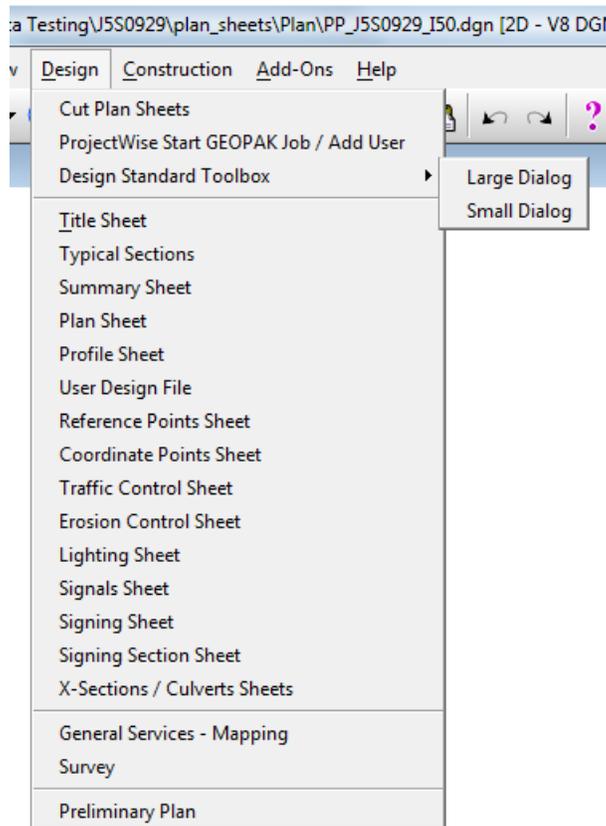
Within MicroStation, MoDOT utilizes an application called the Settings Manager to enable their users to standardize items such as line styles, line weights, text heights and widths, dimension styles, cells, colors, and scales. The Settings Manager enables the user to place geometry with the correct element attributes and it will also invoke the recommended tool with a single mouse click.



## 10.2 Activating the Settings Manager

The Settings Manager is activated by selecting the Design pull down and then choosing the drawing type you are working with.

There is also the Design Standards Toolbar that you can use to load up the Settings Managers by clicking on the appropriate icon.



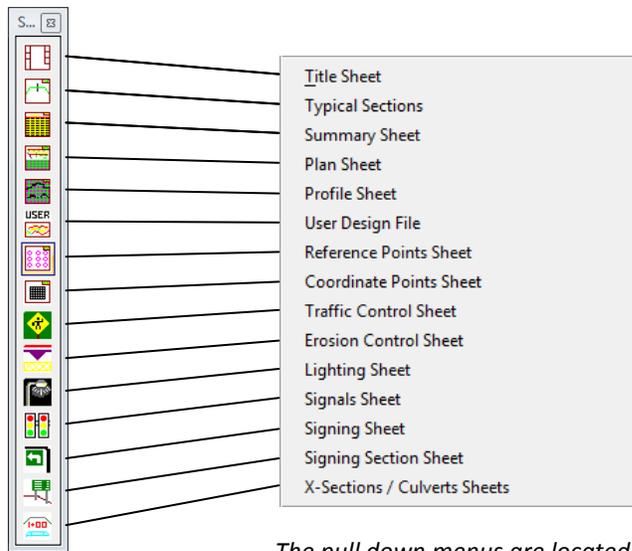
## 10.3 The Design Standards tool box



Each of the icons in the Design Standards tool box represent a type of Design File that is typically drawn by MoDOT. Hover your cursor over an Icon to get a “tool tip” of what each Icon represents. This tool bar is resizable and dockable just like any other tool bar.

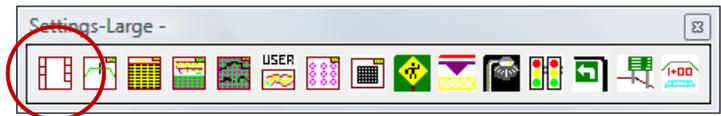
You can invoke a Settings Manager with a single click to one of the Icons. Each Icon represents a type of sheet or design file.

## MicroStation V8i - Standards & the Settings Manager



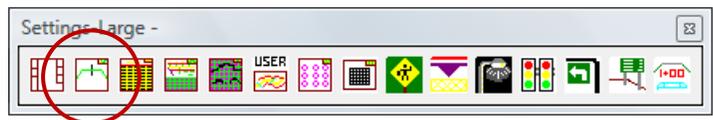
The pull down menus are located beneath the MoDOT pull down

### The Title Sheet Icon



The Title Sheet Icon and *pull down menu* contains text, lines and cells used in the production of standard Title Sheet.

### The Typical Section Icon



The Typical Section Icon and *pull down menu* contains text, lines, dimensions, and some Standard Typical Section cells used in the production of Typical Section Sheet.

### The 2B Sheet Icon



The 2B Sheet Icon and *pull down menu* contains text and lines used in the production of standard 2B Summary of Quantities Sheet.

### The Plan Sheet Icon



The Plan Sheet Icon and *pull down menu* contains text, dimensions, and cells used in the production of a Plan Sheet from other referenced (see the chapter regarding reference files) files.

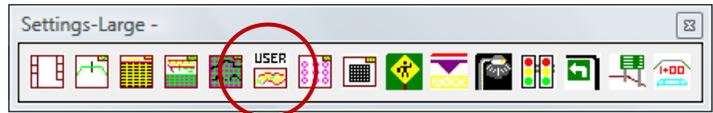
## MicroStation V8i - Standards & the Settings Manager

### The Profile Sheet Icon



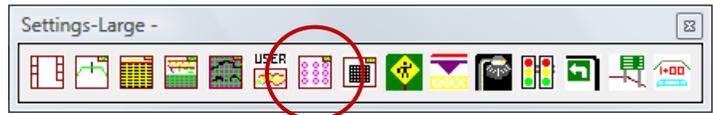
The Profile Sheet Icon and *pull down menu* contains text, lines and cells used in the production of a Profile Sheet or the Profile section of a Plan & Profile Sheet.

### The User Design File Icon



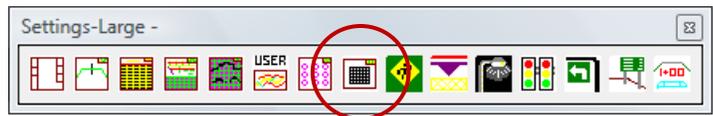
The User Design File Icon and *pull down menu* contains lines and cells that are used in the production of a standard highway design sheet (R/W, roadway items, property items, drainage items, etc.).

### The Reference Points Icon



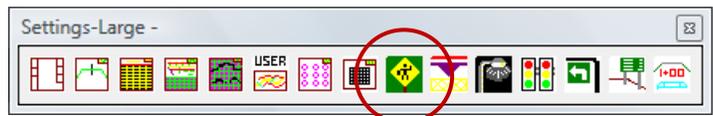
The Reference Points Icon and *pull down menu* contains text and lines used in a standard Reference Point Tie Sheet.

### The Coordinate Points Icon



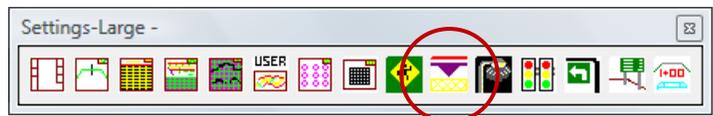
The Coordinate Points Icon and *pull down menu* contains text and lines used in a standard Coordinate Points Sheet.

### The Traffic Control Icon



The Traffic Control Icon and *pull down menu* contains cells, text and lines used in the production of standard Traffic Control Sheet. (Signs, Cones, Barriers, etc.)

### The Temporary Erosion Control Icon



The Temporary Erosion Control Icon and *pull down menu* contains cells, text and lines that are used in the production of standard Temporary Erosion Control Sheet (Straw Bales, Silt Fences, Flow Arrows, etc.)

## MicroStation V8i - Standards & the Settings Manager

### The Lighting Icon



The Lighting Icon and *pull down menu* contains cells, text and lines that are used in the production of standard Lighting Special Sheet. (Conduit, Pull Boxes, Luminaries, etc.)

### The Signals Icon



The Signals Icon and *pull down menu* contains cells, text and lines that are used in the production of standard Signals Special Sheet. (Conduit, Pull Boxes, Signals, Mast Arms, etc.)

### The Signing Icon



The Signing Icon contains cells, text and lines that are used in the production of standard Signing Special Sheet. (Signs)

### The Signing Section Icon



The Signing Section Icon contains cells, text and lines that are used in the production of standard Signing Section Sheet. (Signs, Section Lines, Utility lines, etc.)

### The X-Sections / Culverts Icon



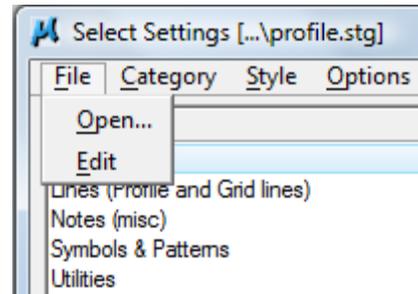
The Cross/Culvert Section Icon contains cells, text and lines that are used in the production of standard Cross Section and Culvert Section Sheet. (Flared End Sections, Pipes, Slopes, Cuts, Fills, etc.)

## 10.4 The Settings Manager pull downs

### File menu

#### *File menu > Open*

Opens the Open Existing Settings File dialog box, which is used to open a Settings Manager file.



#### *File menu > Edit*

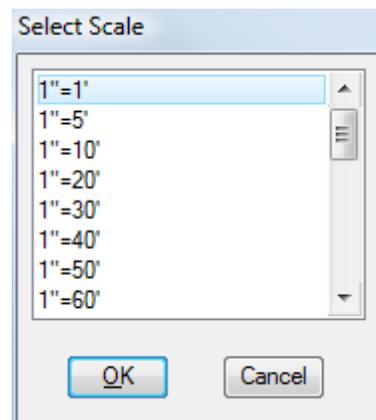
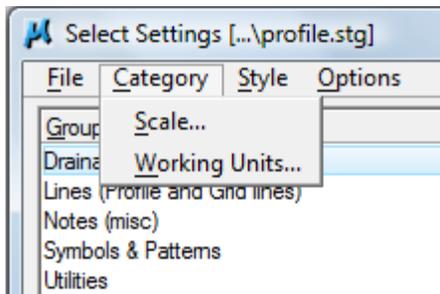
This option is “read only”

### Category menu

#### *Category menu > Scale*

Opens the Select Scale dialog box, which is used to select a scale settings group and make its settings active. This should typically match the scale of the border that is placed in the dgn file.

The list box lists the scale settings groups in the open settings file that have design units that match the active design file's master units. Double-clicking a group makes its settings active and closes the dialog box. Clicking OK makes the settings in the selected group active and closes the dialog box.



*English Units*

#### *Category menu > Working Units*

MoDOT does not use this option at this time.

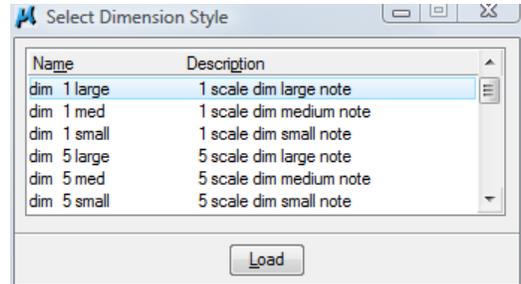
## MicroStation V8i - Standards & the Settings Manager

### Style menu

#### **Style menu > Dimension**

Opens the Select Dimension Style dialog box, which is used to select a dimension style.

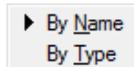
- Name — Lists the name of the dimension style.
- Description — Describes the dimension style.
- Load — Loads the selected style in MicroStation.



#### **Style menu > Multi-line**

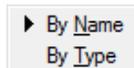
MoDOT does not use this option at this time.

#### **Sort menu > By Name**



Sorts the component list by name.

#### **Sort menu > By Type**

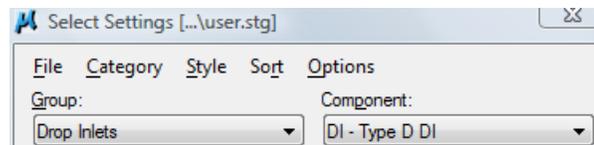


Sorts the component list by type.

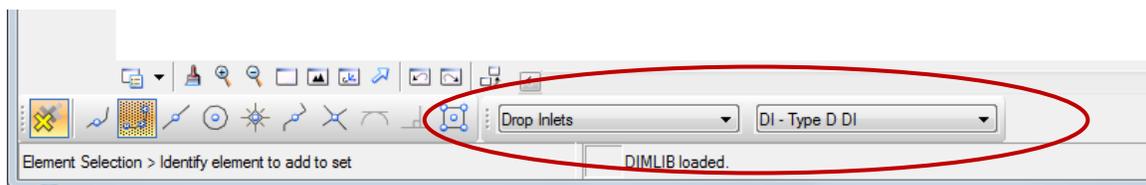
### Options menu

#### **Options menu > Large/Small Dialog**

If the Select Settings window is not expanded, selecting Options > Large Dialog expands the window interface. If the Select Settings window is expanded, selecting Options > Small Dialog returns the window to a smaller, dockable window.



*The Settings Manager as a small dialog box.*

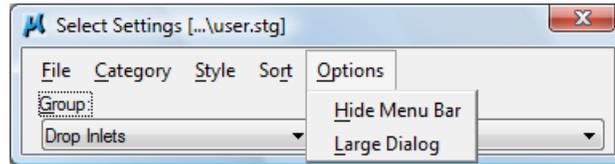


*Settings Manager's small dialog box docked at the bottom of the MicroStation window.*

## MicroStation V8i - Standards & the Settings Manager

### Options menu > Hide/Show Menu Bar

(Small, dockable Settings Manager window only) Hides the menu bar to conserve screen space. When the menu bar is hidden, the name of this menu item changes to Show Menu Bar, which enables you turn the menu bar back on. (On the smaller Settings Manager window, regardless of whether or not the menu bar is showing, all the menus on the menu bar are still available through a right-click menu.)



Hide Menu Bar option.



Menus on the menu bar are still available through a right-click menu.

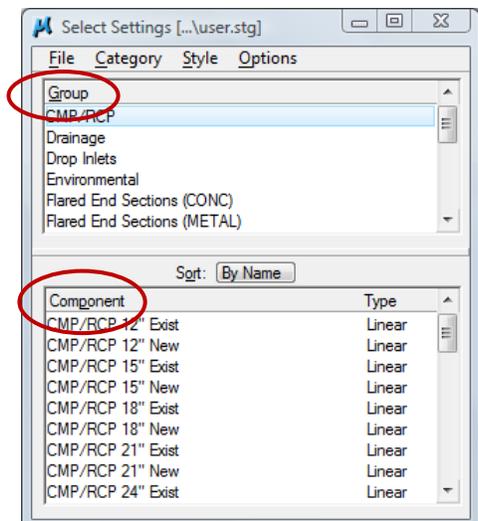
## 10.5 Groups & Components

Groups and Components work similar to a Directory file structure. Groups could be compared to Directories and Components to files located with-in those Directories. Groups are given specific names such as Drainage, Drop Inlets, etc. Some Groups have generic names as in Notes or Lines. Selecting the Group will display that Groups contents in the Component window in the Settings Manager. Components are cells, line-types, text, dimensions, area patterns, multi-lines, circles, etc. that have been given the correct symbology such as level, color, and line weight and can be placed on the Design File at the correct scale. Using the Settings Manager will create an easier way of maintaining standards throughout the Districts.

### Group

Lists the names of drawing Settings Manager groups in the open Settings Manager file.

The selected group is the active drawing Settings Manager group.



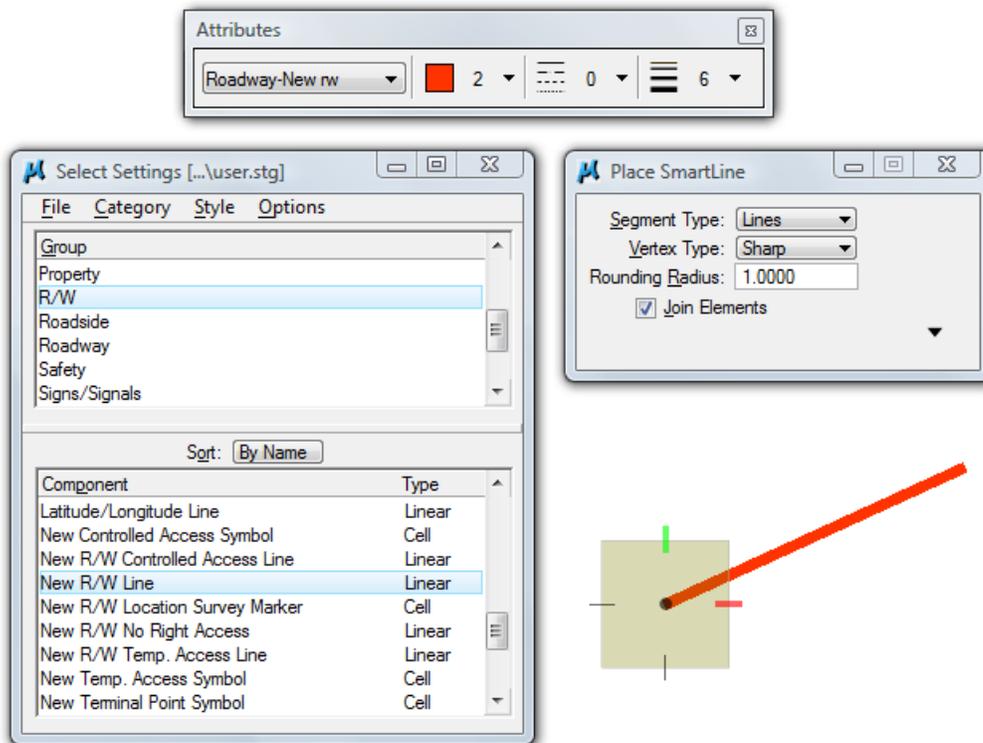
## MicroStation V8i - Standards & the Settings Manager

### Component

Lists the name and type of each component of the active drawing settings group. Selecting a component does the following:

- All settings associated with the component are set as specified in the component definition.
- If a Key-in is defined for the component, the corresponding tool is selected, letting you place an element(s) without using a tool box.

Selecting a Component with a single mouse button click will allow that item, whether it be text, a dimension, line-style etc. to be placed on the correct level, color and weight. Using these components also keeps the user from having to attach a cell library or look up what level items are to be placed, the Settings Manager takes care of that, so that everyone is placing the same cells on the same levels. This also keeps the user from having to set text heights, widths and spacing. Dimensions also work with the Settings Manager setting the correct text attributes and arrowhead sizes.



*Selecting a Component with a single left mouse button click will set the Active Attributes to the item selected. Selecting a Component will also invoke the suggested tool for that Component.*

## MicroStation V8i - Standards & the Settings Manager

# Groups and Patterns

## Section 11

<b>11.0</b>	<b>Groups tool box</b>	<b>Page 1100</b>
<b>11.1</b>	<b>Create Complex Chain</b>	<b>Page 1100-1102</b>
<b>11.2</b>	<b>Create Complex Shape</b>	<b>Page 1102-1104</b>
<b>11.3</b>	<b>Create Region</b>	<b>Page 1104-1108</b>
<b>11.4</b>	<b>Add to Graphic Group</b>	<b>Page 1108</b>
<b>11.5</b>	<b>Drop from Graphic Group</b>	<b>Page 1108</b>
<b>11.6</b>	<b>Drop Element</b>	<b>Page 1109-1110</b>
<b>11.7</b>	<b>Drop Association</b>	<b>Page 1111</b>
<b>11.8</b>	<b>Hatching and Patterning</b>	<b>Page 1111-1112</b>
<b>11.9</b>	<b>Patterns Tool Box</b>	<b>Page 1113</b>
<b>11.10</b>	<b>Hatch Area</b>	<b>Page 1113-1119</b>
<b>11.11</b>	<b>Crosshatch Area</b>	<b>Page 1119-1121</b>
<b>11.12</b>	<b>Pattern Area</b>	<b>Page 1122-1126</b>
<b>11.13</b>	<b>Linear Pattern</b>	<b>Page 1126-1128</b>
<b>11.14</b>	<b>Show Pattern Attributes</b>	<b>Page 1129</b>
<b>11.15</b>	<b>Match Pattern Attributes</b>	<b>Page 1129</b>
<b>11.16</b>	<b>Change Pattern</b>	<b>Page 1129-1130</b>
<b>11.17</b>	<b>Delete Pattern</b>	<b>Page 1130</b>



## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

### 11.0 Groups tool box



The tools in the Groups tool box are used to create and manipulate complex chains, complex shapes, and graphic groups.

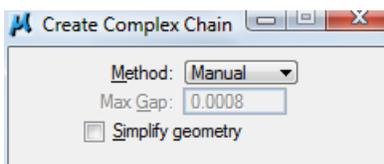
To	Select in the Groups tool box
Create a complex chain (open complex element).	 <i>Create Complex Chain</i>
Create a complex shape (closed complex element) from individual open elements.	 <i>Create Complex Shape</i>
Create a complex shape from the union, intersection, or difference between closed elements or by “flood fill.”	 <i>Create Region</i>
Create a graphic group. or Add elements to an existing graphic group. or Combine two or more graphic groups into one graphic group.	 <i>Create/Add to Graphic Group</i>
Remove (drop) an element(s) from a graphic group. or Break up a graphic group into individual elements.	 <i>Drop from Graphic Group</i>
Break up a complex element(s) or an element(s) of a special type into simpler components.	 <i>Drop Element</i>
Discontinue an association between a shared cell, dimension witness line, or multi-line and another element.	 <i>Drop Association</i>

### 11.1 Create Complex Chain



Used to create a complex chain — an open complex element that is formed from a series of open elements (lines, line strings, arcs, curves, and open B-spline curves) that can be manipulated as if it were a single primitive element. The resulting complex chain takes on the *active* element attributes regardless of the attributes of the component elements.

1100



## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

Tool Setting	Effect
Method	<p>Sets how elements are added to the complex chain:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manual — Each element is manually identified.</li> <li>• Automatic — After the first element is identified, and accepted, if endpoints of additional open element(s) are within the Max. Gap distance of each other, they are included automatically. Where there is a choice of two or more elements (at the endpoint of an element) then the process lets you choose to either Accept the highlighted element, or Reset to see the alternative(s).</li> </ul>
Max(imum) Gap	<p>The greatest allowable distance between elements when the Method is Automatic.</p> <p>If zero, only elements that connect (have a common endpoint) can be added.</p>
Simplify geometry	<p>If on, connected lines are added as line strings. If you identify only connected lines, the tool produces a primitive line string element rather than a complex chain.</p>

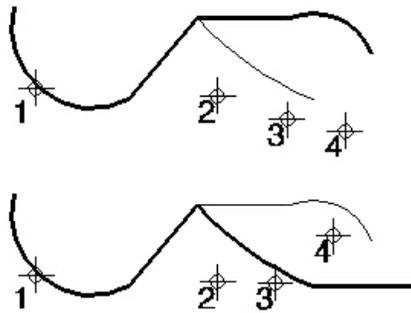
### ***To create a complex chain manually***

1. Select the *Create Complex Chain* tool.
2. Set the Method to Manual.
3. Identify the first element to include in the chain.
4. Continue to identify elements to add to the chain.  
If they are not already connected, the elements are connected as they are identified.
5. Reset to complete the complex chain.

### ***To create a complex chain automatically***

1. Select the *Create Complex Chain* tool.
2. Set the Method to Automatic.
3. Identify the first element.
4. Accept to automatically include other elements that are within the Max Gap distance. If a fork is found, where more than one element is within the Max Gap distance, the message "FORK – Accept or reset to See Alternate" displays in the status bar.
5. Enter a data point to accept the highlighted element  
or  
Reset to highlight an alternate element. Continue to reset until the desired element highlights.
6. Accept to complete the complex chain. Creation of the chain ends automatically if there are no elements within the Max. Gap.

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns



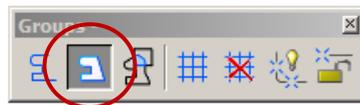
Create Complex Chain with Method set to Automatic. After entering data point 2, the top element in the fork was highlighted (top). To highlight the alternate path, a Reset was entered (bottom).

To convert a complex chain back to its individual components, use the *Drop Element* tool.

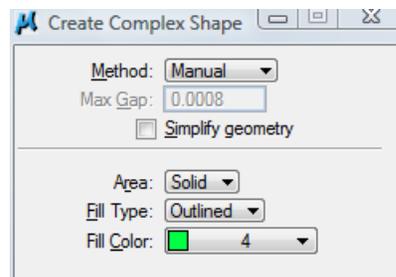
It is best to create complex chains from elements that share common endpoints.

To draw a complex chain of connected arcs and line segments with one tool, use the **Place SmartLine** tool in the Linear Elements toolbox.

## 11.2 Create Complex Shape



Used to create a complex shape (a closed complex element that can be manipulated as if it were one primitive element) from a series of open planar elements (lines, line strings, arcs, curves, and open B-spline curves). The resulting complex shape takes on the active element attributes regardless of the attributes of the component elements.



Tool Setting	Effect
Method	<p>Sets how elements are added to complex shape.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manual — Each element is manually identified.</li> <li>Automatic — After the first element is identified, and accepted, if endpoints of additional open element(s) are within the Max. Gap distance of each other, they are included automatically until a closed shape is created. Where there is a choice of two or more elements (at the endpoint of an element) then the process lets you choose to either Accept the highlighted element, or Reset to see the alternative(s).</li> </ul>
Max(imum) Gap	<p>The largest distance allowed between consecutive elements, if Method is Automatic.</p> <p>If zero, only elements that connect (have a common endpoint) can be added.</p>
Simplify	<p>If on, connected lines are added to the boundary as line strings. If you identify only connected lines,</p>

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

geometry	the tool produces a primitive shape element rather than a complex shape.
Area	Sets the type of shape created. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Solid — The shape created is solid (can be hatched/patterned).</li><li>• Hole — The shape created is a hole (cannot be hatched/patterned).</li></ul>
Fill Type	Sets the active Fill Type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• None — No fill</li><li>• Opaque — Filled with Active Color</li><li>• Outlined — Filled with Fill Color (outline of shape takes the Active Color)</li></ul>
Fill Color	Complex shape is filled with this color if the Fill Type is Outlined; otherwise disabled (dimmed).

### ***To create a complex shape manually***

1. Select the *Create Complex Shape* tool.
2. Set the Method to Manual.
3. Identify the first element.
4. Continue to identify elements to add to the shape.  
The elements are connected as they are identified, unless they already are connected.
5. If the first and last elements connect, accept the shape.  
If the first and last elements do not connect, Reset to close the shape and create a line element between their endpoints.

### ***To create a complex shape automatically***

1. Select the *Create Complex Shape* tool.
2. Set the Method to Automatic.
3. Identify the first element.
4. Accept to automatically include other elements that are within the Max Gap distance.  
If the elements do not have a common endpoint, they are connected.  
If a fork is found; that is, if more than one element is within the Max. Gap, the message "FORK — Accept or Reset to See Alternate" displays in the status bar.
5. Enter a data point to accept the highlighted element.  
or  
Reset to highlight an alternate element. Continue to Reset until the desired element highlights.

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

If an element is accepted that is connected to the first element identified, the complex shape is closed. If an element is not found within the Max Gap, a line element is created between the open endpoints of the first and last elements and the complex shape is closed.

To convert a complex shape back to its individual components, use the **Drop Element** tool.

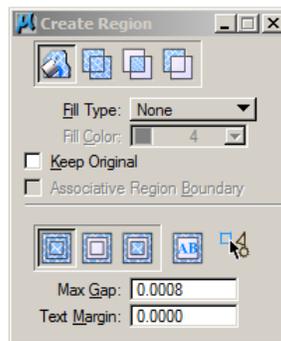
To draw a complex shape of connected arcs and line segments with one tool, use the **Place SmartLine** tool in the Linear Elements tool box.

### 1.3 Create Region



Used to create a complex shape (a closed complex element that can be manipulated as if it were one primitive element) from either of the following:

- The union, intersection, or difference between two or more closed elements.
  - A region bounded by elements that have endpoints that are closer together than the Max(imum) Gap.
- Icons in the tool settings let you select the method for defining the region.



(Continued on next page)

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

Tool Settings	Effect
Flood icon	<div style="text-align: center;"></div> <p>Edges bound the area enclosed by elements that either touch one another or whose endpoints fall within the Maximum Gap. Selection sets can be used to select the elements required to enclose the flood area.</p> <p>Where a selection set is not used, each element, or a part of each element, to be used to create the region must be visible in the view. For example, where a group of lines (not line strings) create a graphically closed shape, but some are not within the view, then no region is created and the following error message results — “Error - No enclosing region found.”</p>
Union icon	<div style="text-align: center;"></div> <p>Edges bound the union of two or more closed planar elements.</p> <p>Where more than two elements are involved, use &lt;Ctrl&gt;-data points to select the extra elements.</p>
Intersection icon	<div style="text-align: center;"></div> <p>Edges bound the intersection of two or more closed planar elements.</p> <p>Where more than two elements are involved, use &lt;Ctrl&gt;-data points to select the extra elements.</p>
Difference icon	<div style="text-align: center;"></div> <p>Edges bound the difference of two or more closed planar elements.</p> <p>Where more than two elements are involved, use &lt;ctrl-data point&gt; to select the extra elements.</p>
Fill Type	<p>Sets the Active Fill Type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None — If on, the complex shape is not filled.</li> <li>• Opaque — If on, the complex shape is filled with the Active Color.</li> <li>• Outlined — If on, the complex shape is filled with the Fill Color.</li> </ul>
Fill Color	<p>(Fill Type set to Opaque or Outlined only) Complex shape is filled with this color (and optional gradient) if the Fill Type is Outlined. When Fill Type is Opaque, Fill Color displays the Active Color, which can also be set from this location.</p> <p>When Fill Type is None, the Fill Color option is disabled (dimmed).</p>
Keep Original	<p>If on, the original elements remain in the design.</p>
Associative Region Boundary	<p>If on, the region boundary retains association with the elements used to create it. If one of the original elements is modified, then the boundary element updates to reflect the modification.</p>
Ignore Interior Shapes icon	<div style="text-align: center;"></div> <p>(Flood icon selected only) If selected, interior shapes are ignored when the region boundary is calculated.</p>
Locate Interior Shapes icon	<div style="text-align: center;"></div> <p>(Flood icon selected only) If selected, closed elements inside the selected area are included as part of the new complex shape.</p>

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

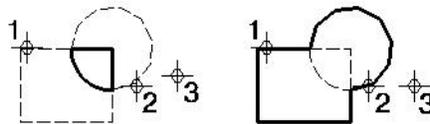
Identify Alternating Interior Shapes icon		(Flood icon selected only) If selected, alternating areas are flooded where shapes are nested inside one another.
Locate Interior Text icon		(Flood icon selected only) If on, any text or dimensional text inside or overlapping the selected area is avoided.
Dynamic Area Locate icon		(Flood icon selected only) If on, the area to be included in the region displays dynamically as you move the screen pointer over the view.
Max(imum) Gap		(Flood icon selected only) Sets the largest distance allowed between consecutive elements. If zero, only elements that connect can be added.
Text Margin		(Flood icon selected only) Sets the margin to be left around any text or dimensional text that is included in the selected area.

### To construct a complex shape from the intersection or union of elements

1. Select the *Create Region* tool.
2. In the Tool Settings window, click the Intersection or Union icon.
3. Identify one element.
4. Identify second element.
5. (Optional) Use <ctrl-data point> to select further elements.  
If the elements do not overlap, the following occurs, depending on the Method:

Method	If elements do not overlap, then
Intersection	"Elements do not intersect" displays.
Union	A shape is placed over each element.

6. Accept to create the region.

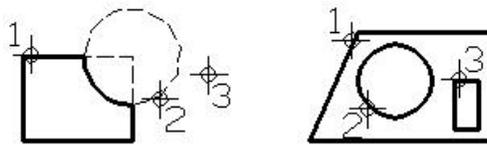


*Creating a region from two elements  
Left: Intersection. Right: Union. Keep Original is on.*

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

### To construct a complex shape from the difference between elements

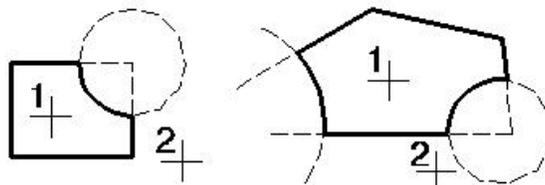
1. Select the *Create Region* tool.
2. Click the Difference icon.
3. Identify the base element (the element to be subtracted from).
4. Identify the element to be subtracted.
5. (Optional) Use <Ctrl>-data points to identify further element(s) to subtract from the initial element.
6. Accept to create the region.



*Method set to Difference*

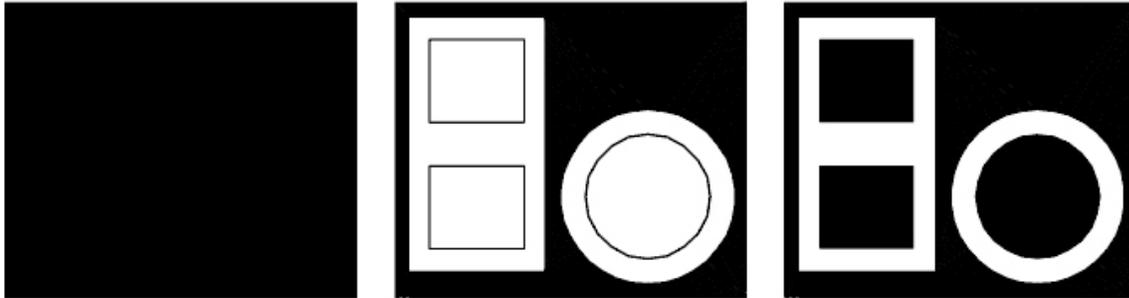
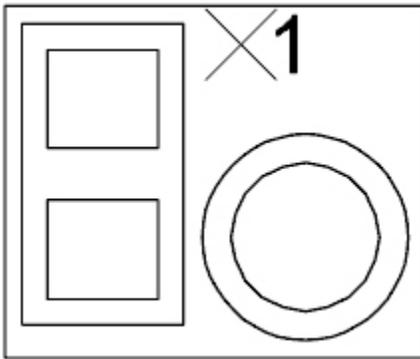
### To construct a complex shape by “flood”

1. Select the *Create Region* tool.
2. Click the Flood icon.
3. Set Fill Type and Fill Color as required.
4. Click the Ignore Interior Shapes, Locate Interior Shapes, or Identify Alternate Shapes, icon to define how any interior shapes are to be treated.
5. (Optional) Click the Locate Interior Text icon if you want the region shape to avoid text and dimensional text.
6. (Optional) Click the (Optional) Dynamic Area Locate icon to dynamically display the proposed region as you pass the pointer over the elements.
7. Enter a data point in the area enclosed by the bounding elements.
8. Accept the complex shape.



*Method set to Flood. Keep Original is on.*

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns



*Creating a flood region with Fill Type set to Opaque.  
Top left shows original elements. Placing a data point at 1, produces:  
Lower Left: Ignore Interior Shapes on.  
Lower Center: Locate Interior Shapes on.  
Lower Right: Identify Alternating Interior Shapes on.*

### 11.4 Add to Graphic Group

See MicroStation help documentation in MicroStation

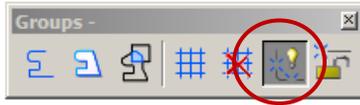


### 11.5 Drop from Graphic Group

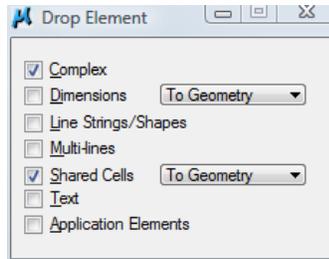
See MicroStation help documentation in MicroStation



## 11.6 Drop Element



Used to break up an element(s) into simpler components. Tool settings are used to specify the element types on which the tool operates.

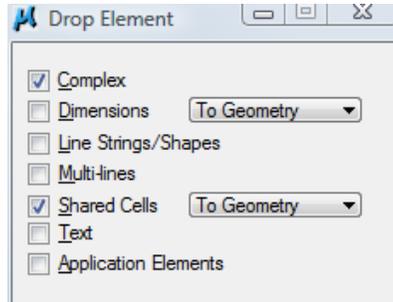


Tool Setting	Effect
Complex	If on, complex elements (cell, complex chain, complex shape, text node, surface, or solid) are dropped into their components.
Dimensions	If on, dimension element(s) are dropped into lines, line strings, ellipses, arcs, and text. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To Geometry — Drops down lines, line strings, ellipses, arcs, and text.</li> <li>To Segment — Drops down individual dimension segments.</li> </ul>
Line Strings/Shapes	If on, line strings and shapes are converted to series of individual line elements.
Multi-lines	If on, multi-line elements are converted to sets of line strings, lines, and/or arcs.
Shared Cells	If on, the associated option menu lets you drop shared cells: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To Geometry — They are dropped into their components.</li> <li>To Normal Cell — They are converted to unshared cells.</li> </ul>
Solids	(3D only) If on, the associated option menu lets you drop SmartSurfaces or SmartSolids: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To Surfaces — They are dropped to simple surfaces.</li> <li>To Wireframe — They are dropped to wireframe elements.</li> </ul>
Text	If on, text characters in text elements are converted to the individual elements that are used to draw the characters — lines, line strings, arcs, ellipses, and shapes.
Application Elements	If on, used to drop light weight geometry.

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

### *To break up an element into its components*

1. Select the element(s).
2. Select the *Drop Element* tool.
3. Turn on the appropriate tool settings to specify the element type(s) on which to operate.



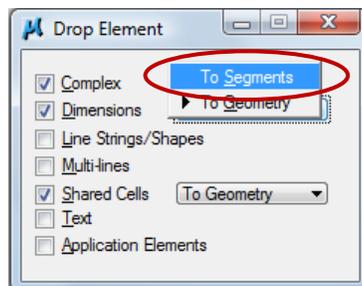
4. Accept the settings and initiate the drop.  
Only the selected elements of the specified type(s) are dropped. The tool has no effect on selected elements of other types. If none of the selected elements is of the specified type(s), the message “Nothing to drop” displays in the status bar.

### *Alternative Method — To break up an element into its components*

1. Select the *Drop Element* tool.
2. Turn on the appropriate tool settings to specify the element type(s) on which to operate.
3. Identify the element.
4. Accept the drop.

*Drop Element* cannot be used to drop elements more than one level at a time. For example, if you turn on Complex and Line Strings/Shapes and operate on a complex shape that contains two line strings, the complex shape is dropped but the component line strings are not so the operation results in two line strings.

Dropping chain dimensions to individual dimensions can be accomplished by checking the Dimensions setting and selecting “To Segments” from the drop- down options.



### 11.7 Drop Association



Used to discontinue an association point between a shared cell origin, dimension extension line vertex, or multi-line vertex and another element. The association point is converted to a non-associative origin or vertex with its own x-, y-, and (in 3D) z- coordinates. It is then independent of the other element. For more information about association points, see *Associating Elements*.

#### ***To discontinue an association***

1. Select the *Drop Association* tool.
2. Identify the association point.
3. Accept the drop.

#### ***To discontinue all association points on an element(s)***

1. Select the element(s).
2. Select the *Drop Association* tool.
3. Accept the drop.

### 11.8 Hatching and Patterning

Patterning is the repeated placement of a hatch line or cell through a closed area at a specified interval (spacing), scale, and angle. You can place patterns on any designated level.

When using a hatching or patterning tool with the tool setting Method set to Flood, Union, Intersection, or Difference, turning on Dynamic Area along with Associative Pattern lets you create patterns that regenerate themselves when their bounding elements are modified. As well, you can create single associative patterns with disjoint regions.

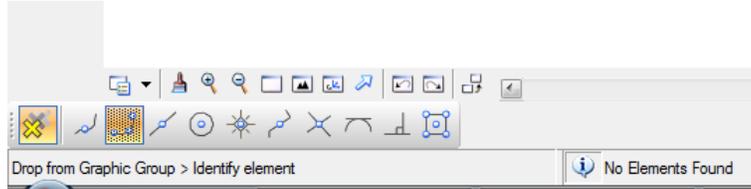
#### **Controlling the display of patterns**

Elements — either lines or cells — in a pattern are designated as pattern elements.

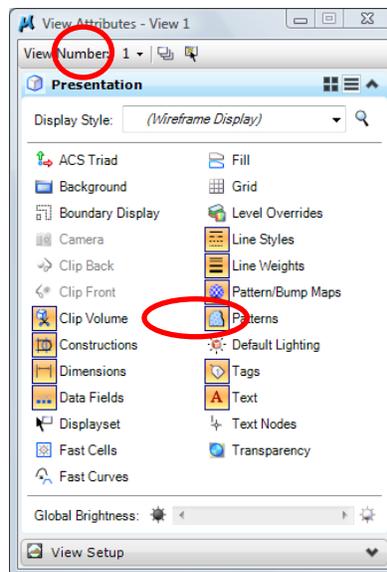
## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

### *To turn the display of patterns on or off in one or more views*

1. From the Settings menu, choose View Attributes.  
The View Attributes dialog box opens.  
or  
In the view control bar, select the View Attributes icon or the adjacent downward-pointing triangle.  
The View Attributes dialog opens.



2. From the View Number option menu, choose the number of the desired view.



3. Click on Patterns to turn on or off.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for additional views.

### *To turn the display of patterns on or off in all views*

1. From the Settings menu, choose View Attributes.  
The View Attributes dialog box opens.
2. Turn Patterns on or off.
3. Click the All button.



## 11.9 Patterns tool box

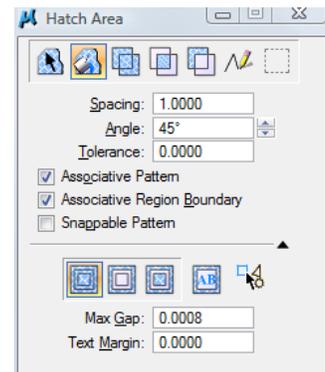
The tools in the Patterning toolbox are used to pattern areas and along linear elements .

To	Select in the Patterning toolbox
Hatch an area.	 <i>Hatch Area</i>
Crosshatch an area.	 <i>Crosshatch Area</i>
Pattern an area by tiling the Active Pattern Cell.	 <i>Pattern Area</i>
Pattern along a linear element.	 <i>Linear Pattern</i>
Display the angle and scale attributes of a pattern element.	 <i>Show Pattern Attributes</i>
Set the active pattern settings to match the attributes of an existing pattern element.	 <i>Match Pattern Attributes</i>
Modify the patterning.	 <i>Change Pattern</i>
Delete patterning.	 <i>Delete Pattern</i>

## 11.10 Hatch Area



Used to hatch an area. Elements used to define the area to be hatched can be in the active file, or in references. Where associative patterning is used, any modification to elements defining the hatched area results in an equivalent update to the hatching.



## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

Tool Setting	Effect
Method	<p>Determines the area that is hatched.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Element — The interior of a shape , ellipse , or closed B-spline curve; or between components of a multi-line. —</li> <li>• Fence — The area inside the fence.</li> <li>• Intersection — Of two or more closed elements.</li> <li>• Union — Of two or more closed elements.</li> <li>• Difference — Between two or more closed elements.</li> <li>• Flood — The (minimum) area enclosed by a set of elements (something like the flood fill tool common in painting programs). With method set to Flood, a Show Extended Information icon appears in the lower right corner of the tool settings window. Clicking this icon expands the tool settings to display further controls.</li> <li>• Points — An area defined by a series of data points, each of which defines a vertex.</li> </ul>
Spacing	Sets the interval between hatching lines.
Angle	Sets the angle at which hatching lines are drawn. By default, the angle is relative to the view being used. Where AccuDraw is active, however, the angle is relative to the AccuDraw drawing plane.
Tolerance	Maximum distance between curved element and approximating line segments used to pattern.
Associative Pattern	<p>If on, hatching is associated with the patterned element and is automatically updated when the element is manipulated or modified. In other words, if the element is modified later, the hatch lines are re-drawn to match the modified element.</p> <p>If Method is Intersection, Union, Difference, or Flood, a complex shape that bounds the patterned area is created, and the hatch lines are associated to the complex shape. If you move or modify the original element(s), used to create the complex shape, the complex shape is updated, along with the hatching.</p>
Associative Region Boundary	(Associative Pattern on only) If on, hatching can be placed on a level other than the level of the hatched element. If the Method is Intersection, Union, Difference, or Flood, a complex shape that bounds the hatched area is created, and the hatching is associated to the complex shape. If you move or modify the original element(s), used to create the complex shape, the complex shape is updated, along with the hatching.
Snappable Pattern	If on, hatching lines can be snapped to. If off, hatching lines do not interfere with snapping to other elements.
Ignore Interior Shapes	(Method set to Flood only) If selected, interior shapes are ignored when the region boundary is calculated.
Locate Interior Shapes	(Method set to Flood only) If on, all closed elements (regardless of their Area attributes) inside the selected area are avoided when the area is hatched.
Identify Alternating Interior Shapes	(Method set to Flood only) If selected, alternating areas are hatched where shapes are nested inside one another.
Locate Text	(Method set to Flood only) If on, any text or dimension text inside or overlapping the selected

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

	area is avoided when the area is hatched.
Dynamic Area	(Method set to Flood only) If on, the area to be hatched displays dynamically as you move the screen pointer over the shapes.
Alternating Area	(Method set to Flood only, with Locate Interior Shapes on and Dynamic Area off) If on, alternating areas are hatched where shapes are nested inside one another.
Max(imum) Gap	(Method set to Flood only) The maximum distance, in working units, between the endpoints of enclosing elements.
Search For Holes	<p>(Method set to Element only) When creating a non-associative pattern, gives you options for how hole elements are treated. You can ignore hole elements or search for hole elements on the same level as the element to pattern, or on all levels displayed in the view.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No — Ignores hole elements.</li> <li>• Element Level — Searches for hole elements on the same level as the element to hatch.</li> <li>• View Levels — Searches for hole elements on all levels displayed in the view.</li> </ul>
Use Element Symbology	If on, hatching is created using the active color, line weight, and line style of the element being patterned
Fill Type	(Method set to Points only) Sets the active fill type for the closed shape defined by the points — None (no fill), Opaque (filled with the active color), or Outlined.
Fill Color	<p>(Method set to Points only) Sets the color and optional gradient with which the elements are filled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If Fill Type is Opaque, the element(s) are filled with the active color, which is also the color of the element's outline.</li> <li>• If Fill Type is Outlined, the element(s) can be filled with a color that is different from the active color.</li> </ul>

### ***To hatch the area inside a closed element***

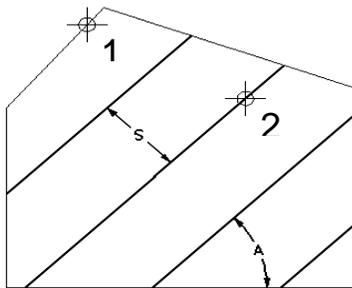
1. Select the element.
2. Select the *Hatch Area* tool.
3. Set the Method to Element.
4. Enter a data point to define a point through which a hatch line must pass.  
Elements that are inside the selected element and have the Area attribute Hole are hatched as follows:

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

If Associative Pattern is	Then Hole elements inside selected element
Off	Are not hatched.
On	If they were grouped with the Solid element using the <i>Group Holes</i> tool, they are not hatched and the hatching is associated with the Hole elements as well as the Solid.  Otherwise, the area enclosed by any other element inside the element, regardless of its Area attribute, is hatched, and no associations are made to it.

### **Alternative Method — To hatch the area inside a closed element**

1. Select the *Hatch Area* tool.
2. Set the Method to Element.
3. Identify the element.
4. Enter a data point to define a point through which a hatch line must pass.



*Hatching the area inside a closed element. Identify the element (1) and then enter a data point to define a point through which a hatch line must pass. "A" denotes the Active Pattern Angle. "S" denotes the Active Pattern Spacing.*

### **To hatch the fenced area**

1. With the fence present, select the *Hatch Area* tool.
2. Set the Method to Fence.
3. Enter a data point to define a point through which a hatch line must pass.

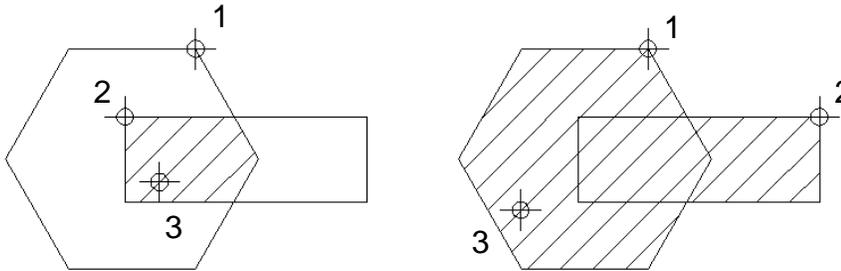
## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

### To hatch the intersection or union of closed elements

1. Select the *Hatch Area* tool.
2. In the Tool Settings window, set Method to Intersection or Union.
3. Identify one element.
4. Identify another element(s).  
As you accept each successive element, the edges that do not enclose the area to be hatched are hidden.  
The resulting area is highlighted.  
If the elements do not overlap, the following occurs, depending on the Method:

Method	If elements do not overlap, then
Intersection	"Elements do not intersect" is displayed in the status bar.
Union	All elements are hatched.

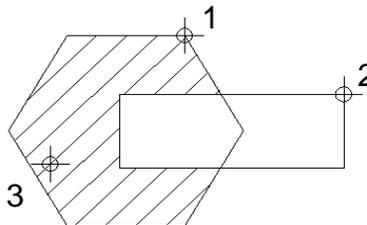
5. After you accept the last element, Reset to finish (or select a different tool).  
The area is hatched. The final acceptance point defines a point through which a hatch line must pass.



Identify one element (1), then another element (2), accept (3), and then Reset to finish.  
Results with Method set to Intersection (left) and Union (right).

### To hatch the difference between elements

1. Select the *Hatch Area* tool.
2. Set the Method to Difference.  
If any elements are selected, they are de-selected.
3. Identify the element from which to subtract.
4. Identify the element(s) to subtract from the element that was identified in step 3.
5. Accept the elements.  
The area to be hatched is displayed dynamically.
6. Reset to finish.

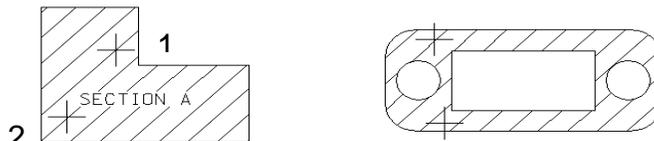


With Method set to Difference, identify the first element (1) and the element to subtract (2), then accept (3).

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

### To hatch an area enclosed by bounding elements

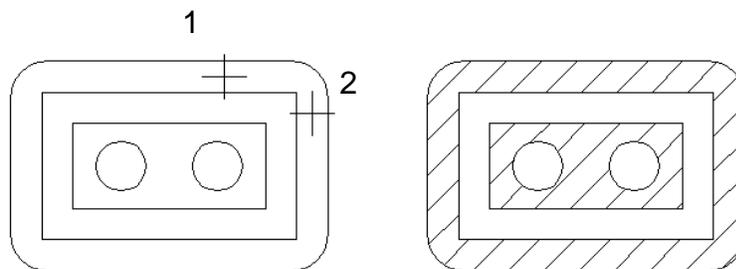
1. Select the *Hatch Area* tool.
2. Set the Method to Flood.
3. (Optional) If you want the hatching to avoid closed elements, text or dimension text inside the selected area, or you want to view the hatch area dynamically, click Show Extended Information (lower right in the tool settings) and turn on Locate Interior Shapes, Locate Text, and/or Dynamic Area.
4. Enter a data point in the area enclosed by the bounding elements. (To minimize the time required, zoom in to the area of interest or select the bounding elements.)  
The area to be patterned is displayed dynamically.  
If there are selected elements, only selected elements are considered as possible bounding elements. If no elements are selected, all elements in the view in which the data point is entered are considered.
5. Accept the hatching.  
The area is hatched. If Locate Interior Shapes and Locate Text is on, any inside closed element (regardless of its Area attribute), text or dimension text is avoided. If Associative Pattern is on, the hatch lines are associated to a complex shape created from the bounding elements and the inside elements.



Enter a data point inside the bounding elements (1). Accept the hatching (2).  
Results with Locate Text on (left), and Locate Interior Shapes on (right).

### To hatch an area containing nested elements within the bounding elements

1. Select the *Hatch Area* tool.
2. Set the Method to Flood.
3. (Optional) Click Show Extended Information (lower right in the tool settings) and turn on Locate Interior Shapes, and Alternating Area.
4. Enter a data point in the area enclosed by the bounding elements.  
The area to be patterned is displayed dynamically.
5. Accept the hatching.  
The areas are hatched alternately. If Associative Pattern is on, the hatch lines are associated to a complex shape created from the bounding elements and the inside elements.



Left: Enter a data point inside the bounding elements (1). Accept the hatching (2).  
Right: With Alternating Area on, alternating enclosed areas are hatched or left blank.

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

### To hatch an area defined by data points

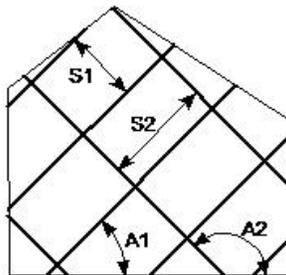
1. Select the *Hatch Area* tool.
2. Set the Method to Points.
3. Enter a data point to define each vertex of an imaginary shape that encloses the area. The imaginary shape is dynamically displayed.
4. Reset to finish.

### 11.11 Crosshatch Area

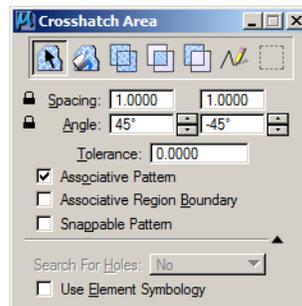


Used to crosshatch an area. Elements used to define the area to be crosshatched can be in the active model, or in references. Where associative patterning is used, any modification to elements defining the crosshatched area results in an equivalent update to the crosshatching.

The tool settings and procedures are the same as those for the Hatch Area tool, except that there are additional fields to specify the Spacing and Angle of the crosshatch lines, in addition to those for the hatch lines. Icons in the tool settings let you select the method for defining the area to be crosshatched.



*Crosshatch Area.* "A1" and "A2" denote the Active Pattern Angles. "S1" and "S2" denote the Active Pattern Spacing.



## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

Tool Settings	Effect
Element icon	 <p>The interior of a shape, ellipse, or closed B-spline curve; or between components of a multi-line.</p>
Flood icon	 <p>The (minimum) area enclosed by a set of elements (something like the flood fill tool common in painting programs). With method set to Flood, a Show Extended Information icon appears in the lower right corner of the tool settings window. Clicking this icon expands the tool settings to display further controls.</p>
Union icon	 <p>Edges bound the union of two or more closed planar elements.</p> <p>Where more than two elements are involved, use &lt;Ctrl-data point&gt; to select the extra elements.</p>
Intersection icon	 <p>Edges bound the intersection of two or more closed planar elements.</p> <p>Where more than two elements are involved, use &lt;Ctrl-data point&gt; to select the extra elements.</p>
Difference icon	 <p>Edges bound the difference of two or more closed planar elements.</p> <p>Where more than two elements are involved, use &lt;Ctrl-data point&gt; to select the extra elements.</p>
Points icon	 <p>An area defined by a series of data points, each of which defines a vertex.</p>
Fence icon	 <p>The area inside a fence</p>
Spacing	Sets the interval between the rows and the columns of the cross-hatching.
Angle	The angle at which instances of the crosshatch are placed. By default, the angle is relative to the view being used. Where AccuDraw is active, however, the angle is relative to the AccuDraw drawing plane.
Tolerance	Maximum distance between a curved element and the approximating line segments used for crosshatching.
Associative Pattern	<p>If on, crosshatching is associated with crosshatched geometry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If Element is selected, the crosshatching is associated with the crosshatched element and is automatically updated when the crosshatched element is manipulated or modified.</li> <li>• If Intersection, Union, or Difference is selected, a complex shape that bounds the crosshatched area is created, and the crosshatching is associated with the complex shape. The crosshatching and the complex shape are automatically updated when the</li> </ul>

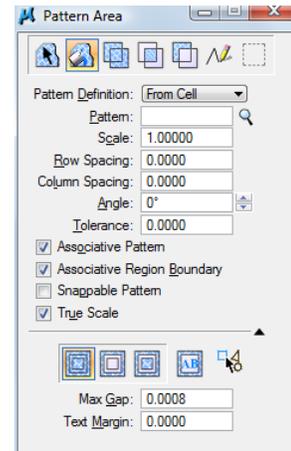
## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

	original element(s), used to create the complex shape, are modified or manipulated, only if Associative Region Boundary is also on.
Associative Region Boundary	(Associative Pattern on only) If on, crosshatching can be placed on a level other than the level of the crosshatched element. If Intersection, Union, Difference, or Flood is selected, a complex shape that bounds the crosshatched area is created, and the crosshatching is associated to the complex shape. If you move or modify the original element(s), used to create the complex shape, the complex shape is updated, along with the crosshatching.
Snappable Pattern	If on, crosshatched cells can be snapped to. If off, crosshatched cells do not interfere with snapping to other elements.
Ignore Interior Shapes icon	 <p>(Flood icon selected only) If selected, interior shapes are ignored when the region boundary is calculated.</p>
Locate Interior Shapes icon	 <p>(Flood icon selected only) If on, all closed elements (regardless of their Area attributes) inside the selected area are avoided when the area is crosshatched.</p>
Identify Alternating Interior Shapes icon	 <p>(Flood icon selected only) If selected, alternating areas are crosshatched where shapes are nested inside one another.</p>
Locate Interior Text icon	 <p>(Flood icon selected only) If on, any text or dimension text inside or overlapping the selected area is avoided when the area is crosshatched.</p>
Dynamic Area Locate icon	 <p>(Flood icon selected only) If on, the area to be hatched displays dynamically as you move the screen pointer over the shapes.</p>
Max(imum) Gap	(Flood icon selected only) The maximum distance, in working units, between the endpoints of enclosing elements.
Text Margin	(Flood icon selected only) Sets the size of the margin between hatching lines and existing text elements in the area to crosshatch.
Search For Holes	<p>When creating a non-associative pattern, you can ignore hole elements or search for hole elements on the same level as the element to pattern, or on all levels displayed in the view.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No — Ignore hole elements.</li> <li>• Element Level — Searches for hole elements on the same level as the element to hatch.</li> <li>• View Levels — Searches for hole elements on all levels displayed in the view.</li> </ul>
Use Element Symbology	If on, hatching is created using the active color, weight, and style of the element being patterned.
Fill Type	(Points method only) Sets the active fill type for the closed shape defined by the points — None (no fill), Opaque (filled with the active color), or Outlined.
Fill Color	<p>(Points method only) Sets the color and optional gradient with which the elements are filled. If Fill Type is Opaque, the element(s) are filled with the active color, which is also the color of the element's outline.</p> <p>If Fill Type is Outlined, the element(s) can be filled with a color that is different from the active color.</p>

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

- If the second angle is set to zero, *Crosshatch Area* places the second element at 90° to the first angle used.

### 11.12 Pattern Area



Used to pattern an area by tiling the Active Pattern Cell. Elements used to define the area to be patterned can be in the active file, or in references. Where associative patterning is used, any modification to elements defining the patterned area results in an equivalent update to the patterning.

Tool Setting	Effect
Method	<p>Determines the area that is patterned.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Element — The interior of a shape , ellipse , or closed B-spline curve; or between components of a multi-line.</li> <li>• Fence — The area inside the fence.</li> <li>• Intersection — Of two or more closed elements.</li> <li>• Union — Of two or more closed elements.</li> <li>• Difference — Between two or more closed elements.</li> <li>• Flood — The (minimum) area enclosed by a set of elements (something like the flood fill tool common in painting programs).</li> <li>• Points — An area defined by a series of data points, each of which defines a vertex.</li> </ul>
Pattern Cell	Lets you key in the name of the cell that is tiled to create the pattern. Optionally, you can click the Browse Cells button to the right of the input field, which opens the Cell Library dialog box to let you browse the cells in the attached library, or you can attach a cell library.
Browse Cells	Opens the Cell Libraries dialog box for purposes of placement of a different active cell.
Scale	Sets the factor by which the Active Pattern Cell is scaled.
Row Spacing	The interval between rows.
Column Spacing	The interval between columns.
Angle	The angle at which instances of the active Pattern Cell are placed. By default, the angle is relative to the view being used. Where AccuDraw is active, however, the angle is relative to the AccuDraw drawing plane.
Tolerance	Maximum distance between a curved element and the approximating line segments used for patterning.

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

Associative Pattern	If on, patterning is associated with a patterned element and is automatically updated when the element is manipulated or modified. If the Method is Intersection, Union, Difference, or Flood, a complex shape that bounds the patterned area is created, and the patterning is associated to the complex shape. If you move or modify the original element(s), used to create the complex shape, the complex shape is updated, along with the patterning.
Associative Region Boundary	(Associative Pattern on only) If on, patterning can be placed on a level other than the level of the patterned element. If the selected method is Intersection, Union, Difference, or Flood, a complex shape that bounds the patterned area is created, and the patterning is associated to the complex shape. If you move or modify the original element(s) used to create the complex shape, the complex shape is updated, along with the patterning.
Snappable Pattern	If on, patterning cells can be snapped to. If off, patterning cells do not interfere with snapping to other elements.
Ignore Interior Shapes	(Flood method only) If on, all closed elements (regardless of their Area attributes) inside the selected area are ignored when the area is patterned.
Locate Interior Shapes	(Method set to Flood only) If on, all closed elements (regardless of their Area attributes) inside the selected area are avoided when the area is patterned.
Identify Alternating Interior Shapes	(Flood method only) If on, alternating areas are patterned where shapes are nested inside one another.
Locate Text	(Method set to Flood only) If on, any text or dimension text inside or overlapping the selected area is avoided when the area is patterned.
Dynamic Area	(Method set to Flood only) If on, the area to be patterned displays dynamically as you move the screen pointer over the shapes.
Max(imum) Gap	(When Method is set to Flood) The maximum distance, in working units, between the endpoints of enclosing elements.
True Scale	If on, the active pattern cell is scaled to adjust it to the units of the active file. The scaling occurs only if the cell is shared and the units of the file in which the cell was created differ from those of the active file.
Text Margin	(Flood method only) Sets the size of the margin between pattern elements and existing text elements in the area to pattern.
Search For Holes	When creating a non-associative pattern, you can ignore hole elements or search for hole elements on the same level as the element to pattern, or on all levels displayed in the view.
Use Element Symbology	If on, a pattern is created using the active color, weight, and style of the element being patterned.
Fill Type	(Points method only) Sets the active fill type for the closed shape defined by the points — None (no fill), Opaque (filled with the active color), or Outlined.

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

Fill Color	<p>(Points method only) Sets the color and optional gradient with which the elements are filled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If Fill Type is Opaque, the element(s) are filled with the active color, which is also the color of the element's outline.</li> <li>• If Fill Type is Outlined, the element(s) can be filled with a color that is different from the active color.</li> </ul>
------------	---

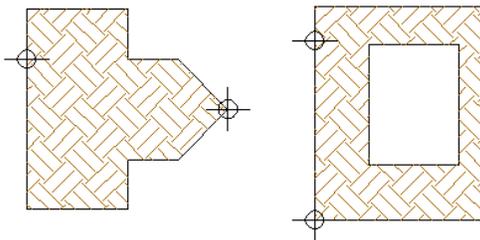
### To pattern the area inside a closed element

1. Select the element.
2. Select the *Pattern Area* tool.
3. Set the Method to Element.
4. Enter a data point to place the origin of one of the pattern cell instances.  
Elements that are inside the selected element and have the Area attribute Hole are patterned as follows:

If Associative Pattern is	Then Hole elements inside selected element
Off	Are not patterned.
On	<p>If they were grouped with the Solid element using the <i>Group Holes</i> tool they are not patterned and the pattern is associated with the Hole elements as well as the Solid.</p> <p>Otherwise, the area enclosed by any other element inside the element, regardless of its Area attribute, is patterned, and no associations are made to it.</p>

### Alternative Method — To pattern the area inside a closed element

1. Select the *Pattern Area* tool.
2. Set the Method to Element.
3. Identify the element.
4. Enter a data point to place the origin of one of the pattern cell instances.



At left, pattern cell EARTH is used to pattern a complex shape. At right, the outside block is also patterned with EARTH. Since the inner block has the area attribute of Hole, the area inside it is not patterned.

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

### ***To pattern the fenced area***

1. With the fence present, select the *Pattern Area* tool.
2. Set the Method to Fence.
3. Enter a data point to place the origin of one of the pattern cell instances.

### ***To pattern the intersection or union of closed elements***

1. Select the *Pattern Area* tool.
2. In the Tool Settings window, set Method to Intersection or Union.
3. Identify one element.
4. Identify another element(s).  
As you accept each successive element, the edges that do not enclose the area to be patterned are hidden. The resulting area is highlighted.  
If the elements do not overlap, the following occurs, depending on the Method:

Method	If elements do not overlap, then
Intersection	"Elements do not intersect" is displayed in the status bar.
Union	All elements are patterned.

5. After you accept the last element, Reset to finish (or select a different tool).  
The area is patterned. The final acceptance point defines a point through which a pattern line must pass.

### ***To pattern the difference between elements***

1. Select the *Pattern Area* tool.
2. Set the Method to Difference.  
If any elements are selected, they are de-selected.
3. Identify the element from which to subtract.
4. Identify the element(s) to subtract from the element that was identified in step 3.  
The area to be patterned is displayed dynamically.
5. Reset to finish.

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

### *To pattern an area enclosed by bounding elements*

1. Select the *Pattern Area* tool.
2. Set the Method to Flood.
3. (Optional) If you want the patterning to avoid closed elements, text or dimension text inside the selected area, or you want to view the pattern area dynamically, click Show Extended Information (lower right in the tool settings) and turn on Locate Interior Shapes, Locate Text, and/or Dynamic Area.
4. Enter a data point in the area enclosed by the bounding elements. (To minimize patterning time, zoom in to the area of interest or select the bounding elements.)  
The area to be patterned is displayed dynamically.  
If there are selected elements, only selected elements are considered as possible bounding elements. If no elements are selected, all elements in the view in which the data point is entered are considered.
5. Accept the patterning.  
The area is patterned. If Locate Interior Shapes and Locate Text is on, any inside closed element (regardless of its Area attribute), text or dimension text is avoided. If Associative Pattern is on, the patterning is associated to a complex shape created from the bounding elements and the inside elements.

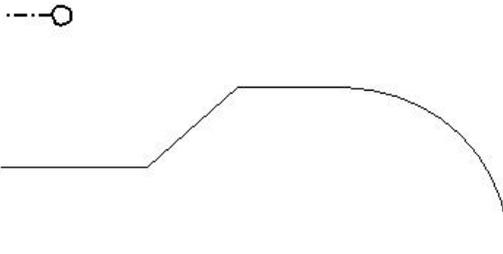
### *To pattern an area defined by data points*

1. Select the *Pattern Area* tool.
2. Set the Method to Points.
3. Enter a data point to define each vertex of an imaginary shape that encloses the area.  
The imaginary shape is dynamically displayed.
4. Reset to finish.

## 11.13 Linear Pattern

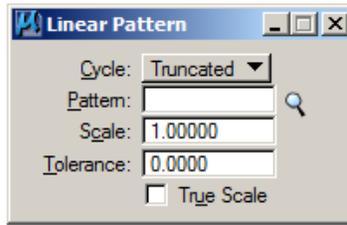


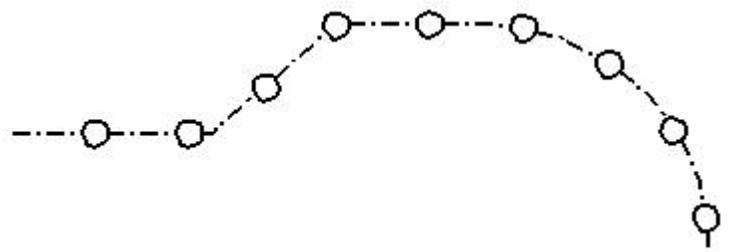
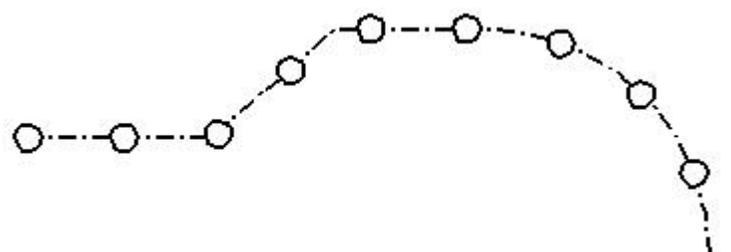
Used to draw or “tile” a pattern along an existing linear element. That is, to replace the linear element with repetitions of the pattern cell. After applying linear patterning to an element, you can turn off Patterns in the **View Attributes dialog** (Settings > View Attributes), to display the original linear element.



*The pattern cell (top) and the element (bottom) used for the illustrations in the table below*

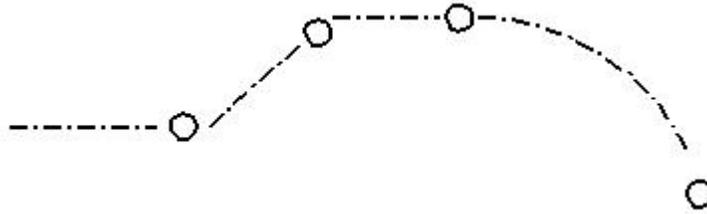
## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns



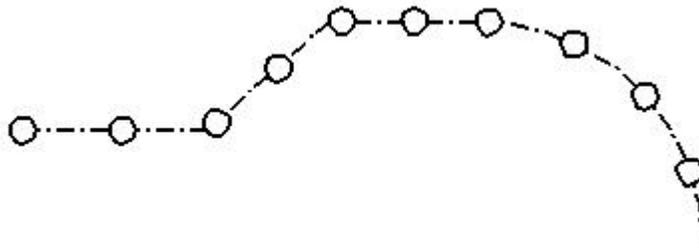
Tool Settings	Effect
Cycle	<p>Sets the manner in which the active Pattern Cell is placed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Truncated</b> — Place along the element at the Active Pattern Scale. If necessary, the last instance is truncated.</li></ul> 
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Complete</b> — Placed along the element at a scale that is adjusted, if necessary, from the Active Pattern Scale so that only complete instances are placed.</li></ul> 

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

- **Single** — Placed with one instance on each segment.  
If a segment's length is less than 80% of the cycle length, the segment is patterned with the first horizontal line in the pattern cell.



- **Multiple** — Place along an element at a scale that is adjusted, if necessary, from the Active Pattern Scale so that every instance is complete along each segment. If a segment's length is less than 80% of the cycle length, the segment is patterned with the first horizontal line in the pattern cell.



Pattern	The cell that is tiled to create the pattern. Can also be set with the Pattern button in the Cell Library dialog (Element > Cells).
Browse	Opens the Cell Library dialog for the placement of a different active cell.
Scale	The active Pattern Cell is scaled by this factor.
Tolerance	Maximum distance between a curved element and the approximating line segments.
True Scale	If on, the active pattern is scaled to adjust it to the units of the active model. The scaling occurs only if the cell is shared and the units of the model in which the cell was created differ from those of the active model.

### To pattern a linear element

1. Select the *Linear Pattern* tool.
2. Identify the element.
3. Enter a data point to indicate the pattern direction.

### 11.14 Show Pattern Attributes



Used to display the Pattern Angle and Pattern Scale attributes of a pattern element.

**To display the angle and scale of a pattern element**

1. Select the *Show Pattern Attributes* tool.
2. Identify the pattern element.  
The element highlights, and its type and level display in the status bar.
3. Accept the element.  
The pattern angle and scale are displayed in the status bar.

### 11.15 Match Pattern Attributes



Used to set the active pattern settings (Angle, Scale, and Spacing) to match the attributes of a pattern element in the DGN file.

**To match the active pattern settings to those of an existing pattern element**

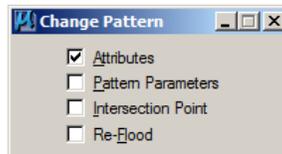
1. Select the *Match Pattern Attributes* tool.
2. Identify the pattern element.
3. Accept the pattern element.  
The new active pattern settings are displayed in the status bar.

### 11.16 Change Pattern



Used to change an existing pattern to:

- Match the current attributes and/or pattern parameters.
- Redefine the intersection point of the patterning.
- Re-flood the area.



Tool Settings	Effect
Attributes	If on, the current pattern attributes are applied to the pattern.
Pattern Parameters	If on, the current pattern parameters are applied to the pattern.
Intersection Point	If on, the pointer position defines the new intersection point of the pattern.
Re-Flood	If on, the selected region is re-flooded.

## MicroStation V8i - Groups and Patterns

### To change an existing pattern to the current settings

1. Select the *Change Pattern* tool.
  2. Identify the existing pattern.
  3. Accept.
- You can define or change the current settings via the *Pattern Area* tool settings. The *Pattern Area* tool also lets you select a different pattern for an element that already has a pattern.

### 11.17 Delete Pattern



Used to delete patterning.

### To delete patterning

1. Select the *Delete Pattern* tool.
2. Identify the patterning to delete or, in the case of associative patterning, the patterned element.
3. Accept the deletion.

# Text and Notes

## Section 12

<b>12.0</b>	<b>Text and Notes</b>	<b>Page 1200</b>
<b>12.1</b>	<b>Text Styles</b>	<b>Page 1201-1208</b>
<b>12.2</b>	<b>Entering and Editing Text</b>	<b>Page 1209-1215</b>
<b>12.3</b>	<b>Text tool box</b>	<b>Page 1216-1217</b>
<b>12.4</b>	<b>Place Text</b>	<b>Page 1218-1222</b>
<b>12.5</b>	<b>Place Note</b>	<b>Page 1222-1224</b>
<b>12.6</b>	<b>Edit Text</b>	<b>Page 1224-1226</b>
<b>12.7</b>	<b>Spell Checker</b>	<b>Page 1226-1229</b>
<b>12.8</b>	<b>Case Change</b>	<b>Page 1230</b>
<b>12.9</b>	<b>Display Text Attributes</b>	<b>Page 1231</b>
<b>12.10</b>	<b>Match Text Attributes</b>	<b>Page 1231</b>
<b>12.11</b>	<b>Change text Attributes</b>	<b>Page 1232-1233</b>
<b>12.12</b>	<b>Copy and Increment Text</b>	<b>Page 1233-1234</b>
<b>12.13</b>	<b>Copy Enter Data Field</b>	<b>Page 1234</b>
<b>12.14</b>	<b>Copy and Increment Enter Data Field</b>	<b>Page 1234-1235</b>
<b>12.15</b>	<b>Fill Single Enter Data Field</b>	<b>Page 1235</b>
<b>12.16</b>	<b>Automatic Fill Enter Data Field</b>	<b>Page 1236</b>
<b>12.17</b>	<b>Excel to MicroStation (QuanTab)</b>	<b>Page 1236</b>
<b>12.18</b>	<b>Find and Replace text</b>	<b>Page 1237-1238</b>



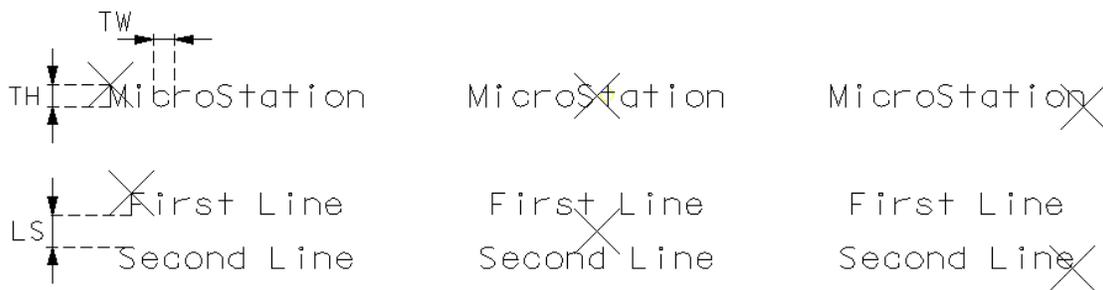
## 12.0 Text and Notes

### Text

Text elements are useful for including labels other than dimensions in a design file.

As an element type, text differs in several ways from other types of elements. The following attributes apply exclusively to text:

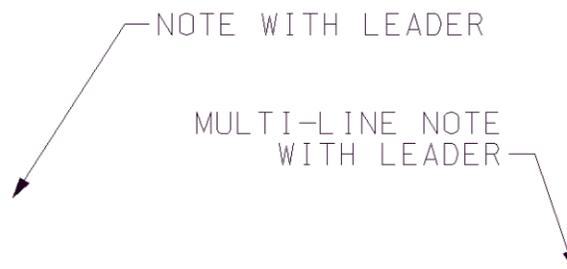
- Fonts — Text is placed in the Active Font.
- Justification — Text is aligned in a specific way with respect to the data point that positions its origin.
- Text sizes (Height and Width) — Text characters have height and width.



*Single (top) and Multi-line (bottom) text Justification. From left: Left Top, Center, and Right Bottom. The origin is placed at the location of the pointer. TH denotes Text Height, TW denotes Text Width, and LS denotes Line Spacing.*

### Notes

Included in the Text tools for MicroStation are Note placement tools which allow the user to label geometry or elements within the design file by using a block of text with a leader. Note placement tools represent a hybrid between text and dimensions with the text portion of the note being controlled by the Text Styles settings and the arrow and leader portion of the note being controlled by the Dimension Styles settings.



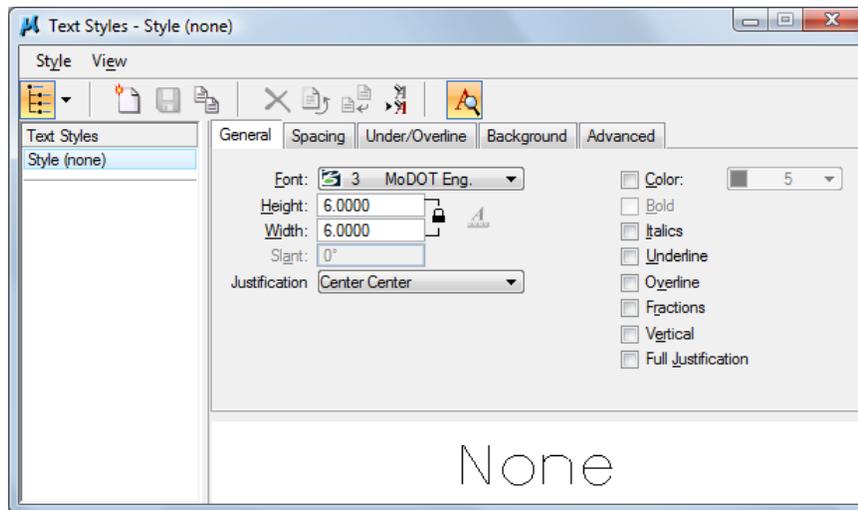
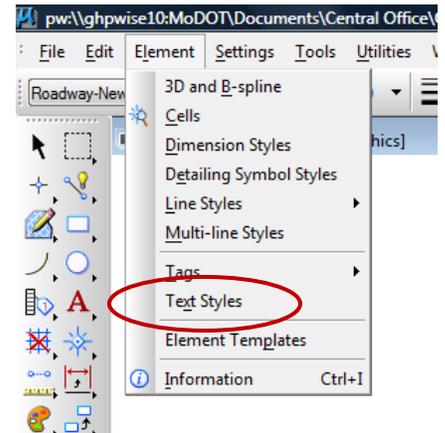
*Single line note with leader (top). Multi-line note with leader (bottom), right justified and right side leader placement option set for bottom line.*

## 12.1 Text Styles

The Text Styles dialog box provides an interface for working with text styles and for setting active text attributes.

### Text Styles

MicroStation V8 supports text styles and provides an interface for constructing text using available system fonts and a wide variety of text attributes. A text style comprises a group of text attributes, such as font type, width, height, and color. Once set up and stored with all necessary attributes, a text style allows the user to produce text with these preset attributes simply by activating that text style.



**NOTE:** At this time MoDOT has not set up any standard text styles. It is the intent of CADD Support to utilize this option and create a library of text styles for the Department's users. When this library is set up and becomes available this section of the manual will be updated to reflect these changes.

Users can create their own custom text styles and save them within the design file. For more information on text styles see the Contents section under the Help menu.

The Text Styles dialog box also utilizes icon driven functions that parallel the menu options at the top of the dialog box. Most of these functions deal with the creation or manipulation of text styles, however the icon on the far right toggles the text style preview on or off. This preview provides the user with a visual aid that reflects changes in text attributes

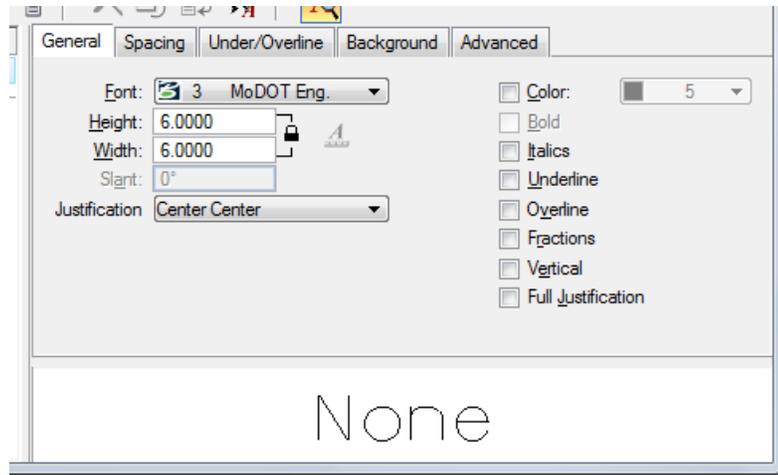


## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### Text Attributes

MicroStation employs an extensive and advanced set of text options that are categorized under a series of tabs on the Text Styles dialog box. To change an attribute simply access the corresponding tab and make any necessary modifications. Once the changes have been made any new text entered will take on those new attributes.

### General Tab



### Font

Sets the Active Font for text when placed.

### Height & Width

Sets the Active Text Height and Active Text Width, in working units, of text upon placement. When lock icon is "locked" the height and width are forced to the same measurement.

### Slant

Sets the angle, in degrees, by which text is slanted when placed. This setting is only available if the *Italics* check box to the right of the *General Tab* is checked.

### Justification (Single-Line & Multi-Line)

Sets the position of text relative to its origin (the position where the data point is entered) when using the *Place Text* tool.

### Color

If on, activates the color picker to select the color of the text when placed.

### Bold

Bold text when placed, if on.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### ***Italics***

Italicize text when placed, if on.

### ***Underline***

Underline text when placed, if on.

### ***Overline***

Place a line over the text when placed, if on.

### ***Fractions***

If on and using a MicroStation resource font, numeric characters separated by a slash (/) are placed as single characters (numerator over denominator).

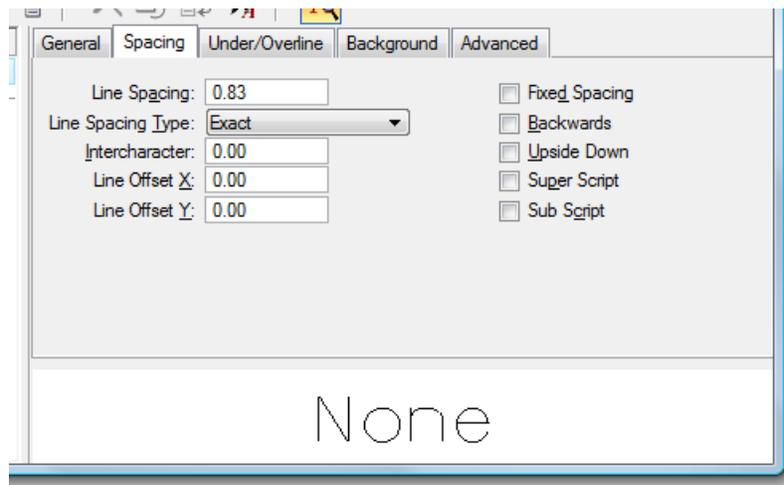
### ***Vertical***

Orient text vertically when placed, if on.

### ***Full Justification***

If on, perform full text justification. Full justification adjusts word spacing so that no word is hyphenated to complete a line of text.

### **Spacing Tab**



### ***Line Length***

Sets the Active Line Length or the maximum number of characters per line in a multi- text element (text node).

### ***Line Spacing***

Sets the Active Line Spacing or the vertical spacing in working units, between:

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

- Lines in a multi-line text element (text node) when it is placed.
- Text and an identified element, when the *Place Text* tool is used with any of these Methods: Above Element, Below Element, or Along Element.

### **Line Spacing Type**

Set the type of vertical spacing between lines of text using the following methods:

- Exact (DGN workmode only) - The distance to the next line is calculated as: Top of line + Line Spacing + the baseline. (Baseline is determined by the arrangement origin of the text (upper left) + the height of the tallest character.)

When the Vertical text style setting is on, the distance between lines of vertical text is calculated as: Current line origin + the maximum width of characters in the line + Line Spacing.

The Exact method does not account for extreme variance in descender depth. To get the line spacing that you want, try adjusting the line spacing value.

- Automatic (DGN workmode only) - The distance to the next line is calculated as: Top of line + Line Spacing + baseline. (Baseline is determined by the arrangement origin of the text (upper left) + the height of the tallest character.)

When the Vertical text style setting is on, the distance between lines of vertical text is calculated as the maximum of either Line Spacing or the maximum width of characters in the line.

The Automatic method does not account for extreme variance in descender depth. To get the line spacing that you want, try adjusting the line spacing value.

- From Line Top - For horizontal and vertical text, the distance to the next line is calculated as: Top of line + Line Spacing.

This method is analogous to the AutoCAD Exactly line spacing setting. It provides rigid control over line spacing, and is generally used for table-based text. However, since the spacing does not vary, the lowest point on one line may overlap the top of the next line.

- At Least - The distance to the next line is calculated as:  $1/3$  of the maximum height of a character +  $1/3$  of the node number height + the lowest point of the text \* Line Spacing. When the Vertical text style setting is on, the same rules apply, except that the distance is between the left side of one line of text and the left side of the following line of text.

This method is analogous to the AutoCAD At Least line spacing setting. It is variable, data dependent, and uses Line Spacing as a *factor*, not a distance.

### **Intercharacter**

Set the distance, in working units, between characters in text when placed. The preference Fixed-Width Character Spacing controls the manner in which the specified distance is measure.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### ***Line Offset X***

Control the spacing, in working units, between placed text and the position from which the text is drawn in X.

### ***Line Offset Y***

Control the spacing, in working units, between placed text and the position from which the text is drawn in Y.

### ***Fixed Spacing***

Use Inter Character Spacing value to set the distance from the start of one character to the start of the next character, rather than between characters.

### ***Backwards***

Reverse the orientation of text horizontally when placed, if on.

### ***Upside Down***

Reverse the orientation of text vertically when placed, if on.

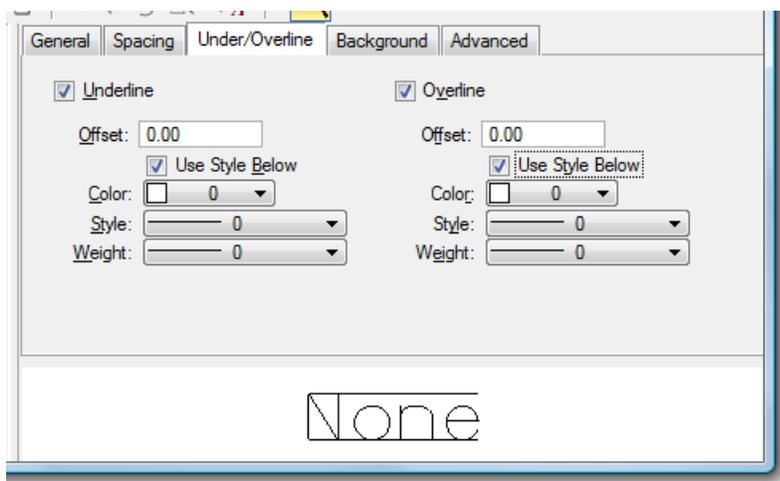
### ***Super Script***

Set placed text with superscript characteristics, if on.

### ***Sub Script***

Set placed text with subscript characteristics, if on.

### **Under/Overline Tab**



### ***Underline***

Underline text when placed, if on.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### ***Use Style Below (Underline)***

Activates the Offset, Color, Style and Weight settings for underlining Text Styles.

### ***Offset (Underline)***

Control the spacing, in working units, between the base of the text and the underlining.

### ***Color (Underline)***

Set the type of underline color. Only applies when Underline is on.

### ***Style (Underline)***

Set the type of underline used when text is placed. Only applies when Underline Style is on.

### ***Weight (Underline)***

Set the thickness of underline used when text is placed. Only applies when Underline style is on.

### ***Overline***

Place a line over the text when placed, if on.

### ***Use Style Below (Overline)***

Activates the Offset, Color, Style and Weight settings for overlining Text Styles.

### ***Offset (Overline)***

Control the spacing, in working units, between the height of the text and the overlining.

### ***Color (Overline)***

Set the type of overline color. Only applies when Overline style is on.

### ***Style (Overline)***

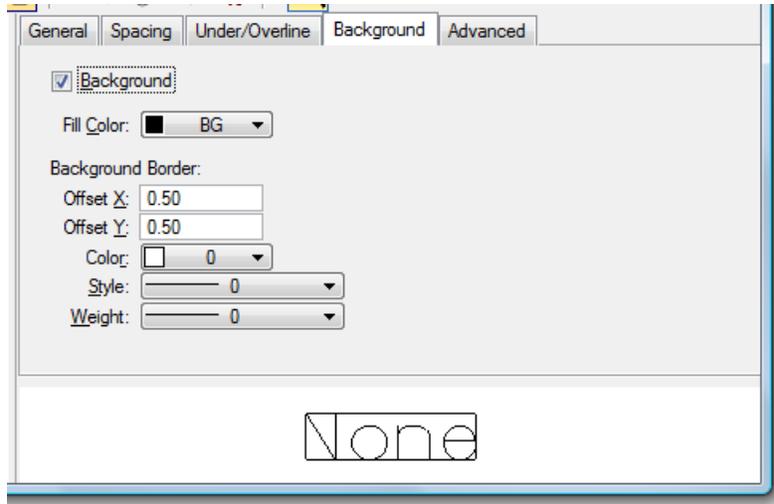
Set the type of overline used when text is placed. Only applies when Overline Style is on.

### ***Weight (Overline)***

Set the thickness of overline used when text is placed. Only applies when Overline style is on.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### Background Tab



### ***Background***

If on, enables a background for the active text. The remaining controls are enabled only while Background is on.

### ***Fill Color***

Sets the fill color of the background when text is placed.

### ***Background Border Offset X***

Sets the thickness of the background along the sides of the text box.

### ***Background Border Offset Y***

Sets the thickness of the background along the top and bottom of the text box.

### ***Background Border Color***

Sets the color of the border around text when placed.

### ***Background Border Style***

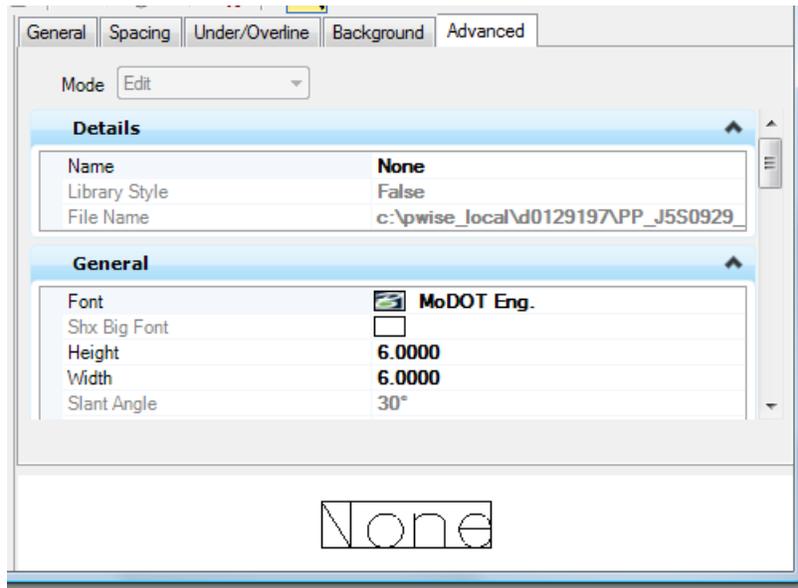
Sets the style of the border around text when placed.

### ***Background Border Weight***

Sets the weight of the border around text when placed. Line weights range from 1 to 15 in working units.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### Advanced Tab



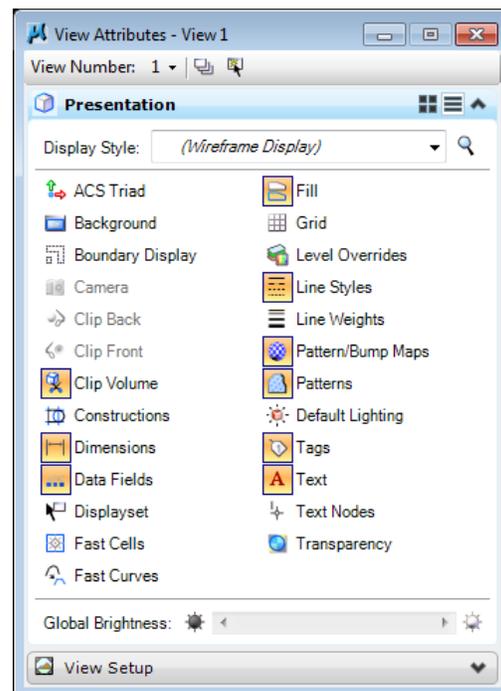
The Advanced Tab contains a series of configurable controls that allow the user to customize individual text attributes. For additional information see the Contents option under the Help menu.

### Controlling the display of text

Using the View Attributes dialog box (Settings > View Attributes), you can turn off the display of the text itself or numbers and symbols.

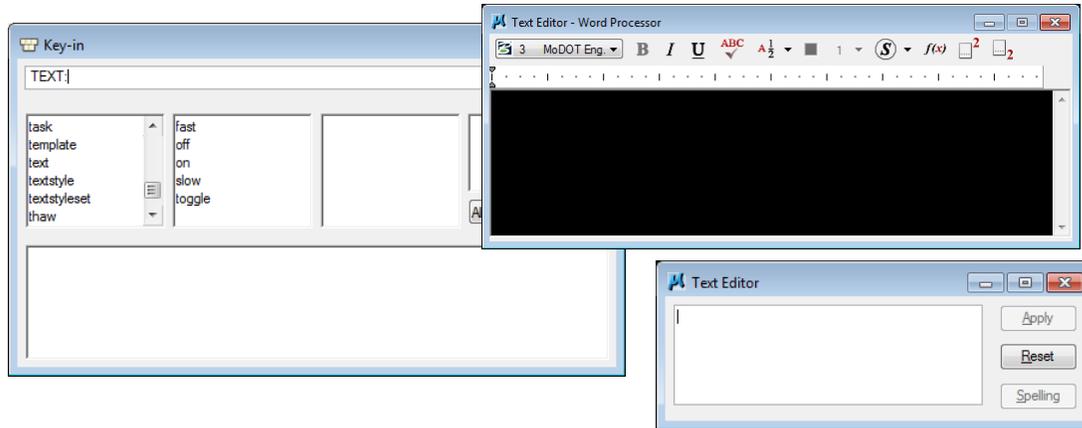
#### To turn on or turn off the display of text in a view

1. From the Settings menu, choose View Attributes (or press <CTRL-B>).  
or  
From any view window's control menu, choose View Attributes.  
The View Attributes dialog box opens.
2. From the View Number option menu, choose the number of the desired view.
3. Turn on or turn off the Text attribute.
4. (Optional) Repeat steps 2 - 3 for additional views.



### 12.2 Entering and Editing Text

Unless it is already open, the Text Editor window opens when you select a text placement or editing tool. Input from the letter keys and arrow keys on the keyboard is treated as text input until you press the <Esc> key, select another tool, or click the Key-in window.



*The three types of Text Editors; from left to right, Key-in, WYSIWYG, Word Processor, and the Dialog Box. You can choose the Editor from the Workspace pull down. Choose Preferences and then Text.*

#### Basic text editing functions

You can edit text in the Text Editor window (and in text fields in MicroStation dialog boxes) using these functions:

- New text is placed at the insertion point, which is indicated by a vertical bar. You can click within the text to place the insertion point, and then you can use any available method for Moving the insertion point.
- In the default insert mode, new characters are inserted at the insertion point. Also, overwrite mode, in which each new character overwrites an existing character, is available.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### Moving the insertion point

You can move the insertion point in the following ways:

To move	Press this key
Right one character	<→>
Left one character	<←>
Up one line	<↑>
Down one line	<↓>
To the beginning of the line	<Home>
To the end of the line	<End>
Up to the previous window	<Page Up>
Down to the next window	<Page Down>
To the next word	<CTRL-→>
To the previous word	<CTRL-←>
To the beginning of the text	<CTRL-Home>
To the end of the text	<CTRL-End>

### Selecting text

You can select text in the following ways:

To	Do this
Select a range of text	Drag through the desired text
Select a word	Double-click before the first character of the word Double-click after the last character of the word Double-click within the word
Select all text	Press <CTRL-A>
Increase a selection	Shift-click a point beyond the selected text
Increase selection by one character	Press <SHIFT-→>
Decrease selection by one character	Press <SHIFT-←>
Increase selection by one word	Press <CTRL-SHIFT-→>
Decrease selection by one word	Press <CTRL-SHIFT-←>
Deselect text	Click anywhere in the Text Editor window Press <→> Press <←>

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### Editing text

The available text editing functionality is as follows:

To	Do this
Delete previous character or selected text	<Back Space>
Delete next character or selected text	<Delete>
Delete previous word	<CTRL-Back Space>
Delete next word	<CTRL-Delete>
Cut selected text	<SHIFT-Delete> or <CTRL-X>
Copy selected text	<CTRL-Insert> or <CTRL-C> <sup>a</sup>
Paste selected text	<SHIFT-Insert> or <CTRL-V> <sup>a</sup>
Toggle between insert mode and overwrite mode	<Insert>

### *To replace text in the Text Editor window*

1. Select the text.
2. Type the new text.  
The typed text replaces the selected text.

### *To move text in the Text Editor window*

1. Select the text.
2. Right-click and choose Cut from the pop-up menu .  
or  
Press <CTRL-X>
3. Place the insertion point at the desired location for the moved text.  
If you want to replace text, you can select the text to be replaced.
4. Right-click and choose Paste from the pop-up menu .  
or  
Press <CTRL-V>

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### ***To copy text in the Text Editor window***

1. Select the text.
2. Right-click and choose Copy from the pop-up menu .  
or  
Press <CTRL-C>
3. Place the insertion point at the desired location for the copy of the text.  
If you want to replace text, you can select the text to be replaced.
4. Right-click and choose Paste from the pop-up menu .  
or  
Press <CTRL-V>

### ***To insert a new line in the Text Editor window***

1. From the Text tool box, select the *Place Text* tool.
2. In the Text Editor window, press <Enter>.

### ***To create an enter data field in the Text Editor window***

1. From the Text tool box, select the *Place Text* tool.
2. In the Text Editor window, type the enter data field character once for each character in the enter data field. By default, “\_” is the enter data field character.  
or  
Key in a matched pair of field delimiters. To leave an empty enter data field with a certain number of enter data field characters, you can type that number of spaces within the delimiters or you can type text between the delimiters.
3. (Optional) Use the JUSTIFY (Justify Enter Data Field) key-in to change the justification.  
When created, MicroStation left justifies all enter data fields.

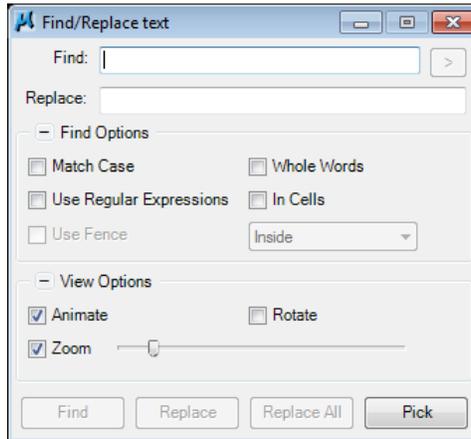
### **Searching for and replacing text**

You can search all text in a design file for a sequence of letters and numbers, and you can specify a text search for single character fractions. Also, you can replace some or all instances of text with other text. Also, you can append and prepend text while retaining an original string.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### *To search for text in a design file*

1. (Optional) To search for text only in a certain part of the design file, place a fence and set the appropriate fence search criteria.
2. From the Edit menu, choose Find/Replace Text  
The Find/Replace dialog box opens.



3. In the Find field, type the text for which you want to search.
4. (Optional) To search for text with special characteristics, perform one of the following:  
To find only text with the same capitalization as the text in the Find field (case-sensitive), turn on Match Case.  
To find only complete words that match the text in the Find field, turn on Whole Words.  
To use special characters in the Find field, turn on Reg. Expr.  
To search for text in cells, turn on In Cells.  
To search for text with fractions, turn on Fractions.
5. Click Find.  
The first placement in the design file of the specified text in the Find field is displayed in the view in which you entered the last data point.
6. To find the desired text, continue clicking the Find button.  
An information box confirms that all text in the design file has been searched. If text matching the specified text is not found, the search resumes at the beginning of the design file.

### *To find and replace text in a design file*

1. (Optional) To search for text only in a certain part of the design file, place a fence and set the appropriate fence search criteria.
2. From the Edit menu, choose Find/Replace Text.  
The Replace Text settings window opens.
3. In the Find field, key in the text to replace.
4. From the Change option menu, choose Replace.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

5. In the With field, key in the replacement text.  
To delete text that matches the text in the Find field, you can leave the With field blank.
6. (Optional) To search for text with special characteristics, turn on one of the following check boxes:
  - Match Case
  - Whole Words
  - Reg. Expr.
  - In Cells
  - Fractions
7. To execute a search, perform one of the following:
  - To examine the first instance of text that matches the specified text, click Find.
  - To replace text, click Change.
  - To replace all text that matches the specified text, click Change All.
  - To replace all text elements that match the current Fence search criteria, click Change Fence.
  - To examine additional instances of matching text, continue clicking Find.

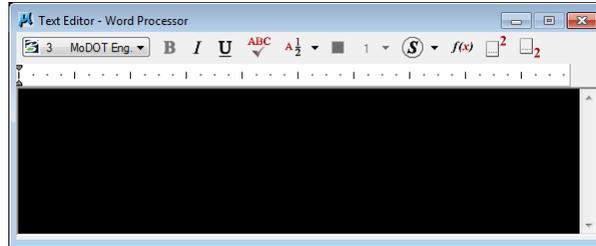
### ***To replace text in a known location in the design file***

1. (Optional) To search for text only in a certain part of the design file, place a fence and set the appropriate fence search criteria.
2. From the Edit menu, choose Find/Replace Text.  
The Replace Text settings window opens.
3. In the Find field, key in the text to replace.
4. From the Change option menu, choose Replace.
5. In the With field, key in the replacement text.
6. (Optional) To search for text with special characteristics, turn on one of the following check boxes:
  - Match Case
  - Whole Words
  - Reg. Expr
  - In Cells
  - Fractions
7. Click Change Single.
8. Identify a text element.  
Any matching text found in the text element is replaced.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### Window controls for the Word Processor Text Editor

Used to create and modify the text in the text window of the *Word Processor* Text Editor window. Opens when you select the *Place Text* tool from the Text tool box.



### Text Editor Icon Bar

Contains the controls that create and modify the text style of the text in the text window of the word processor Text Editor window. For more information, see the Text Editor Icon Bar.

#### Find <CTRL-F>

Choosing Find from the right-click, pop-up menu, opens the Find dialog box.

#### Select All <CTRL-A>

Choosing Select All from the right-click, pop-up menu, selects all text.

#### Cut <CTRL-X>

Choosing Cut from the right-click, pop-up menu, cuts the selected text.

#### Copy <CTRL-C>

Choosing Copy from the right-click, pop-up menu, copies the selected text.

#### Paste <CTRL-V>

Choosing Paste from the right-click, pop-up menu, pastes the text on the Clipboard to the location of the pointer.

#### <CTRL-B>

If pressed with the pointer in the text window, bolds the selected text.

#### <CTRL-I>

If pressed with the pointer in the text window, italicizes the selected text.

#### <CTRL-U>

If pressed with the pointer in the text window, underlines the selected text.

#### <CTRL-Z>

If pressed with the pointer in the text window, undoes the previous operation.

### 12.3 Text tool box



The tools in the Text tool box are used to place text, modify existing text elements, and fill in enter data fields.

To	Select in the Text tool box
Place text in the design.	 <i>Place Text</i>
Place a note.	 <i>Place Note</i>
Edit a text element to replace, add, or delete characters.	 <i>Edit Text</i>
Review text elements for spelling errors.	 <i>Spell Checker</i>
Change the case of text element.	 <i>Change Case</i>
Display the attributes of a text element.	 <i>Display Text Attributes</i>
Set the active text settings the same as the attributes of a text element.	 <i>Match Text Attributes</i>
Change selected text-specific element attributes of a text or tag element(s).	 <i>Change Text Attributes</i>

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

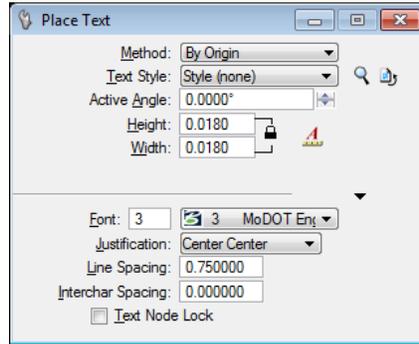
<p>Copy and increment a text element that contains numbers.</p>	 <p><i>Copy/Increment Text</i></p>
<p>Copy the contents of one enter data field to another.</p>	 <p><i>Copy Enter Data Field</i></p>
<p>Copy and increment the contents of one enter data field that contains numbers into another enter data field.</p>	 <p><i>Copy/Increment Enter Data Fields</i></p>
<p>Fill in or change enter data fields in a view.</p>	 <p><i>Fill In Single Enter Data Field</i></p>
<p>Fill in all enter data fields in a view.</p>	 <p><i>Auto Fill In Enter Data Fields</i></p>
<p>Fill in all enter data fields in a view.</p>	 <p><i>Excel to MicroStation</i></p>
<p>Used to search all the text in a file for any sequence of letters and numbers and replace some or all instances of the text with other text.</p>	 <p><i>Find &amp; Replace</i></p>

## 12.4 Place Text



Used for the following:

- Placing a text element(s)
- Selecting and modifying a text style(s).



Tool Setting	Effect
Method	<p>Sets how the position, scaling, and rotation of text is determined (see below).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• By Origin — At the Active Angle and the active text settings.</li> <li>• Fitted — Text is stretched to fit between two data points. The vertical alignment of the text is determined by the active Justification.</li> <li>• View Independent — At the Active Angle and the active text settings. Once placed, text stays at the same orientation regardless of the view rotation.</li> <li>• Fitted V(iew) I(Independent) — Combines fitted and view independent views.</li> <li>• Above Element — Above a line segment at the active text settings at the same angle as the segment at a distance equal to the Active Line Spacing.</li> <li>• Below Element — Below a line segment at the active text settings at the same angle as the line segment at a distance equal to the Active Line Spacing.</li> <li>• On Element — On a line or segment of a line string, shape, B-spline curve, or multi-line at the active text settings.</li> <li>• Along Element — Along — above or below — an element (curve, B-spline curve, arc, ellipse, line, line string, or shape). Each character is placed as a single text element that is a component of a graphic group. The characters are placed at the active text settings a distance equal to the Active Line Spacing.</li> </ul>

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Word Wrap — (Available only if Word Processor is selected in the Preferences dialog box, Text category, Text Editor Style option menu.) Allows you to contain text within a box, once a box is identified. If a word is entered that exceeds the limit of the box, that word drops to the next line.</li> </ul>
Text Style	Sets the current text style from a list of all available text styles.
Magnifying Glass icon	Opens the Text Styles dialog box which is used to create and modify text styles.
Active Angle	Sets the angle, in degrees, at which text is placed, when Method is By Origin or View Independent.
Height	Sets the text height, in working units.
Width	Sets the text width, in working units
Font	Sets the Active Font.
Justification	Controls the text alignment. Options are Left Top, Left Center, Left Bottom, Left Margin Top, Left Margin Center, Left Margin Bottom, Center Top, Center Center, Center Bottom, Right Margin Top, Right Margin Center, Right Margin Bottom, Right Top, Right Center or Right Bottom.
Line Spacing	Sets spacing between identified element and text, when Method is Above Element, Below Element, or Along Element (only visible when Method is Along Element).
Interchar(acter) Spacing	Sets spacing between the characters, when Method is Along Element.
Apply changes to all text (only shows up in Word Processor mode)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If on, applies style changes to all text in the Text Editor window. For example, if you key in text in the Text Editor, then click the Bold icon, all text becomes bold.</li> <li>If off, applies style changes to selected text in the Text Editor window, or to new text. For example, if you key in text in the Text Editor, then click the Bold icon, only selected text becomes bold. Any new text will also be bold.</li> </ul>

To place text at the Active Angle and active text settings

1. Select the Place Text tool.  
The Text Editor window opens if it is not already open.
2. Set the Method to By Origin or View Independent.
3. (Optional) Adjust the size of the text by changing the Height and Width settings. Setting Width to three-quarters of Height generally produces the desired appearance with traditional MicroStation fonts.
4. In the Text Editor window, type the text.  
As you move the pointer, the text displays dynamically.
5. Enter a data point to position the origin of the text element.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

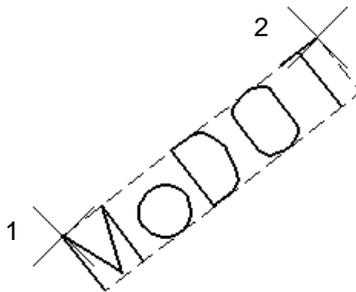
- Return to step 5 to place another instance of the same text.  
or  
Return to step 4 to place other text.



*Place Text with Method set to By Origin or View Independent*

### ***To place fitted text***

- Select the Place Text tool.  
The Text Editor window opens if it is not already open.
- Set Method to Fitted or Fitted V(iew) I(ndependent).
- In the Text Editor window, type the text.
- Enter a data point to define the left end of the fitted text.
- Enter a data point to position the right end of the text and define the height, width, and rotation angle.
- Return to step 4 to place another instance of the same text.  
or  
Return to step 3 to place other text.

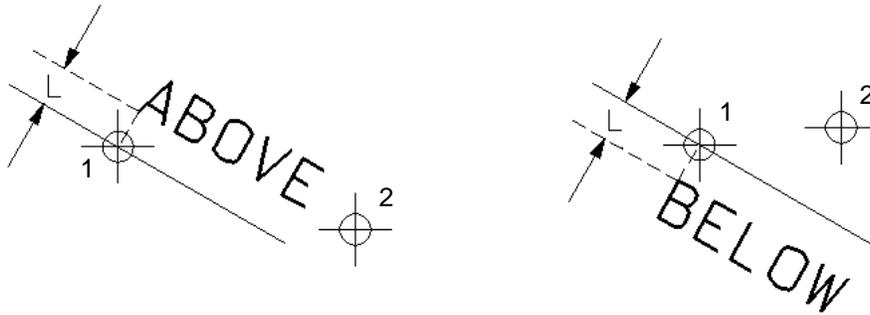


*Place Text with Method set to Fitted or Fitted VI*

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### **To place text above or below an element**

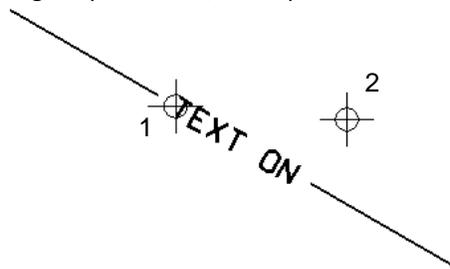
1. Select the Place Text tool.  
The Text Editor window opens if it is not already open.
2. Set Method to Above Element or Below Element.
3. In the Text Editor window, type the text.
4. Identify the line segment. The data point positions the left-to-right origin of the text element.
5. Accept the text.



*Place Text with Method set to Above Element (left), Below Element (right), and "L" denotes Active Line Spacing.*

### **To place text on an element**

1. Select the Place Text tool.  
The Text Editor window opens if it is not already open.
2. Set the Method to On Element.
3. In the Text Editor window, type the text.
4. Identify the element on which to place the text. The origin of the text element is placed at this point.  
The text displays.
5. Accept the text.  
The part of a line, line string, B-spline curve, or shape that is under the text is deleted. A multi-line is not modified.



*Place Text with Method set to On Element*

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### To place text along an element

1. Select the Place Text tool.  
The Text Editor window opens if it is not already open.
2. Set the Method to Along Element.
3. In the Text Editor window, type the text.
4. Enter a data point along the element to position the origin.  
The text displays both above and below the element. If the text is too long to fit along the element with the current Inter-character Spacing, it is truncated.
5. If necessary, adjust the Inter-character Spacing.
6. Enter a data point to position the text either above or below the element.

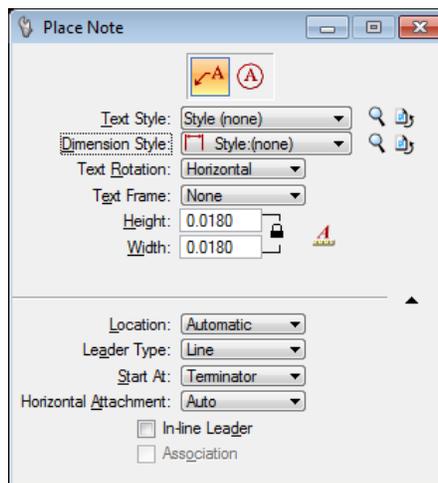


Place Text with Method set to Along Element, “L” denotes Line Spacing and “S” denotes Inter-character Spacing.

## 12.5 Place Note



Used to place lines of text with a leader line and arrow, or a callout without a leader.



Place Note tool in Place Note mode

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

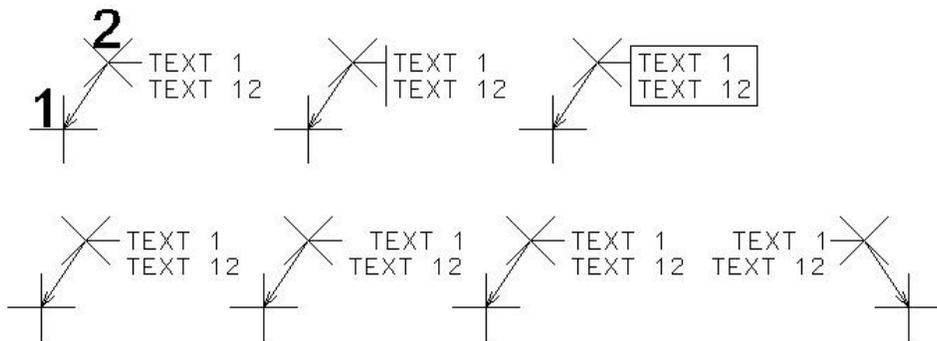
Tool Settings	Effect
Place Note	Sets the tool mode to Place Note. Used to place lines of text with a leader line and arrow, as a dimension element.
Place Callout	Sets the tool mode to Place Callout. Used to place lines of text with a callout, as a dimension element.
Text Style	(NOTE: This option does NOT apply for MoDOT because there are no defined text styles).
Dimension Style	(NOTE: This option does NOT apply for MoDOT because there are no defined dimension styles).
Text Rotation	Sets the rotation of the text relative to the leader line: Horizontal, Vertical, or In Line. The default is value is set by the dimension style (Text category).
Text Frame	Sets the type of frame (if any) — None, Line, Box, Rotated Box, Circle, Capsule, Hexagon, Rotated Hexagon, Triangle, Pentagon, or Octagonal. The default is value is set by the dimension style (Text category).
Height	Sets the text height, in working units. The default is value is set by the text style.
Width	Sets the text width, in working units. The default is value is set by the text style.
Annotation Scale Lock icon	(We do not use Annotation Scale at MoDOT).
Apply changes to all text (Only functional in Word Processor Mode)	If on, applies style changes to all text in the Text Editor window. For example, if you key in text in the Text Editor, then click the Bold icon, all text becomes bold. If off, applies style changes to selected text in the Text Editor window, or to new text. For example, if you key in text in the Text Editor, then click the Bold icon, only selected text becomes bold. Any new text will also be bold.
Location	Determines whether the leader line can be placed with multiple segments. Manual, you can place multiple segments. Automatic, you can only place one segment of a leader line. The default setting is set by the dimension style (Placement category).
Leader Type	Sets the type of leader: Line or Curve.
Start At	Controls how the note is placed: Terminator — If selected, the first data point that you enter places the end of the terminator, and the last data point places the text. Text — If selected, the first data point that you enter places the text, and the last data point places the end of the terminator. You can place multiple leaders on a single piece of text by holding the <Ctrl> key down. Each data point you select (after the first data point), places an additional leader on the text.
Horizontal Attachment	Sets the leader attachment side: Auto, Left or Right.
In-line Leader	If on, uses an in-line leader. The in-line leader is an extra segment of the leader that aligned with the text. Turning this off and setting Start At to Text enables a note to be placed without a leader.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

Association	<p>If on, snapping to the element being dimensioned causes an association point to be created.</p> <p>If off, no associations are created.</p> <p>Association is active only when the Association lock is on.</p>
-------------	---

### To place a note:

1. Select the Place Note tool.  
The Text Editor window opens if it is not already open.
2. Type the text in the Text Editor window.  
If there is no text in the Text Editor window, only the leader line and arrow are placed.
3. Enter a data point to position the terminator arrowhead.
4. Enter a data point.  
If Location (Dimension Settings dialog box) is set to Automatic or Semi-Automatic, this data point indicates the location of the end of the leader line and text, and ends the note.  
If Location is set to Manual, you can enter more data points to define additional vertices of the leader line. Reset to end the note.

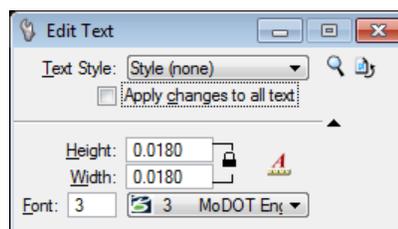


*Place Note. Top row, from left: Text Frame set to None, Line, Box. Bottom row: from left: Text Frame set to None and Justification set to Left, Right, Dynamic with data points resulting in left-justified text, Dynamic with data points resulting in right-justified text.*

## 12.6 Edit Text



Used to edit text in a text or dimension element to replace, add, or delete characters. Text Justification is preserved if the text is lengthened or shortened.



## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

Tool Settings	Effect
Text Style	(Text Editor Style preference set to Word Processor) Sets the current text style from a list of all available text styles. To create a new text style, click the Magnifying Glass icon next to the Text Style option list to open the Text Styles dialog.
Magnifying Glass icon	(Text Editor Style preference set to Word Processor) Opens the Text Styles dialog which is used to create and modify text styles.
Reset Style	Removes text style override(s) and resets the style to its previously saved version.
Apply changes to all text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If on, applies style changes to all text in the Text Editor window. For example, if you key in text in the Text Editor, then click the Bold icon, all text becomes bold.</li> <li>• If off, applies style changes to selected text in the Text Editor window, or to new text. For example, if you key in text in the Text Editor, then click the Bold icon, only selected text becomes bold. Any new text will also be bold.</li> </ul>
Height	(Text Editor Style preference set to Word Processor) Sets the text height, in working units.
Width	(Text Editor Style preference set to Word Processor) Sets the text width, in working units
Annotation Scale Lock icon	Sets the Annotation Scale Lock. When this lock is on, the annotation scale is applied to any text that is placed in the model. The annotation scale is set in the Model Properties dialog. It defines the scale for text and dimensioning in the model.
Font	(Text Editor Style preference set to Word Processor) Sets the Active Font.

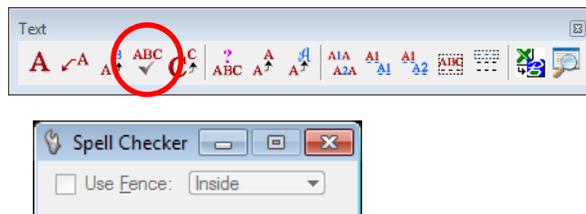
### To edit text:

1. Select the **Edit Text** tool.
  2. Identify the text.  
The Text Editor window opens, with the text already highlighted.
  3. In the Text Editor window, make the desired changes to the text. To start a new text line while typing in the edit field, press <Enter>.
  4. To accept the changes, enter a data point in a view.  
or  
Identify another text element in the design.
- Double-clicking a text element with the Element Selection tool pointer activates the Edit Text tool and opens the Text Editor window.
  - If the Text Editor Style preference (Workspace > Preferences, Text category) is set to Dialog Box, you must first accept the identified text (step 2) before it will display in the Text Editor window.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

- If the Text Editor Style preference is set to Dialog Box, to apply the changes (step 4), click Apply or press <alt-A>.
- A single-line text element is changed to a text node if a line is added to it.
- The procedure for editing dimension text differs from that for editing regular text in the following ways:
  - (Step 2) If the Text Editor Style preference is set to Dialog Box, a special dialog, the Dimension Text dialog opens for editing the text.
  - (Step 3) All text that is generated from the geometry of the dimension element is marked in the editor by asterisks (\*). All text that was previously edited displays in the fields.
  - Text placed before or after the asterisk precedes or follows the text that is generated from the dimension's geometry.
  - If the asterisk is deleted or replaced, then the text displayed in the dimension element is whatever is keyed in the field.
  - (Step 4) If using the Dimension Text dialog, to apply the changes, click OK.
- Dragging the handle of a selected text element with the Element Selection tool pointer modifies the text:
  - To change the aspect ratio of the area in which the text resides, drag a corner handle. This may cause the text to rewrap; the text need not have been placed using the Word Wrap method for rewrapping to occur.
  - To scale the text, drag either the top, bottom, left, or right handle.

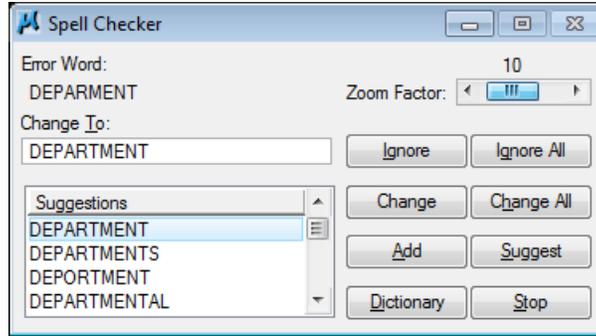
## 12.7 Spell Checker



Used to review text, text nodes, tags, dimensions, notes and symbols for spelling errors.

For every unrecognized word, *Spell Checker* offers a list of suggestions. You can choose to change the flagged word with one of the suggested words, or to leave it as is by clicking the Ignore button. If you want *Spell Checker* to automatically ignore certain words that it normally might flag, such as a product's name or an abbreviation, you can add them to a special user dictionary.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes



Tool Settings	Effect
Use Fence	If on, the fence contents are checked for spelling errors. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode

### ***To search for and correct spelling errors in an entire file:***

1. Select the Spell Checker tool.  
Identify element or accept to scan whole file displays in the status bar.
2. Click on an empty area in the design file to scan the entire file.  
If there are no misspelled or unrecognized words in the selected text, the status bar displays the message, "Spelling Check Complete." If there are misspelled or unrecognized words, the erroneous text zooms in and the Spell Checker dialog opens with the flagged word highlighted in the Not in dictionary field, and the first word from the Suggestions list box displayed in the Change to field.
3. If you are satisfied with the word in the Change to field, click Change.  
or  
Make another selection from the Suggestions list box and click Change.  
or  
Type a new word in the Change to field and click Change.  
The text from the Change to field replaces the highlighted text, and the search advances to the next unrecognized word in the Not in dictionary field. After the last flagged word is modified, replaced or skipped, the Spell Checker dialog closes, and any changes made to the selected text are updated in the design file.

### ***To search for and correct spelling errors in a text element, text node, tag, dimension, note or symbol***

1. Select the Spell Checker tool.
2. Identify a text element, text node, tag, dimension, note or symbol.
3. Accept the selected text.  
If there are no misspelled or unrecognized words in the selected text, the status bar displays the message, "Spelling Check Complete." If there are misspelled or unrecognized words, the erroneous text zooms in and the Spell Checker dialog opens with the flagged word highlighted in the Not in dictionary field, and the first word from the Suggestions list box displayed in the Change to field.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

4. If you are satisfied with the word in the Change to field, click Change.  
or  
Make another selection from the Suggestions list box and click Change.  
or  
Type a new word in the Change to field and click Change.  
The text from the Change to field replaces the highlighted text, and the search advances to the next unrecognized word in the Not in dictionary field. After the last flagged word is modified, replaced or skipped, the Spell Checker dialog closes, and any changes made to the selected text are updated in the design file.
- If more than one word in a text node is flagged, the text node is not updated (in the design file) until the last flagged word in it is modified, replaced or skipped.

### ***To search for and correct spelling errors in a selection set***

1. Create a selection set.  
or  
From the Edit menu, choose Select All.
2. Select the Spell Checker tool.
3. Accept the selection set.  
If there are no misspelled or unrecognized words in the selection set, the status bar displays the message, "Spelling Check Complete." If there are misspelled or unrecognized words, the erroneous text zooms in and the Spell Checker dialog opens with the flagged word highlighted in the Not in dictionary field, and the first word from the Suggestions list box displayed in the Change to field.
4. If you are satisfied with the word in the Change to field, click Change.  
or  
Make another selection from the Suggestions list box and click Change.  
or  
Type a new word in the Change to field and click Change.  
The text in the Change to field replaces the flagged word in the design file, and the search advances to the next unrecognized word in the selection set. After the last flagged word in the selection set is modified, replaced or skipped, the Spell Checker dialog closes.

### ***To search for and correct spelling errors within a fence contents***

1. Place a fence.
2. Select the Spell Checker tool.
3. From the Spell Checker tool settings window, turn on Use Fence, and select a Fence Mode (Inside, Overlap, Clip, Void, Void Overlap or Void Clip).

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

4. Accept the fence contents.  
If there are no misspelled or unrecognized words in the selection set, the status bar displays the message, "Spelling Check Complete." If there are misspelled or unrecognized words, the erroneous text zooms in and the Spell Checker dialog opens with the flagged word highlighted in the Not in dictionary field, and the first word from the Suggestions list box displayed in the Change to field.
5. If you are satisfied with the word in the Change to field, click Change.  
or  
Make another selection from the Suggestions list box and click Change.  
or  
Type a new word in the Change to field and click Change.  
The text in the Change to field replaces the flagged word in the design file, and the search advances to the next unrecognized word in the selection set. After the last flagged word in the selection set is modified, replaced or skipped, the Spell Checker dialog closes.

### ***To search for and correct spelling errors before placing text in a design file***

1. Select the Place Text tool.
2. In the Text Editor window, type the text you want to place in the design file.
3. Click the Spelling button.  

4. If there are no misspelled or unrecognized words in the selected text, the status bar displays the message, "Spelling Check Complete." If there are misspelled or unrecognized words, the erroneous text zooms in and the Spell Checker dialog opens with the flagged word highlighted in the Not in dictionary field, and the first word from the Suggestions list box displayed in the Change to field.
5. If you are satisfied with the word in the Change to field, click Change.  
or  
Make another selection from the Suggestions list box and click Change.  
or  
Type a new word in the Change to field and click Change.  
The text from the Change to field replaces the highlighted text, and the search advances to the next unrecognized word in the Not in dictionary field. After the last flagged word is modified, replaced or skipped, the Spell Checker dialog closes, and any changes made are then reflected in the Text Editor window.

### ***To add the currently flagged word to the user dictionary***

You will not be able to add words to the standard MoDOT dictionary. If there is a word that needs to be added, contact CADD Support for assistance.

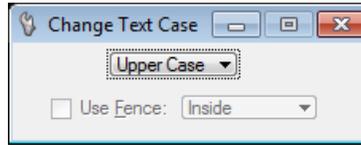
### ***To delete a word from the user dictionary***

You will not be able to delete words to the standard MoDOT dictionary. If there is a word that needs to be removed, contact CADD Support for assistance.

## 12.8 Case Change



Used to change the case of a piece of text.



Tool Settings	Effect
Case	<p>Sets the change case mode to Upper Case, Lower Case, Title Case, or First Capital.</p> <p>Upper Case and Lower Case each converts all characters to the selected option. Title Case capitalizes the first letter of each word and the remaining letters are lower case. Title Case ignores words that consist of all upper case letters. To change all upper case text to Title Case, first convert to Lower Case and then to Title Case.</p> <p>First Capital capitalizes the first letter of the first word of the selected text and ignores all other characters. To change text with arbitrary capitalization to First Capital, first convert to Lower Case and then to First Capital.</p>
Use Fence	If on, the case of the fence contents is changed. The list sets the Fence Mode.

### To change the case of text

1. Select the Change Text Case tool.
  2. Select the case from the list.
  3. Select the text to change.
- This tool also works directly on selection sets. If you select text elements before starting the Change Text Case tool, simply start the tool and enter a data button instead of picking the elements after the tool has started.

### To change the case of text with a fence

1. Place a fence around the text.
2. Select the Change Text Case tool.
3. Select the case from the list.
4. Turn on Use Fence and select a Fence Mode.
5. Enter a data button to modify all text matching the fence.

## 12.9 Display Text Attributes



Used to display the attributes of a text or multi-line text node element.

### To display attributes of a text element

1. Select the Display Text Attributes tool.
2. Identify the text or text node element.

Type	These display in the status bar
Text	Height (TH), Width (TW), Level (LV), and Font name (FT).
Text node	Node number (NN), Line Length (LL), Line Spacing (LS), Level (LV), and Font name (FT).

3. If the element is a text node, identify it again to display the text Height, Width, Level, and Font name.

## 12.10 Match Text Attributes



Used to set the active text settings (such as Justification, Font, Line Spacing Type, Underline, Slant Angle, and Inter Character Spacing) the same as the corresponding attributes of text in the design.

Tool Settings	Effect
Match Annotation Scale	If on, the annotation scale for the model is matched to that of the selected text element, and Annotation Scale lock is enabled.

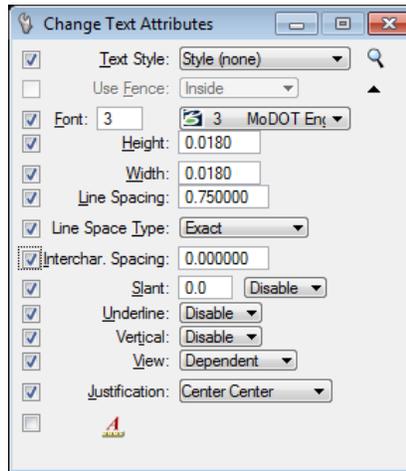
### To match the active text settings to the attributes of a text element

1. In the Text toolbox, select the Match Text Attributes tool.
2. Identify the previously placed text element.
3. Accept the match.
4. Identify a previously placed text element with a data point.
5. To accept the match, enter another data point.

## 12.11 Change Text Attributes



Used to change selected text-specific element attributes of a text or tag element(s). Tool settings controls are used to specify the new attribute settings. The controls are similar to those in the Text Styles dialog box (Element menu > Text Styles) and, as do the controls in the Text Styles dialog box, change the active text attributes.



Tool Setting	Effect
Text Style	Sets the current text style from a list of all available text styles.
Magnifying Glass icon	Opens the Text Styles dialog box that is used to create and modify text styles.
Use Fence	If on, the selected attributes of the fence contents are changed.
Font	If on, sets and changes element(s) to active Font.
Height	If on, sets and changes element(s) to active Text Height.
Width	If on, sets and changes element(s) to active Text Width.
Line Spacing	If on, sets and changes element(s) to active Line Spacing.
Interchar(acter) Spacing	If on, sets and changes element(s) to active Intercharacter Spacing setting.
Slant	If on, sets and changes element(s) to active Slant setting.
Line Length	If on, sets length of the text line for the text editor.
Underline	If on, sets and changes element(s) to active Underline setting — choose Enable (on) or Disable (off).
Vertical	If on, sets and changes element(s) to active Vertical Text setting — choose Enable (on) or Disable (off).
View	If on, determines the effect of rotating the view on the orientation of the text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dependent — Rotating the view will rotate the text.</li> <li>• Independent — Text will stay at the same orientation regardless of the view rotation.</li> </ul>
Justification	If on, sets and changes element(s) to active Text Justification.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### *To change a text or tag element's attributes (those that are set to On)*

1. Select or fence the text or tag element(s).
2. Select the Change Text Attributes tool.
3. Accept the change.

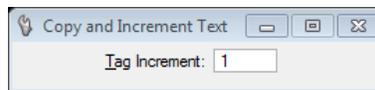
### *Alternative Method — To change a text or tag element's attributes (those that are set to On)*

1. Select the Change Text Attributes tool.
2. Identify the text or tag element.
3. Accept the change

## 12.12 Copy and Increment Text



Used to copy and increment a text element that contains numbers.



Tool Setting	Effect
Tag Increment	The amount by which the numeric part of the text element is increased (can be any integer between -32768 and 32767, inclusive). Can also be set by keying in TI=<value>.

### *To copy and increment text*

1. Select the Copy and Increment Text tool.
2. Identify the text element to copy and increment.
3. Enter a data point to position the copied and incremented text.
4. Continue entering data points to place other copied and incremented text.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes



Copy and Increment Text with Tag Increment set to 10

### 12.13 Copy Enter Data Field



Used to copy the contents of one enter data field to another. If the source field is longer than the destination field, the copied text is truncated. The target field justification (left, center, or right) determines the text positioning within the field.

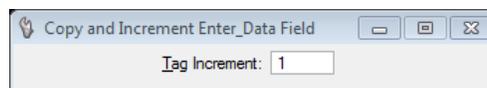
#### *To copy an enter data field*

1. Select the Copy Enter Data Field tool.
2. Identify the source enter data field.  
A rectangle displays around the enter data field.
3. Identify the destination enter data field.
4. Reset to stop copying the enter data field.  
or  
Return to step 3 to continue to make more copies of the same enter data field.

### 12.14 Copy and Increment Enter Data Field



Used to copy and increment the contents of an enter data field that contains numbers into another enter data field.

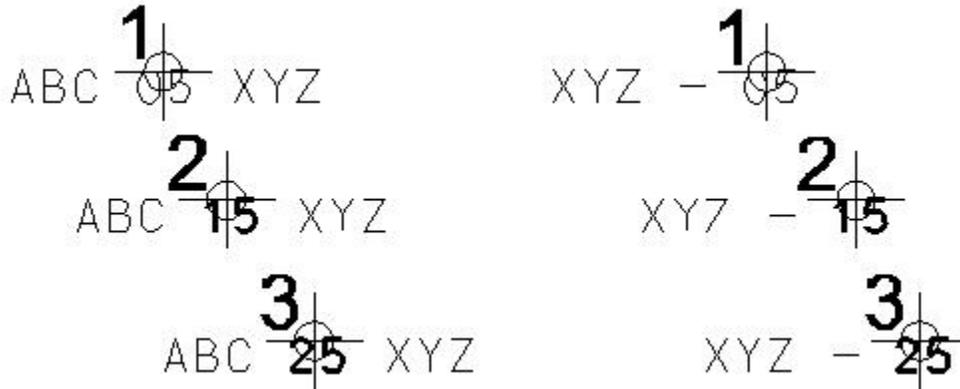


Tool Setting	Effect
Tag Increment	The amount by which the numeric part of the text element is increased (can be any integer between -32768 and 32767, inclusive). Can also be set by keying in TI=<value>.

## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### *To copy and increment an enter data field*

1. Select the Copy and Increment Enter Data Field tool.
2. Identify the enter data field to copy and increment.
3. Identify the enter data field(s) in which to place the incremented copy(s).

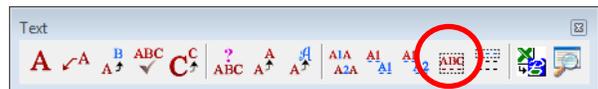


*Copy and Increment Enter Data Field with Tag Increment of 10.*

Identify the enter data field to copy (1) and then the enter data fields in which to place the incremented copies (2 and 3).

- To copy and increment a text element that contains numbers, use the Copy and Increment Text tool.

### 12.15 Fill Single Enter Data Field



Used to fill in or change an enter data field. The field's justification (left, center, or right) determines the text position in the field.

### *To fill in an enter data field*

1. Select the Fill In Single Enter Data Field tool.
  2. Identify the enter data field. A rectangle is drawn around the enter data field and the field contents display.  
The Text Editor window opens if it is not already open.
  3. In the Text Editor window, key in the new contents for the enter data field.
  4. Press <Enter> and the previous field contents are replaced
- Values longer than the enter data field length are truncated. To change the length of an enter data field, use the Edit Text tool.

### 12.16 Automatic Fill Enter Data Fields



Used to fill in all empty enter data fields in a view. The field justification (left, center, or right) determines the text positioning within the field.

#### *To automatically fill in enter data fields*

1. Select the Automatic Fill In Enter Data Fields tool.
2. Select the desired view.  
The first blank enter data field is located and a rectangle displays around it.  
The Text Editor window opens if it is not already open.
3. In the Text Editor window, key in the new contents for the enter data field.  
or  
Enter a data point to skip the enter data field and locate the next one.
4. Press <Enter> to replace the previous contents and advance automatically to the next enter data field.  
Enter data fields are located in the order in which they were created.
5. When all fields have been filled in or skipped, go back to step 2 to fill in the enter data fields in another view.

### 12.17 Excel To MicroStation (Quantab)



The next to last tool icon on the Text toolbar activates the MicroStation portion of the Quantab application. Quantab is an application that allows MoDOT's MicroStation users to transfer information that is input within a specific template in Microsoft's Excel spreadsheet program over into MicroStation. This provides users with a tool so that they can use Excel to build quantity boxes or other information boxes and take advantage of how easy it is to input text as well as its ability to perform calculations then simply transfer this information directly into MicroStation with all text and geometry conforming to MoDOT standards.

For additional information on Quantab, including full instructions on usage, see CADD Support's intranet page.



## MicroStation V8i - Text and Notes

### ***Whole Words***

If on, specifies a search for only complete words that match the text element in the Find field. For example, when Whole Words is on, a search for "fill" will not find "filled" or "fillet." Each instance of the search string must be surrounded by a blank space on each side.

### ***Use Regular Expressions***

Regular expressions consist of patterns that can be used to search for variable forms of text. If on, treats the search string as a regular expression for special characters and advanced search patterns.

### ***In Cells***

If on, specifies a search for text in cells, as well as standalone text.

### ***Use Fence***

If on, specifies a search for text in a fence. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode

### ***Animate***

If on, shows the transition from the current view to the destination. You are automatically panned and zoomed to the text so that you can see it in context.

### ***Rotate***

If on, the view rotates so that the text displays horizontally.

### ***Zoom***

If on, view zooms to the specified text (and activates the slider). When the slider is set to the right end (smaller zoom factor), the result is greater zooming (text appears larger).

### ***Find***

Locates the next instance of the text.

### ***Replace***

Replaces the found text in the currently highlighted element with the replacement string.

### ***Replace All***

Replaces all the specified text elements in the design file.

### ***Pick***

Launches a tool that allows you to pick individual elements and to do the replace operation immediately upon picking.

# Measuring Elements & Shapes

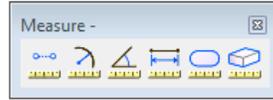
## Section 13

<b>13.0</b>	<b>Measure tool box</b>	<b>Page 1300</b>
<b>13.1</b>	<b>Measure Distance</b>	<b>Page 1301-1303</b>
<b>13.2</b>	<b>Measure Radius</b>	<b>Page 1303-1304</b>
<b>13.3</b>	<b>Measure Angle between Lines</b>	<b>Page 1304</b>
<b>13.4</b>	<b>Measure Length</b>	<b>Page 1305-1306</b>
<b>13.5</b>	<b>Measure Area</b>	<b>Page 1306-1309</b>



## MicroStation V8i – Measuring Elements & Shapes

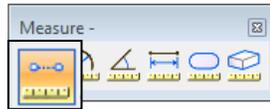
### 13.0 Measure tool box



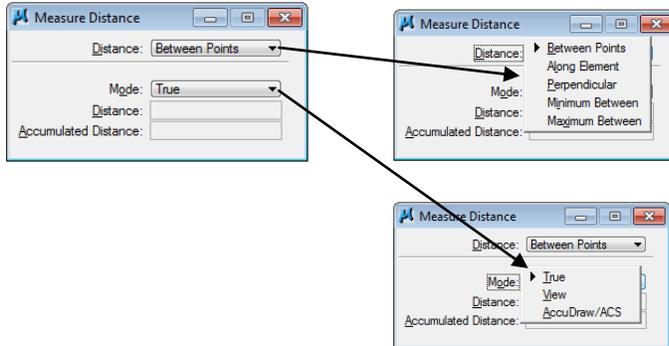
The tools in the Measure toolbox are used to perform measuring operations.

To	Select in the Measure toolbox
Measure the distance(s) along an element. or Measure the cumulative distance from a data point. or Measure the perpendicular distance between an element and a data point. or Measure the minimum distance between two elements.	 <i>Measure Distance</i>
Measure the radius of a circle, circular arc, cone, or cylinder, or the axes of an ellipse or elliptical arc.	 <i>Measure Radius</i>
Measure the angle between two lines.	 <i>Measure Angle Between Lines</i>
Measure the length of an element.	 <i>Measure Length</i>
Measure the area and perimeter of a shape, ellipse, or complex shape and to analyze mass properties.	 <i>Measure Area</i>
Measure the volume enclosed by an element or a set of elements and to analyze mass properties.	 <i>Measure Volume</i>

### 13.1 Measure Distance



Used to measure distance (I'll bet you saw that one coming).



Tool Settings	Effect
Distance	<p>Sets the method of distance measuring.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Between Points — Measures the cumulative distance from an origin.</li> <li>• Along Element — Measures along an element from an origin.</li> <li>• Perpendicular — Measures the perpendicular distance between an element and a data point.</li> <li>• Minimum Between — Measures the minimum distance between two elements.</li> <li>• Maximum Between — Measures the maximum distance between two elements.</li> </ul>
Mode	<p>Sets how measurements for distances are calculated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• True — Measures the true distances in 3D, taking into account the depth component in the view.</li> <li>• View — Measures distances between projections of the elements on to the view plane (no allowance for the depth component).</li> <li>• AccuDraw/ACS — Measures distances between projections of the elements on to the AccuDraw drawing plane, or on to the active ACS.</li> </ul>
Distance	Displays the result of the last measurement.
Accumulated Distance	(Distance set to Between Points only) Displays the total distance measured.
Segment Only	(Distance set to Perpendicular only) If on, the measurement is constrained to be perpendicular to the selected segment of the element, or the projection of the segment. If off, the perpendicular measurement is taken from the nearest segment of the selected element.

## MicroStation V8i – Measuring Elements & Shapes

### To measure the cumulative distance from an origin

- 1) Select the *Measure Distance* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Distance to Between Points.
- 3) Enter a data point to identify the origin (the point from which to measure).
- 4) Enter a second data point.  
The Distance and Accumulated Distance fields display the same distance.
- 5) Enter another data point(s). The cumulative distance from the origin is displayed in the Accumulated Distance field, while the Distance field displays the distance between the last two data points.  
or  
Reset to return to step 3.

### To measure the distance along an element

- 1) Select the *Measure Distance* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Distance to Along Element.
- 3) Identify the element at the origin (the point from which to measure).
- 4) Enter a data point to define a point along the element. The distance from the origin along the element is displayed in the status bar.  
If the element is closed, this data point defines the direction (clockwise or counterclockwise) in which measurements are made.
- 5) Enter a data point(s). The distance along the element from the origin is displayed in the Distance field.  
or  
Reset to return to step 3.

### To measure perpendicular distance from an element

- 1) Select the *Measure Distance* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Distance to Perpendicular.
- 3) Turn off Segment Only.
- 4) Identify the element.
- 5) Enter a data point.  
The perpendicular distance between the nearest part of the element and this point is displayed in the Distance field. A temporary "line" is displayed as a visual aid but is not placed in the design.
- 6) Enter another data point(s) to define other perpendicular measurements.  
or  
Reset to return to step 4.

## MicroStation V8i – Measuring Elements & Shapes

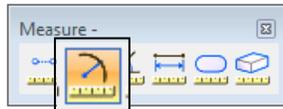
### To measure perpendicular distance from a segment of an element

- 1) Select the *Measure Distance* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Distance to Perpendicular.
- 3) Turn on Segment Only.
- 4) Identify the element at the segment that is to be used.
- 5) Enter a data point.  
The perpendicular distance between the element and this point are displayed in the Distance field. A temporary “line” is displayed as a visual aid but is not placed in the design. If the data point is not within the limits of the selected segment, then the projection of the segment is used.
- 6) Enter another data point(s) to define other perpendicular measurements.  
or  
Reset to return to step 4.  
If the element is a line string, shape, curve, complex chain, or complex shape, the distance is measured perpendicular to the segment identified in step 3.

### To measure the minimum distance between elements

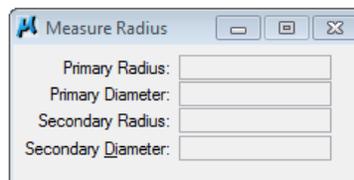
- 1) Select the *Measure Distance* tool.
  - 2) In the tool settings window, set Distance to Minimum Between.
  - 3) Identify the first element.
  - 4) Identify the second element.
  - 5) Accept the elements.  
The minimum distance between the elements is displayed in the Distance field. A temporary “line” is displayed as a visual aid but is not placed in the design.
- To construct a minimum distance line between two elements, use the Construct Minimum Distance Line tool in the Linear Elements toolbox.

## 13.2 Measure Radius



Used to measure:

- The radius of a circle or circular arc.
- The radius of a cone or cylinder.
- The primary and secondary axes of an ellipse or elliptical arc.
- The radius of a circular segment or axes of an elliptical segment of a complex chain or complex shape



## MicroStation V8i – Measuring Elements & Shapes

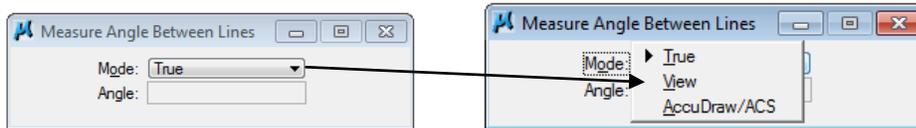
### To measure an element's radius

- 1) Select the *Measure Radius* tool.
  - 2) Identify the element or segment.
  - 3) Accept the element.  
The measurement displays in the status bar.
- To dimension an element's radius, use the Element Dimensioning tool.

## 13.3 Measure Angle between Lines



Used to measure the angle between two lines or segments of a line string, shape, or multi-line. If the identified lines do not intersect, an intersection point is computed to serve as the vertex of the measured angle.

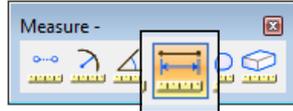


Tool Settings	Effect
Mode	Sets how measurements for the angle are calculated. Options are True, View, and AccuDraw/ACS.
Angle	Displays the result of the angle measured.

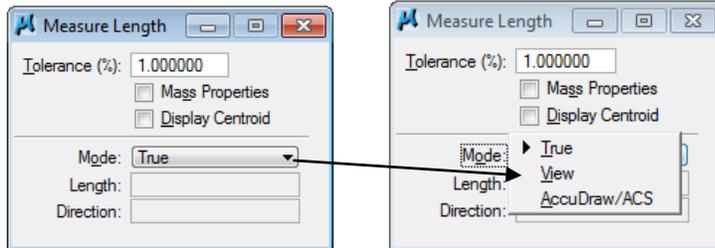
### To measure the angle between two lines

- 1) Select the Measure Angle Between Lines tool.
- 2) Identify the first line.
- 3) Identify the second line.
- 4) Accept the lines.  
The angle measurement is displayed in the status bar.

### 13.4 Measure Length



Used to measure the length of an element(s) and to analyze mass properties. For a closed element or a surface, the length of the perimeter or wireframe geometry is measured.



Tool Settings	Effect
Tolerance (%)	When measuring curves, the maximum percentage of the distance between the true curve and the approximation used to measure. A low Tolerance makes the measurement more accurate but increases calculation time.
Mass Properties	If on, the Mass Properties window displays the mass property analysis.
Display Centroid	If on, a graphic crosshair that represents the center of mass for the measured element(s) is displayed.
Mode	Sets how measurements for the length are calculated. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• True — Measures the true distances in 3D, taking into account the depth component in the view.</li> <li>• View — Measures distances between projections of the elements on to the view plane (no allowance for the depth component).</li> <li>• AccuDraw/ACS — Measures distances between projections of the elements on to the AccuDraw drawing plane, or on to the active ACS.</li> </ul>
Length	Displays the result of the last length measured.
Angle Of Line	Displays the result of the last angle measured.

#### To measure the length of an element

- 1) Select the element.
- 2) Select the *Measure Length* tool.  
The length displays in the status bar. If Mass Properties is on, the mass properties are displayed in the Mass Properties window.

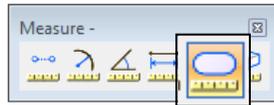
## MicroStation V8i – Measuring Elements & Shapes

### Alternative Method — To measure the length of an element(s)

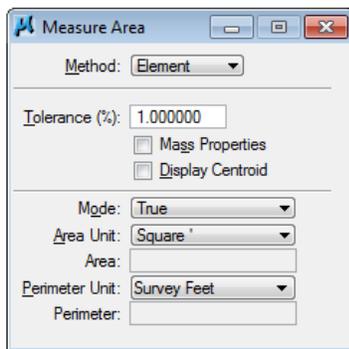
- 1) Select the *Measure Length* tool.
- 2) Identify the element.
- 3) Accept the element.

The length displays in the status bar. If Mass Properties is on, the mass properties analysis is displayed in the Mass Properties window.

## 13.5 Measure Area



Used to measure area and perimeter.



Tool Settings	Effect
Method	<p>Sets the area that is measured.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Element — Area of one closed element (its Area attribute must be Solid).</li> <li>• Fence — (Fence present only) Area enclosed by the active fence, other than a named fence, or a fence created from an element.</li> <li>• Intersection — Area bounded by the intersection of two or more closed planar elements.</li> <li>• Where more than two elements are involved, use &lt;Ctrl-data point&gt; to select the extra elements.</li> <li>• Union — Area bounded by the union of two or more closed planar elements.</li> <li>• Where more than two elements are involved, use &lt;Ctrl-data point&gt; to select the extra elements.</li> <li>• Difference — Area bounded by the difference between two or more closed planar elements.</li> <li>• Where more than two elements are involved, use &lt;Ctrl-data point&gt; to select the extra elements.</li> <li>• Flood — Area enclosed by elements that either touch one another or whose endpoints fall within the Maximum Gap.</li> <li>• Points — Planar area with its vertices defined by a series of data points. Where the points are input in a figure 8 type shape, then the total area of the two loops is calculated.</li> </ul>
Tolerance (%)	<p>For curves, sets the maximum percentage of the distance between the true curve and the approximation used to measure. A low Tolerance makes the measurement more accurate but</p>

## MicroStation V8i – Measuring Elements & Shapes

	increases calculation time.
Mass Properties	If on, the mass property analysis displays in the Mass Properties window.
Display Centroid	If on, a graphic crosshair that represents the measured element's center of mass is displayed.
Mode	<p>Sets how measurements for area are calculated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• True — Measures the true distances in 3D, taking into account the depth component in the view.</li> <li>• View — Measures distances between projections of the elements on to the view plane (no allowance for the depth component).</li> <li>• AccuDraw/ACS — Measures distances between projections of the elements on to the AccuDraw drawing plane, or on to the active ACS.</li> </ul>
Area Unit	<p>Sets the units used to display the last area measured.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• square &lt;master units&gt;</li> <li>• square m — (Metric units only) Square meters.</li> <li>• Acre (US) — (English units only)</li> <li>• Hectare — (Metric units only)</li> </ul>
Area	Displays the result of the last area measured.
Perimeter Unit	Sets the units used to display the perimeter length for the last area measured.
Perimeter	Displays the perimeter length for the last area measured.
Locate Interior Shapes	(Method set to Flood only) If on, the area enclosed by the bounding elements is calculated, minus the area of any closed elements inside the bounding area.
Dynamic Area	(Method set to Flood only) If on, the area to be included displays dynamically as you move the screen pointer over the view.
Max(imum) Gap	(Method set to Flood only) Sets the largest distance allowed between consecutive elements. If zero, the elements must connect to bound an area.

### To measure the area and perimeter of one element

- 1) Use the Element Selection tool to select the element.
- 2) Select the *Measure Area* tool.
- 3) In the tool settings window, set Method to Element.
- 4) Accept the element.  
The element's Surface Area, and Perimeter, are displayed in the tool settings window.

### Alternative Method — To measure the area and perimeter of one element

- 1) Select the *Measure Area* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Method to Element.
- 3) Identify the element.  
The element's Surface Area, and Perimeter, are displayed in the tool settings window.

## MicroStation V8i – Measuring Elements & Shapes

### To measure the area defined by a fence

- 1) Use the Place Fence tool to place a fence.
- 2) Select the *Measure Area* tool.
- 3) In the tool settings window, set Method to Fence.
- 4) Accept the fence contents.  
The fence's Surface Area, and Perimeter, are displayed in the tool settings window.

### To measure the area of the intersection or union of closed elements

- 1) Select the *Measure Area* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Method to Intersection or Union.
- 3) Identify one element.
- 4) Identify another element.  
The resulting area is highlighted.
- 5) (Optional) Use <Ctrl-data point> to select further elements.  
As you identify each successive element, the resulting area is highlighted.  
If the elements do not overlap, the following occurs, depending on the Method:

Method	If elements do not overlap, then
Intersection	"Elements do not intersect" is displayed.
Union	Each element is highlighted.

- 6) After selecting the last element, accept to view the result.  
The results display in the tool settings window. When measuring a union, the Perimeter value does not display if the elements do not overlap. If Mass Properties is on, the mass properties analysis is displayed in the Mass Properties window.

### To measure the area of the difference between elements

- 1) Select the *Measure Area* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Method to Difference.  
If any elements are selected, they are de-selected.
- 3) Identify the element from which to subtract.
- 4) Identify the element to subtract from the element identified in the preceding step.
- 5) (Optional) Use <Ctrl-data point> to select further elements to subtract.
- 6) Accept with a data point.  
The results display in the tool settings window. When measuring a union, the Perimeter value does not display if the elements do not overlap. If Mass Properties is on, the mass properties analysis is displayed in the Mass Properties window.

## MicroStation V8i – Measuring Elements & Shapes

### To measure the area enclosed by elements that touch

- 1) (Optional) Select the elements.
- 2) Select the *Measure Area* tool.
- 3) In the tool settings window, set Method to Flood.
- 4) (Optional) If you want to exclude, from the total measurement, the area of any closed elements inside the selected area, turn on Locate Interior Shapes.
- 5) Enter a data point in the area enclosed by the bounding elements.
- 6) Accept the elements.  
The results display in the tool settings window. If Mass Properties is on, the mass properties analysis is displayed in the Mass Properties window.

### To measure an area defined by data points

- 1) Select the *Measure Area* tool.
- 2) In the tool settings window, set Method to Points.
- 3) Enter a data point to define each vertex of an imaginary shape that encloses the area.  
The imaginary shape is dynamically displayed.
- 4) When done, Reset.  
The results display in the tool settings window. If Mass Properties is on, the mass properties analysis is displayed in the Mass Properties window.

## MicroStation V8i – Measuring Elements & Shapes

# Using References

## Section 14

<b>14.0 Using References</b>	<b>Page 1400</b>
<b>14.1 References tool box</b>	<b>Page 1400-1404</b>
<b>14.2 Attach Reference</b>	<b>Page 1405</b>
<b>14.3 Locating “lost” Attachments</b>	<b>Page 1406-1407</b>
<b>14.4 Identifying Referenced Files</b>	<b>Page 1407</b>
<b>14.5 Set Reference Clip Boundary</b>	<b>Page 1408-1409</b>
<b>14.6 Set Reference Clip Mask</b>	<b>Page 1409</b>
<b>14.7 Delete Reference Clip Mask</b>	<b>Page 1410</b>
<b>14.8 Reload Reference</b>	<b>Page 1411</b>
<b>14.9 Move Reference File</b>	<b>Page 1412</b>
<b>14.10 Copy Reference File</b>	<b>Page 1413-1414</b>
<b>14.11 Scale Reference</b>	<b>Page 1414-1415</b>
<b>14.12 Rotate Reference</b>	<b>Page 1415-1416</b>
<b>14.13 Detach Reference</b>	<b>Page 1417</b>



## 14.0 Using References

Elements in a reference file display as though they are geometry in the active design file. Although you cannot manipulate or delete the elements displayed in a reference file, you can snap to them and even copy them into the active design file.

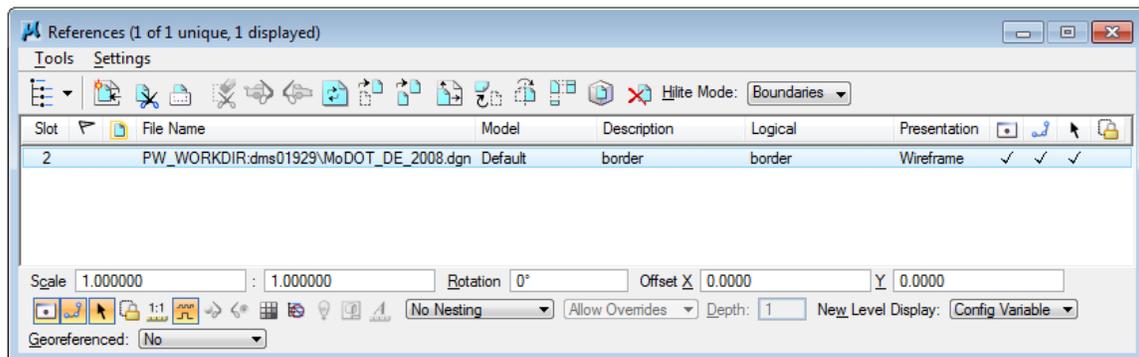
The most common usage of references is in the creation of design compositions. Engineers and other technical professionals use design compositions to communicate through the visual content of their designs.

To create a **design composition** using MicroStation, you build a design file consisting of a working collection of references used in the performance of particular engineering tasks. For example, you may attach as references a collection of survey points as a guide for placement of additional geometry.

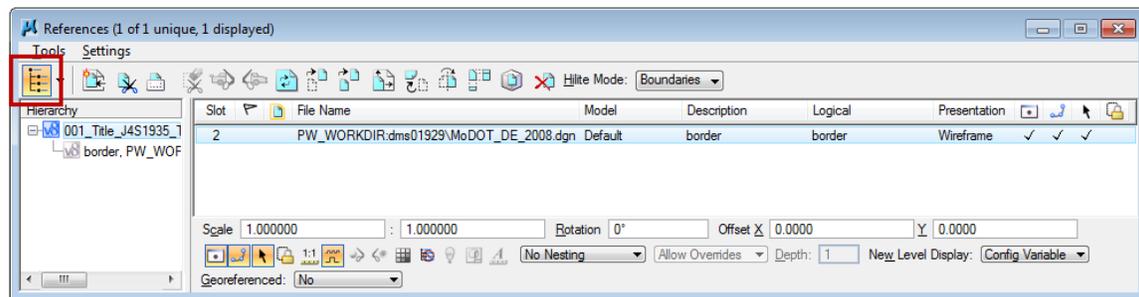
- It is sometimes convenient to refer to one part of a design file while drawing in another area by attaching the active design file to itself.

## 14.1 References dialog box

Used to attach and detach referenced models, adjust reference settings and select reference tools. Opens when the Reference icon is selected in the Primary Tools toolbox or when File > Reference is chosen.



### Show Hierarchy



When on, displays a tree that shows the active file and references that are directly attached to it. References that have other references attached to them (nested references) are listed in black text, and references that do not have attached references are listed in gray text.

## MicroStation V8i – Using References

If a reference in the hierarchy has a nest depth value of 1 or more, you can:

- Click on the (+) sign and expand the hierarchy display.
- Select the reference. When you do this, the References list box updates to include only the references that are attached to the selected reference.

When the tree is turned off, you can use the arrow button next to the Show Hierarchy icon to list the active file and any references that are directly attached to it. As in the tree, if you choose a reference that has attached references, the References list box updates to include only the references that are attached to the selected reference.

### Reference tool box

Contains tools used to:

- Access the References dialog.
- Attach referenced models to the active model.
- Control the positioning, scaling, clipping, and orientation of attached referenced models.
- Detach referenced models from the active model.



These tools can also be selected in these ways:

- From the icons on the References dialog (File > Reference).
- From the Tools menu in the References dialog (File > Reference). The controls in the References dialog are used to adjust reference settings as well.

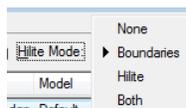
All tools in a toolbox are not always visible by default. To see all tools, right-click in the toolbox and select Show All from the menu.

To	Select in the Reference toolbox
Manage reference attachments using the References dialog. The <i>References</i> tool is also found on the Primary Tools toolbox.	 <i>References</i>
Attach a model (reference) to the active model.	 <i>Attach Reference</i>
Change a reference clipping boundary.	 <i>Set Reference Clip Boundary</i>
Mask (cover) part of a reference that is inside the clipping boundary.	 <i>Set Reference Clip Mask</i>
Selectively delete a reference's clipping mask(s).	 <i>Delete Reference Clip</i>

## MicroStation V8i – Using References

Set the back clipping plane for a 3D reference.	 <i>Set Reference Back Clip Plane</i>
Set the front clipping plane for a 3D reference.	 <i>Set Reference Front Clip Plane</i>
Reread and redraw a reference to see recent changes made to it.	 <i>Reload Reference</i>
Move a reference.	 <i>Move Reference</i>
Copy a reference.	 <i>Copy References</i>
Scale a reference.	 <i>Scale References</i>
Rotate a reference.	 <i>Rotate Reference</i>
Mirror a reference about a horizontal or vertical axis.	 <i>Mirror Reference</i>
Copy a reference, then attach a view of the reference by folding it about an orthogonal axis or a line defined by two points.	 <i>Copy Reference by Folding</i>
Sets the rendering mode of the reference.	 <i>Set Reference Presentation</i>
Detach a reference from the active model.	 <i>Detach Reference</i>

### Hilite Mode

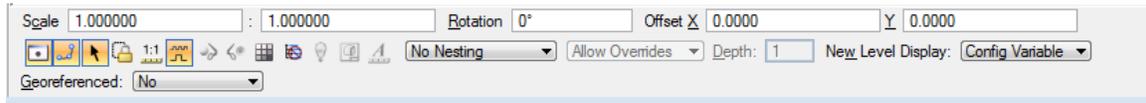


Controls whether the selected references are highlighted and surrounded by a border.

- None — Selected references are not highlighted in any way.
- Boundaries — Places a dashed border around selected references.
- Hilite — Highlights selected references.
- Both — Places a dashed border and highlights selected references.

## MicroStation V8i – Using References

Located along the bottom of the References dialog box are additional icons that control the attachment settings for the different reference files.



Displays and controls settings for a selected reference.

- **Scale** — Displays and sets the ratio of master units in the active model to the master units in the attached model.
- **Rotation** — Displays and sets the rotation for the selected reference. For 2D files, you can enter the rotation angle for the z-axis only. In 3D, you can enter the rotation angles for the x-, y- and z-axes.
- **Offset** — Displays and sets the distance between the global origin of the reference from the global origin of the parent file, measured in units of the parent file. If the parent is 2D, Offset X and Y values are displayed. If the parent is 3D, Offset X, Y, and Z values are displayed.
- **Attachment settings icons** — The information panel icons correspond to columns in the References list box, as well as to icons on the Reference Attachment Settings dialog.

If an icon is pressed, the setting is on. Click the icons to toggle the settings on or off. For more information on an icon, see the description for the corresponding column in the References list box.

If you select multiple references that have different settings, the icons representing different settings are shaded. For example, if one of the selected references has True Scale enabled while the other selected reference has True Scale disabled, the True Scale icon is shaded.

- **Nesting menu** — Displays and sets how nested references (references attached to references) are handled for the selected attachments.
- 

Menu Item	Description
No Nesting	Nested references are ignored for this attachment.
Live Nesting	The hierarchical structure of any nested references are maintained when attaching the reference. The child references are displayed if: the nest Depth is set high enough the child reference does not have its Ignore Attachment When Live Nesting setting turned on All of the nested attachments display in the view window; however you see only the parent reference in the References list box. To see the hierarchy of nested references, use the Show Hierarchy icon on the References dialog.
Copy Attachments	Models that are attached to the attached model are copied (referenced) directly into the active model, which flattens the hierarchical structure of the nested references.

— Note: When working in a DWG or DXF file, live nesting is always on, and there is no limit to nest depth. Therefore the nested attachment and Depth items are disabled. To control the display of nested attachments, use the Ignore Attachment When Live Nesting icon.

## MicroStation V8i – Using References

- Overrides menu — Controls how override settings are saved for nested references. For a specific nested reference, overrides let you control the settings for reference display, locate, snap, raster reference display, and level display.

Menu Item	Description
Allow Overrides	The overrides are automatically created as required when you modify the corresponding settings for nested references. Key-in: reference set nestOverrides=allow
Always Override	Saves the toggle and level display state for every nested attachment. This option locks in the settings for all nested attachments. The settings change only if you specifically change them. Key-in: reference set nestOverrides=always
Never Override	Never creates overrides for any of the nested references. The nested references are displayed the same as they are when the reference is opened as the master file. Key-in: reference set nestOverrides=never

- Depth — Sets the number of levels of nested references that are displayed. Models can have their own referenced models, which, in turn, can have more referenced models, and so on.

If Depth is set to 0, only the selected model is attached to the master model; models referenced to the selected model are ignored.

When working in a DWG or DXF file, live nesting is always on, and there is no limit to nest depth. Therefore the Nested Attachments and Depth items are disabled. To control the display of nested attachments, you must open the reference as the active model, and use the Ignore Attachment When Live Nesting setting for its attachments.

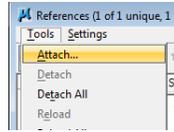
- New Level Display — Specifies whether a reference displays new levels. The setting also applies to new levels in nested references that are attached to the reference.

Menu Item	Description
Config Variable	New levels in the reference are displayed according to the setting for the MS_REF_NEWLEVELDISPLAY configuration variable.
Always	New levels in the reference are always displayed.
Never	New levels in the reference are never displayed.

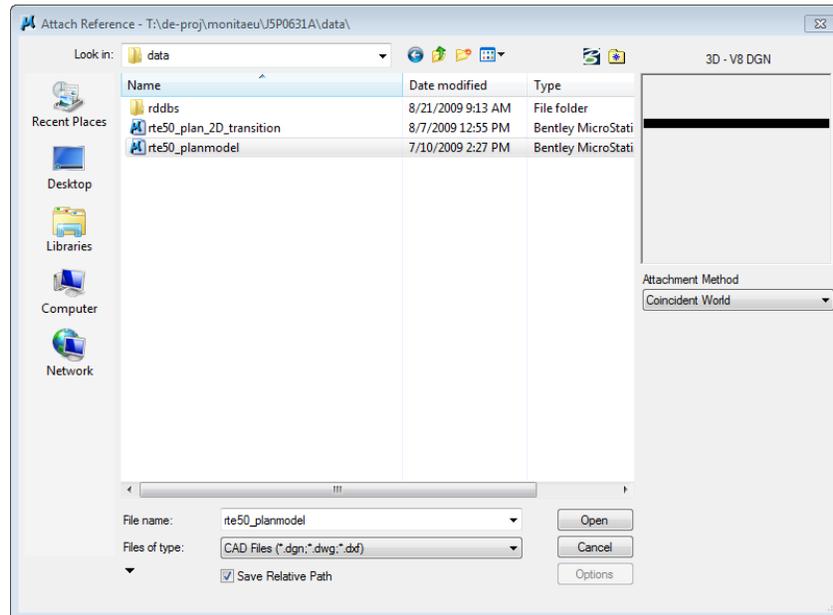
- Georeferenced — Sets the georeference mode. When a reference is attached in Reprojected mode, the current Reference Reprojection Settings are copied into the reference attachment and stored so every user who opens the master file uses the same reprojection settings and thus, gets the same results.
- path — Shows the full specification for the reference, including the directory.
- Right-click menu — Controls the display of items in the information panel.

## MicroStation V8i – Using References

### 14.2 Attach Reference



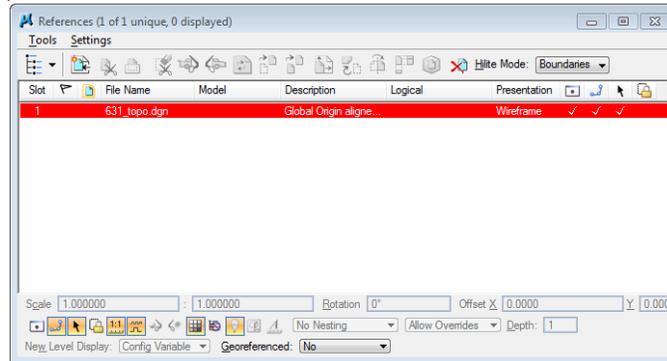
Opens the Attach Reference dialog, which is used to attach one or more models to the active model.



1. In the Primary Tools toolbox, click the References icon.
2. In the References dialog, click the Attach Reference icon.
3. In the Attach Reference dialog, select the DGN file that contains the model to attach as a reference.
4. From the Attachment Method option menu, choose **Coincident World** (Coincident World — Aligns the references with the active model with regard to both Global Origin and design plane coordinates). This is the preferred method at moDOT.
5. Click OK.
6. In the Reference Attachment Settings dialog, adjust settings as required.
7. Make sure “Save Relative Path” is checked (Save Relative Path allows MicroStation to search backwards through the directory structure for reference files).
8. Click OK.

## 14.3 Locating “lost” attachments

If MicroStation cannot locate a reference upon opening a DGN file, the geometry for that file will not be displayed in the active file. Upon opening the Reference dialog box, “lost” reference files will be listed in red instead of the black color that represents a correctly attached file.



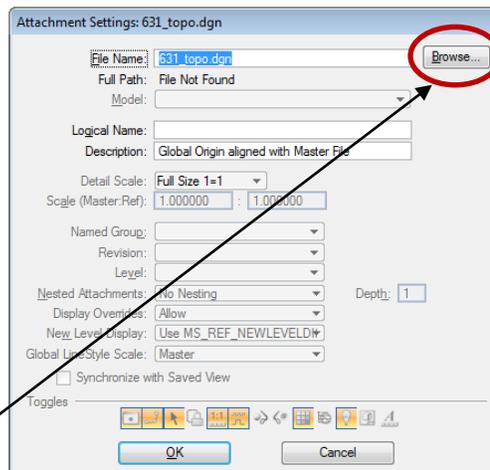
### Reattaching a “lost” file

- 1) Double-click on the listing for the lost reference file within the Reference dialog box.

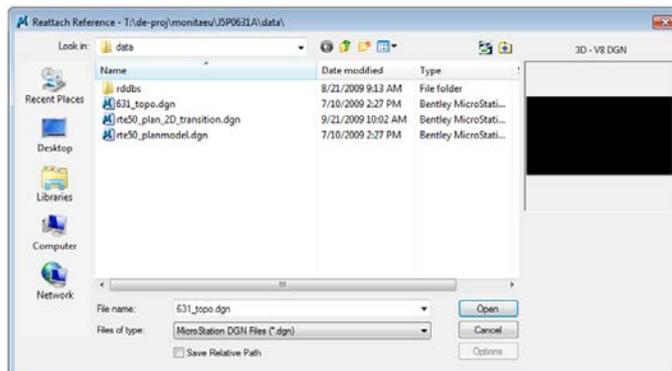
The attachment Settings dialog box appears.

Notice that no path is listed next to the Full Path portion of the dialog. Also make note of the file name that needs to be attached so that this exact file can be located.

- 2) Since the path for this file has been lost, it will need to be located manually. Within the Attachment Settings dialog box click the Browse button.



The Reattach Reference dialog box appears.



## MicroStation V8i – Using References

- 3) The Reattach Reference dialog box will default to the home directory of the active file that you are working in, so you may have to navigate to the directory where the reference file is located.
- 4) Once you are within the correct directory, navigate through the Files listing until you find the correct file name to attach.

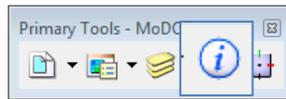
**Be careful you have the correct file name !** MicroStation will attach any file that you specify at this point, so choosing the wrong file will result in geometry that is incorrect for the active file.

If necessary, you can grab the Reattach Reference dialog box by the banner and move it so that you can see the file name in the Attachment Settings dialog box.

- 5) Make sure the Save Relative Path setting is checked in the lower left corner of the dialog box.
- 6) Select the desired file for attachment by highlighting the name in the list and hitting Enter on your keyboard or the OK button on the dialog box, or by double-left-clicking the name within the listing.
- 7) Once the file has been selected from the Reattach Reference dialog box, you will notice that the full path portion of the Attachment Settings dialog box is now populated with the correct directory path and file name. Click the OK button on the Attachment Settings dialog box.

You will notice now that the listing for the reference file is now shown in black and that the geometry for that file is now displayed in the active file.

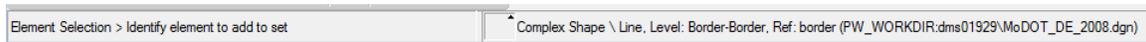
### 14.4 Identifying References



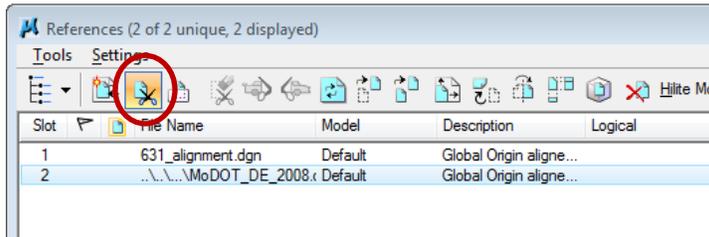
Identifying references on which to operate is an alternative to selecting the reference in the References dialog box's list box; the identification technique is typically used with the tools in the References tool box.

#### To identify a reference

In a view window, identify an element in the reference with a single data point click. The reference information will be displayed with-in the Message Center of the Status bar.



## 14.5 Set Reference Clip Boundary

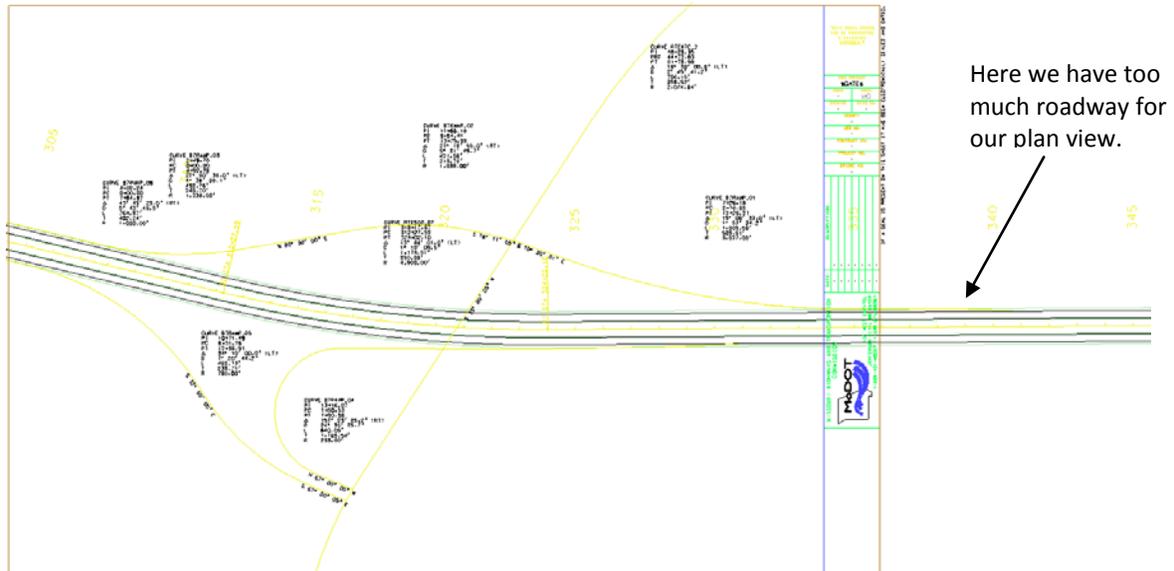


Used to define a reference clipping boundary.



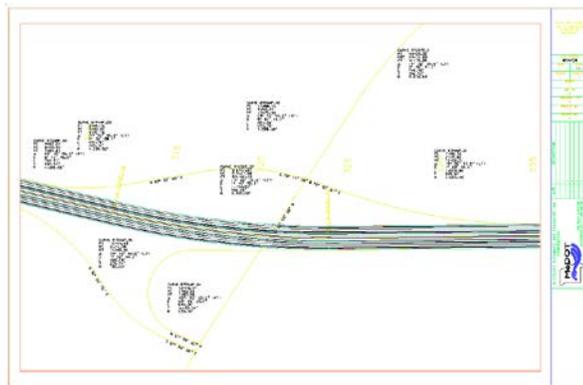
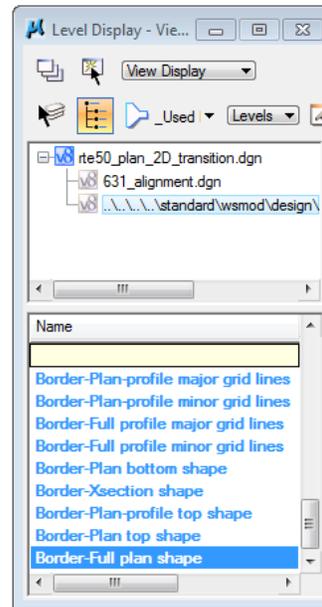
Tool Settings	Effect
Method:	<p>Determines the method by which the reference clip boundary is set.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active Fence — Uses the active fence as the clip boundary.</li> <li>• Element — Uses an element or cell to set the clip boundary.</li> <li>• Named Fence — Uses a named fence to set the clip boundary.</li> </ul>
Discard Existing Clip Masks	If on, deletes existing clip masks before applying a new clipping boundary.
Use Reference Dialog List	If on, the clip boundary applies to the references selected in the References dialog. If off, you are prompted to select the references to be clipped.

For example:



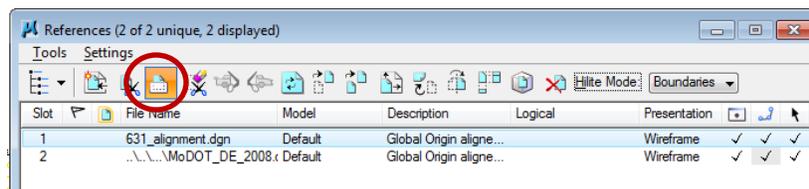
## MicroStation V8i – Using References

Using the Level Display dialog, we can turn on the appropriate level with the element boundary showing the plan view. With this boundary displayed we can place a fence on that element.

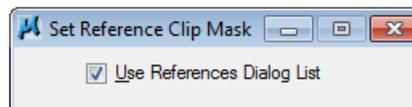


At this point we can choose the Reference Clip Boundary tool to initiate the clip. Now simply left-click in the view to accept the clip. This will clip off the excess roadway.

## 14.6 Set Reference Clip Mask

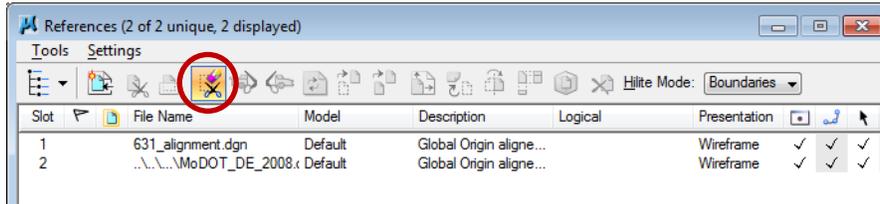


Used to place a reference clipping mask defined by an active fence.



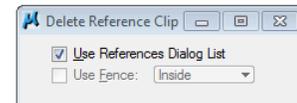
Tool Settings	Effect
Use Reference Dialog List	If on, the clip mask applies to the models selected on the References dialog. If off, you are prompted to select the models to be clipped.

## 14.7 Delete Reference Clip Mask



Used to selectively delete clipping masks or clip boundaries.

Tool Settings	Effect
Use Reference Dialog List	If on, clipping is deleted in the models selected on the References dialog.
Use Fence	If on, the fence contents are deleted from the reference clipping. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode.

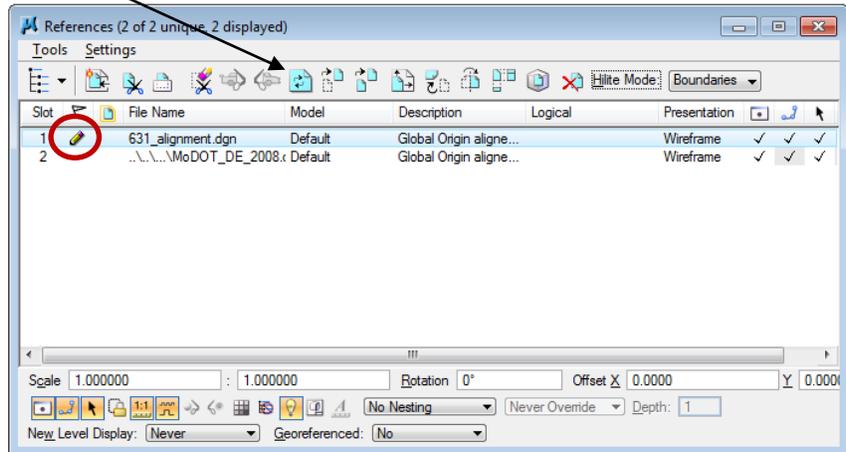


### To selectively delete reference clipping

- 1) In the References dialog, select the references that have clipping to delete.
  - 2) Click the *Delete Clip* icon.  
The Delete Reference Clip tool settings window opens.
  - 3) Turn on Use References Dialog List.  
The clip boundary and any clip masks within the boundary highlight.
  - 4) Identify the clip boundary, or clipping mask to be deleted.
  - 5) Accept the deletion.  
or  
Reset to keep the highlighted clip boundary or clipping mask.
  - 6) Repeat step 4 for each subsequent clipping mask.
- When you select a reference (or have one selected from the selection set, fence or dialog), the reference is highlighted. If there is a clip boundary and one or more masks, the boundary is shown in yellow and the masks shown in red.

### 14.8 Reload Reference

When working with models that include references, it is possible that other users are making changes to the references. When a change has been made to a reference, and it has not been updated in the active model, the references dialog displays an icon in the Status column for the reference. This indicates that you need to reload the reference in the current session to get the latest updates.



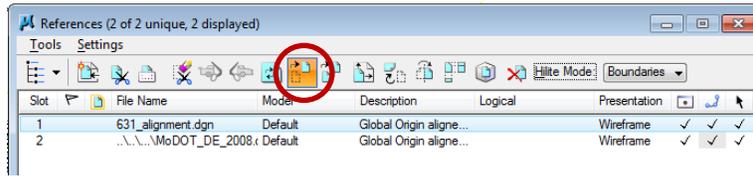
#### To reload a reference

- 1) In the list box in the References dialog, select the reference.
  - 2) Click the *Reload Reference* icon.  
The reference is redrawn.
- Reloading a reference lets you see changes that have been made to the reference by a co-worker on the network since the reference was last attached or reloaded.

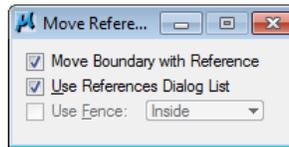
#### To reload all attached references

- 1) From the Tools menu, choose Reload All.  
The references are redrawn.

## 14.9 Move Reference File



Used to move a referenced design file.



Tool Settings	Effect
Move Boundary with Reference	If on, any clipping boundary and/or clipping mask(s) is moved with the reference. If off, the reference is moved, with any clipping boundary and/or clipping mask(s) remaining as is. In effect, the reference “slides” through the boundaries/masks.
Use Reference Dialog List	If on, the models selected on the References dialog are moved.
Use Fence	If on, the fence contents are moved. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode

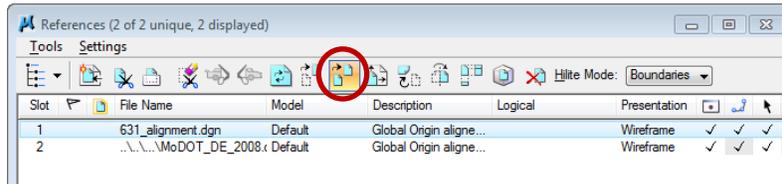
### To move a reference selected from the References dialog list

- 2) In the References dialog's list box, select the references that you want to move in the active model.
- 3) Turn on Display, Snap, and Locate.
- 4) Click the *Move References* icon in the References dialog.
- 5) In the tool settings window, turn on Use References Dialog List.
- 6) Enter a data point to begin the move, and drag the reference to the desired location.

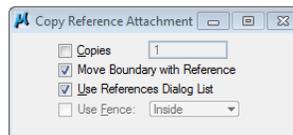
### To move a reference using a fence

- 1) Place a fence around the area containing the references to be moved.
- 2) In the References dialog's list box, select a reference.
- 3) Click the *Move References* icon.
- 4) In the tool settings window, turn off Use References Dialog List.
- 5) Turn on Use Fence and choose the fence mode.
- 6) Enter a data point to begin the move, and drag the fence and reference to the desired location.

## 14.10 Copy Reference File



Used to copy attached references.



Tool Settings	Effect
Copies	Set the number of copies to make.
Move Boundary with Reference	If on, any clipping boundary and/or clipping mask(s) is copied along with the reference. If off, only the reference is copied, while any clipping boundary and/or clipping mask(s) is ignored.
Use Reference Dialog List	If on, the models selected on the References dialog are copied.
Use Fence	If on, the fence's contents are copied. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode.

### To copy elements from a reference to the active DGN file

- 1) In the References dialog's list box, select the reference in which the elements are located.
- 2) Turn on Display, Snap, and Locate.
- 3) Select or place a fence around the elements to be copied.
- 4) From the Manipulate toolbox, select the Copy tool.

### To copy references selected from the References dialog list

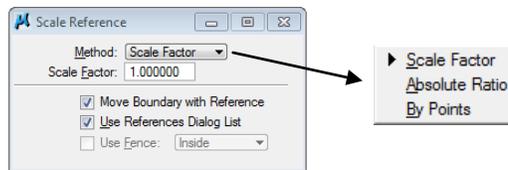
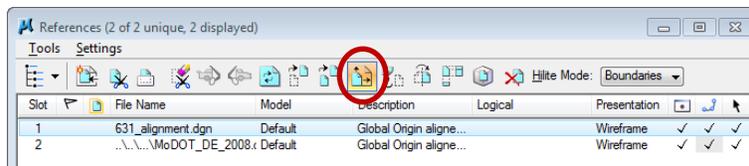
- 1) In the References dialog's list box, select the references that you want to copy in the active model.
- 2) Turn on Display, Snap, and Locate.
- 3) Click the *Copy References* icon.
- 4) In the tool settings window, turn on Use References Dialog List.
- 5) (Optional) To make multiple copies, turn on Copies and in the adjacent field, key in the number of copies.
- 6) Enter a data point to begin the copy.
- 7) Drag the reference to the desired location, and enter a data point to place the copied model.

## MicroStation V8i – Using References

### To copy references using a fence

- 1) Place a fence around the area containing the references to be copied.
- 2) In the References dialog's list box, select a reference.
- 3) Click the *Copy References* icon.
- 4) In the tool settings window, turn off Use References Dialog List.
- 5) Turn on Use Fence and choose the fence mode.
- 6) (Optional) To make multiple copies, turn on Copies and in the adjacent field, type in the number of copies.
- 7) Enter a data point to begin the copy.
- 8) Drag the reference to the desired location, and enter a data point to place the copied model.

## 14.11 Scale References



Used to resize a referenced design file.

Tool Settings	Effect
Method	<p>Method by which the referenced model is scaled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scale Factor — Reference is scaled by a specified factor. For example, a scale factor of 2.00000 doubles the size of the reference.</li> <li>• Absolute Ratio — Reference is scaled by a specified ratio of Master file units to Reference file units. For example, to set five active model master units for each referenced model master unit, key in 5 in the left-hand field and 1 in the right-hand field.</li> <li>• By Points — Model is scaled by points entered.</li> </ul>
Move Boundary with Reference	If on, any clipping boundary and/or clipping mask(s) is scaled along with the reference. If off, only the reference is scaled, while any clipping boundary and/or clipping mask(s) remain as is.
Use Reference Dialog List	If on, the reference(s) selected in the References dialog is scaled.
Use Fence	(Fence present only) If on, the fence contents are scaled. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode.

## MicroStation V8i – Using References

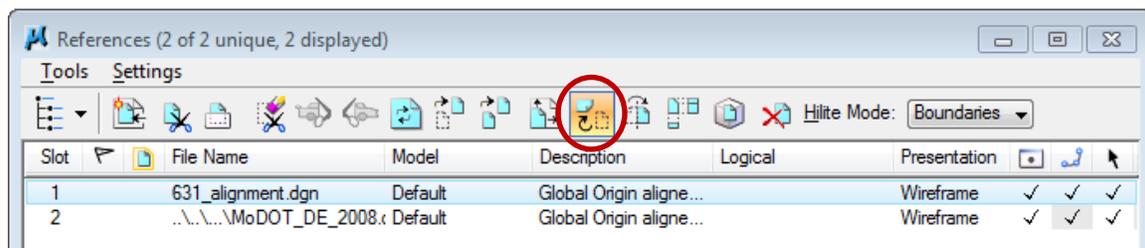
### To scale references selected from the References dialog list

1. In the References dialog's list box, select the references that you want to scale in the active model.
2. Turn on Display, Snap, and Locate.
3. Click the *Scale References* icon.
4. In the tool settings window, choose the scaling Method (and key in the scale factor or ratio, if applicable).
5. Turn on Use References Dialog List.
6. Enter a data point about which the reference is scaled.

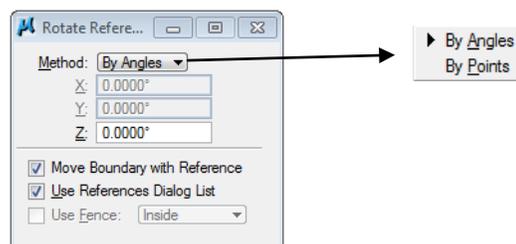
### To scale references selected using a fence

1. Place a fence around the area containing the references to be scaled.
2. In the References dialog's list box, select a reference.
3. Click the *Scale References* icon.
4. In the tool settings window, choose the scaling Method (and key in the scale factor or ratio, if applicable).
5. Turn off Use References Dialog List.
6. Turn on Use Fence and choose the fence mode.
7. Enter a data point about which the references are scaled.

## 14.12 Rotate References



Used to rotate a reference.



## MicroStation V8i – Using References

Tool Settings	Effect
Method	Sets the method by which the reference is rotated. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• By Angles — Sets the rotation angle(s). In 2D, sets the rotation angle(s) on the z-axis only. In 3D, sets the rotation angle(s) on the x-, y-, and z axes.</li><li>• By Points — Sets the point about which the reference is rotated.</li></ul>
X	Angle to rotate the reference about the x axis for 3D files.
Y	Angle to rotate the reference about the y axis for 3D files.
Z	Angle to rotate the reference about the z axis for both 2D and 3D files.
Move Boundary with Reference	If on, any clipping boundary and/or clipping mask(s) is rotated with the reference. If off, only the reference is rotated, with any clipping boundary and/or clipping mask(s) remaining as is.
Use Reference Dialog List	If on, the model(s) selected in the References dialog is rotated.
Use Fence	If on, the fence contents are rotated. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode.

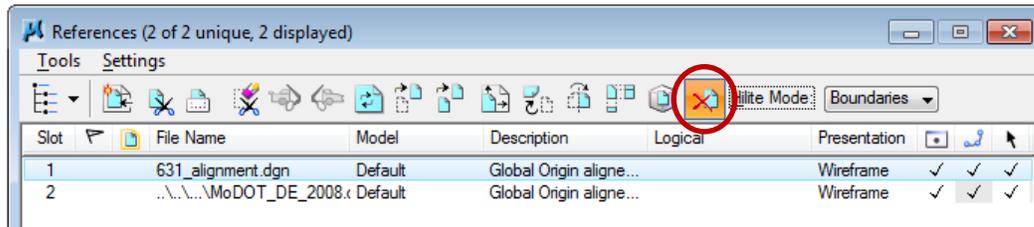
### To rotate references selected from the References dialog list

1. In the References dialog's list box, select the references that you want to rotate in the active model.
2. Turn on Display, Snap, and Locate.
3. Click the *Rotate References* icon.
4. In the tool settings window, choose the rotate Method (and key in X, Y, Z coordinates if method is By Angles).
5. Turn on Use References Dialog List.
6. Enter a data point about which the references are rotated.

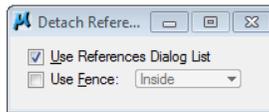
### To rotate references using a fence

1. Place a fence around the area containing the references to be rotated.
2. In the References dialog's list box, select a reference.
3. Click the *Rotate References* icon.
4. In the tool settings window, choose a rotate Method (and key in X, Y, Z coordinates if Method is By Angle).
5. Turn off Use References Dialog List.
6. Turn on Use Fence and choose the fence mode.
7. Enter a data point about which the references are rotated.

## 14.13 Detach Reference



Used to detach a referenced design file from the active design file.



Tool Settings	Effect
Use Reference Dialog List	If on, the reference(s) selected in the References dialog is detached from the master file.
Use Fence	If on, the references contained by the fence are detached from the active model. The option menu sets the Fence (Selection) Mode

### To detach references

1. In the References dialog's list box, select the references.
2. Click the *Detach Reference* icon.  
An alert box asks you to confirm that the selected references are to be detached.
3. Click OK.

### To detach all references

1. From the Tools menu, choose Detach All.  
An alert box asks you to confirm that all references are to be detached.
2. Click OK.

## MicroStation V8i – Using References

# MoDOT Plotting

## Section 15

<b>15.0 MoDOT Plotting</b>	<b>Page 1500</b>
<b>15.1 Plotting Preparation</b>	<b>Page 1500-1501</b>
<b>15.2 Begin Plotting</b>	<b>Page 1502-1503</b>
<b>15.3 MoDOT Plotting Settings</b>	<b>Page 1503-1504</b>
<b>15.4 Plotting Using a Fence &amp; Scale Factor</b>	<b>Page 1504-1505</b>
<b>15.5 Plotting Multiple Design Files</b>	<b>Page 1505-1507</b>
<b>15.6 Plotting Multiple Borders in the Same File</b>	<b>Page 1508</b>
<b>15.7 Plotting to PDF File</b>	<b>Page 1509</b>
<b>15.8 Plotting Preliminary Design</b>	<b>Page 1510-1511</b>



## MicroStation V8i – MoDOT Plotting

### 15.0 MoDOT Plotting

Network Plotting is designed to allow MoDOT MicroStation users the ability to plot design files to plotters connected to MoDOT's in-house network plotter system depending on your location. It has the following features:

- Plotter selection
- Location selection
- Paper size
- Color, Black & White, Gray scale
- Plot multiple or single files
- Scale factor
- Number of copies
- Seal Manually option
- PDF File Destination
- Plot by either fence or border reference file

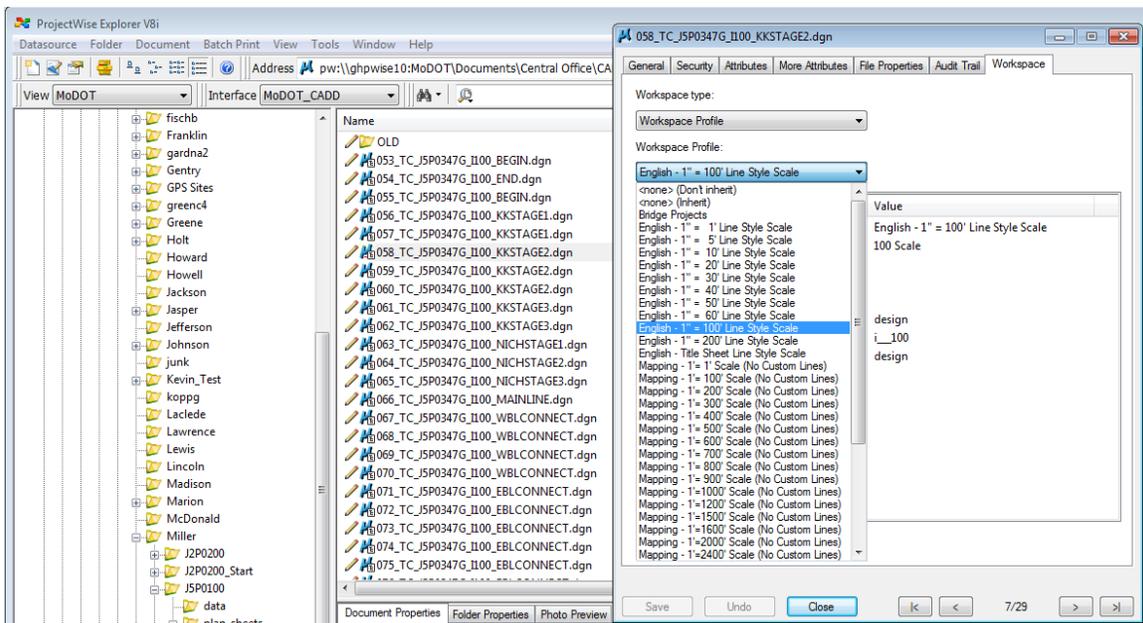
### 15.1 Plotting Preparation

#### *For files stored in ProjectWise*

In order to plot out the design files correctly, you will need to have the proper workspace profile assigned to the file. The **Workspace Profile** controls the how the linestyles appear when you open the file and when the design file is plotted. The Workspace Profile should correspond to the border that is attached to the file.

As an example, if you are working with 1" = 100' plan sheets, then you would choose the **English - 1" = 100' Line Style Scale** workspace profile. Or if you are working with 1" = 50' plan sheets, then you would choose the **English - 1" = 50' Line Style Scale** workspace profile.

(Refer to the ProjectWise manual for assigning the workspace profile to a file or multiple files.



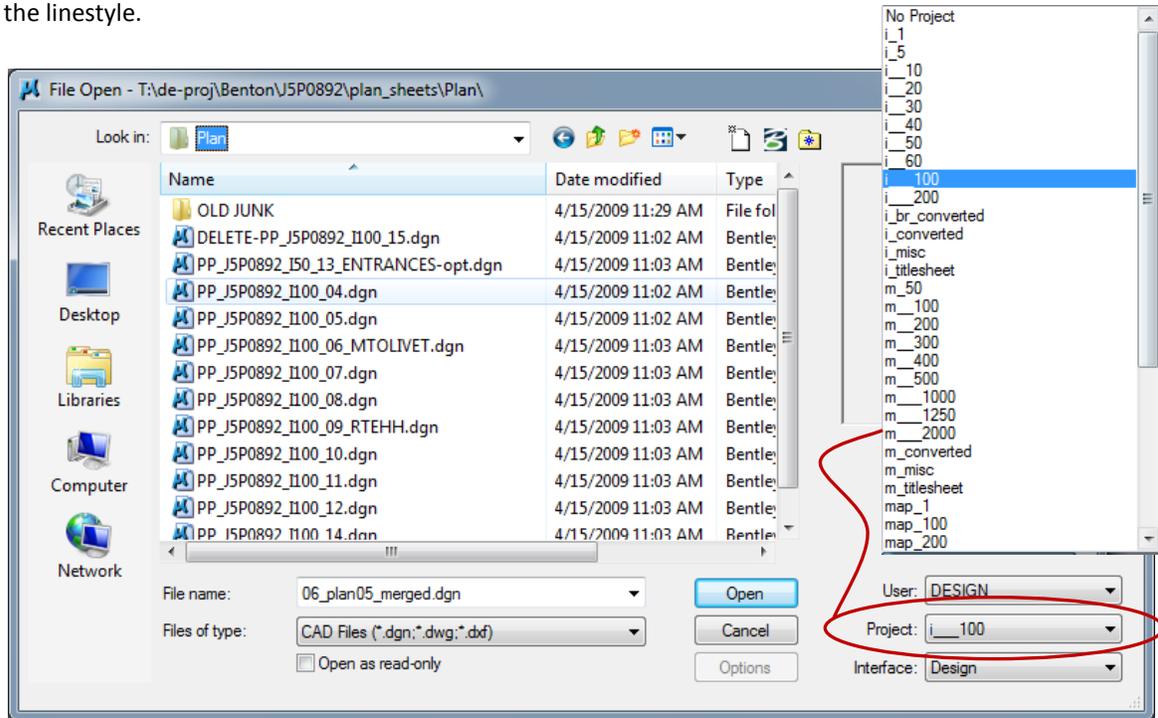
## MicroStation V8i – MoDOT Plotting

### **For files stored on the MoDOT network**

In order to plot out the design files correctly you will need to be in the proper **Project**. The **Project** controls the how the linestyles appear when the design file is plotted. Selecting the corresponding Project to drawing scale will plot the drawing to scale.

As an example, if you are working with 1" = 100' plan sheets then you would choose the i\_100 Project. Or if you are working with 1" = 50' plan sheets then you would choose the i\_50 Project.

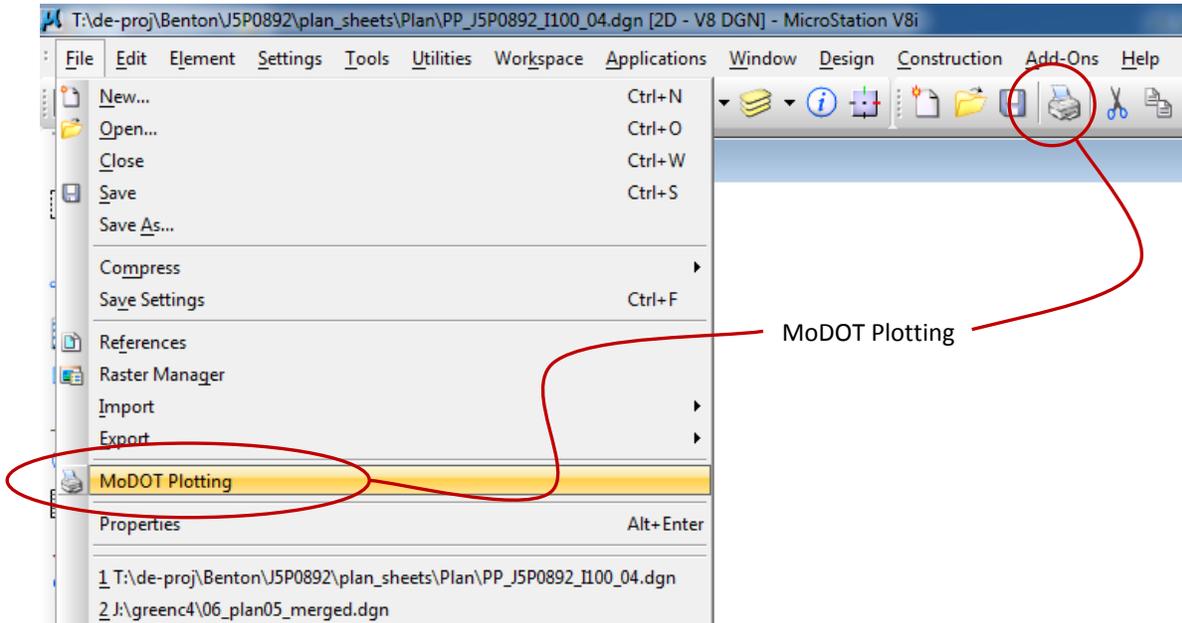
Using the correct **Project** will give you a “what you see is what you get” (wyswyg) display on your screen. A dash line will have the correct spacing between the dashes or the correct symbol at the correct scale for the linestyle.



# MicroStation V8i – MoDOT Plotting

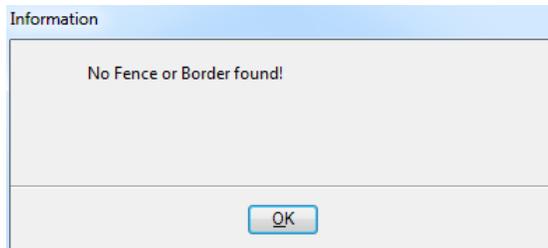
## 15.2 Begin Plotting

There are three ways to activate MoDOT Plotting. The first way is under the pulldown menu option of **File**. The second is located on the Standard Toolbox, all you have to do is select the printer icon and the MoDOT Plotting is started. The third way is to use the “hot keys”



When MoDOT Plotting is activated it looks for one of two things. First it looks for an active **Fence**. If it finds an active fence then MoDOT Plotting will generate its plot data from the contents of that fence. If there is no active fence then MoDOT Plotting will look for a referenced border. This referenced border is 1 of 2 reference files called **plot2d.dgn** or **plotdata.dgn**.

If you do not have a Fence or a Border plotting will fail and you will get the following dialog information box.



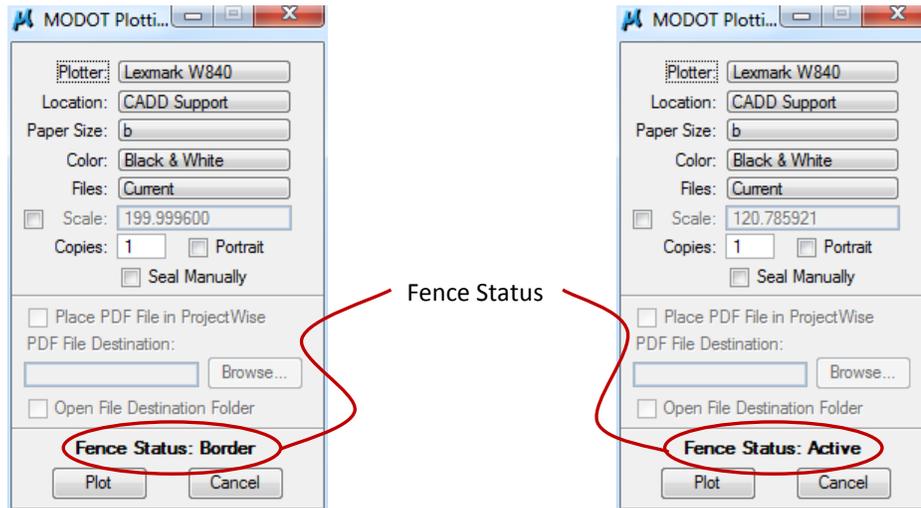
Another important facet to MoDOT Plotting is the file name. You cannot have any spaces in the file name.

Also, these symbols are not allowed in the file name:

\ / : \* ? < > “ & = ,

## MicroStation V8i – MoDOT Plotting

The following shows MoDOT Plotting with a **Fence Status: Active** (Fence is active) and a **Fence Status: Border** (Reference file is active).



### 15.3 MoDOT Plotting Settings

Within MoDOT's plotting routine there are a number of options that you can choose from.

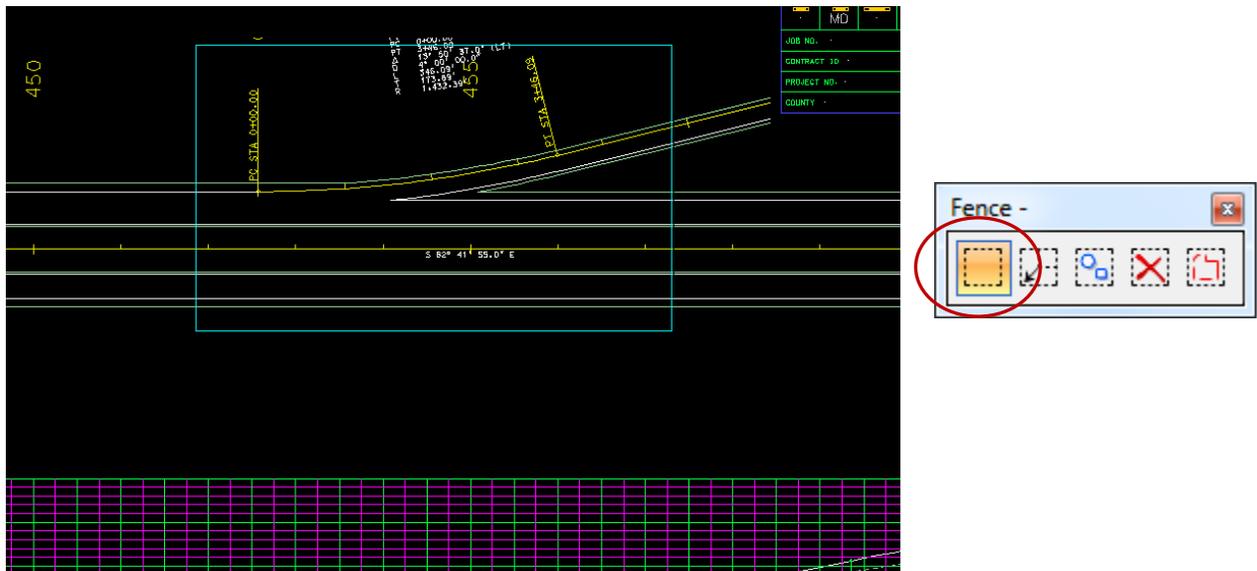
Plotter	This will allow the user to choose a plotting device from a list of plotters.
Location	This will allow the user to specify a location to send a plot, depending on the choice of the plotter.
Paper Size	This will allow the user to choose from the various paper sizes depending on the choice of the plotter.
Color	This will allow the user to select either color, black & white, or grey scale plots.
Files	This will allow the user to send single plots, multiple plots, or multiple borders in the file.
Scale	This will allow the user to send a plot at a scaled size other than the default border size.
Copies	This will allow the user to enter in a number of copies to plot without having to send the same plot repeatedly.
Portrait	This allows the plot to be rotated from a "landscape" to a "portrait" print.

## MicroStation V8i – MoDOT Plotting

Seal Manually	This will place a mask around the text in the sealing area for wet sealing a sheet.
PDF File Destination	This allows the user to place the PDF files being created from the MicroStation files to a certain folder on the network.
Plot	This allows the user to submit the plot(s) to the selected plotting device.
Cancel	This button unloads the plotting application without submitting a plot.

### 15.4 Plotting Using a Fence & Scale Factor

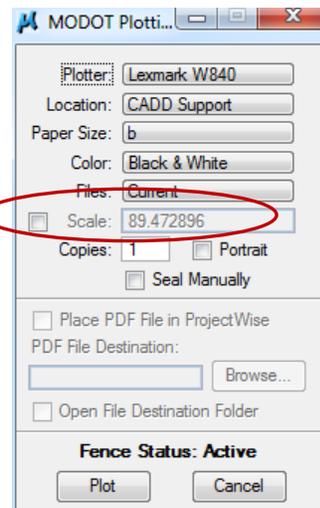
Using the Place Fence tool, place a fence around the geometry that you would like to plot.



Start the MoDOT Plotting routine.

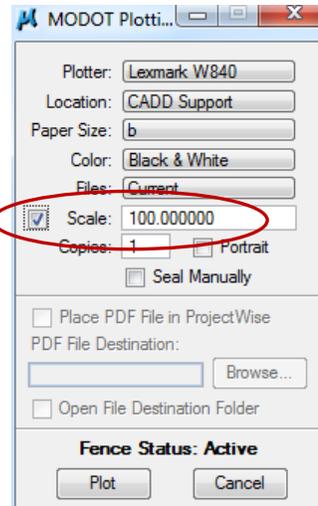
Fill in the dialog options, as you prefer.

If the Scale option is unchecked you will get a plot that will fit the size of the paper that you selected.



## MicroStation V8i – MoDOT Plotting

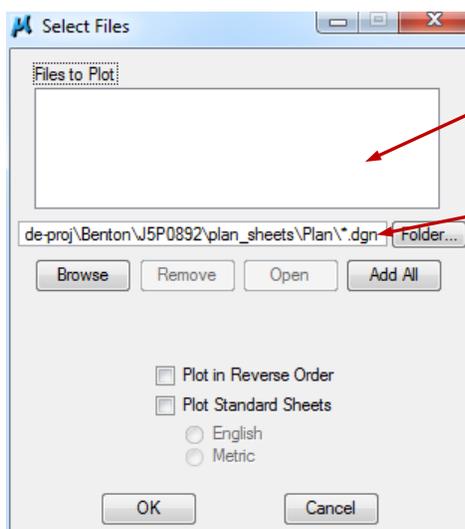
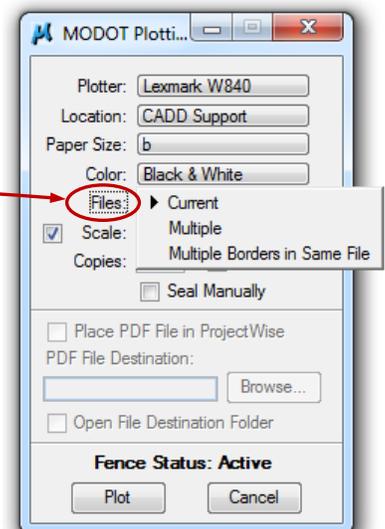
If you need to apply a particular scale factor to your plot you can select the Scale option to make it active. Once the Scale field is active you can enter a scale factor in the input field. The value *cannot* be less than the value shown in the input field.



### 15.5 Plotting Multiple Design Files

Within the MoDOT plotting routine under the “files” button there is an option to plot multiple plots.

Selecting this “Multiple” option will bring up the **Select Files** dialog box.



This field displays the files to be plotted.

This field displays the directory you are currently working in.

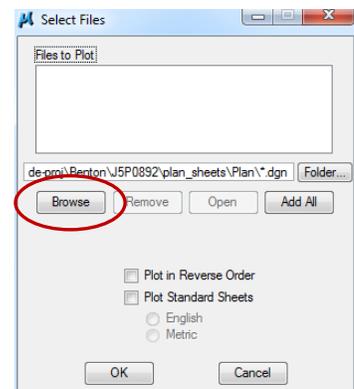
## MicroStation V8i – MoDOT Plotting

Browse	This will allow the user to navigate through directories to choose design files for plotting.
Remove	This will allow the user to remove one or more design files from the “Files to Plot” field.
Open	This will allow the user to leave the current drawing and enter the selected file keeping the “Select Files” dialog box open and loaded with the files to plot.
Add All	This will allow the user to add all the files in the selected directory.
Plot in Reverse Order	This will allow the user to plot in a reversed order. This option is for the plotters that plot the drawings face up.
Plot Standard Sheets	When plotting Standard Sheets this option should be checked. This will allow the next two options to open up.
English	Choosing this option allows you to plot an English Standard Sheet. The plotting routine will open the file and turn off level 46 the Metric information.
Metric	Choosing this option allows you to plot a Metric Standard Sheet. The plotting routine will open the file and turn off level 45 the English information.
OK	This option allows the user to send the information to the MoDOT plotting dialog where a click on the plot button begins the process.
Cancel	This cancels the multiple plot option and returns you to the MoDOT plotting dialog.

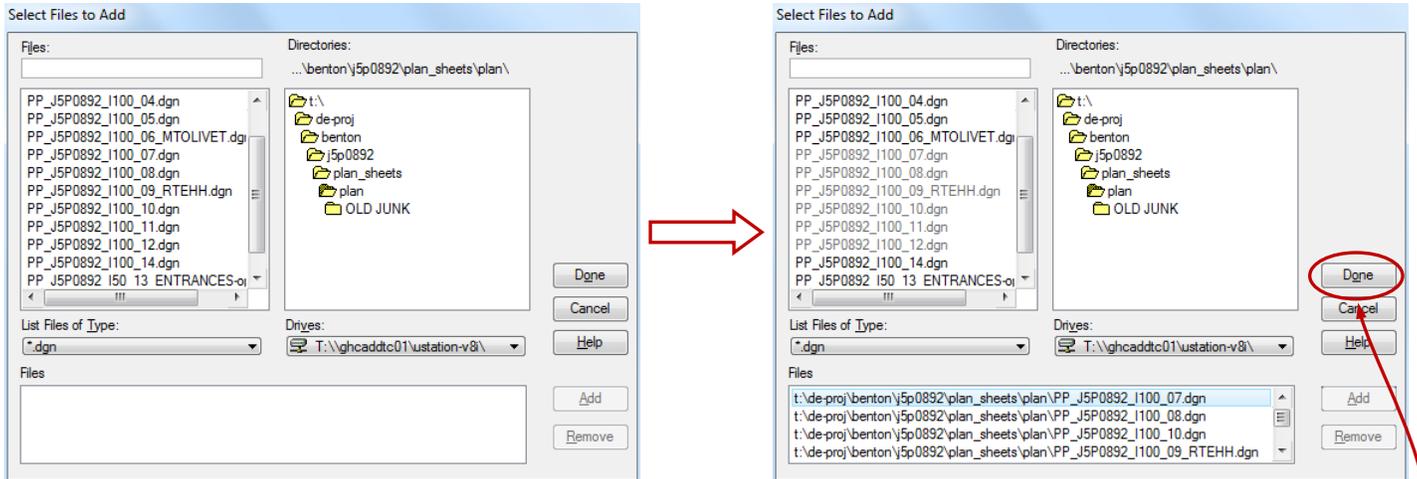
### ***To plot multiple files at one time***

1. Start the MoDOT plotting routine.
2. Set the plotting parameters as you need.
3. Click on the “Current” button and select the “Multiple” option.
4. Click on the “Browse” button.
5. Choose the desired files for plotting by selecting and clicking the “Add” button.

After the files are picked you can still “Add” or “Remove” files as needed by highlighting the file and clicking the appropriate “Add” or “Remove” buttons.

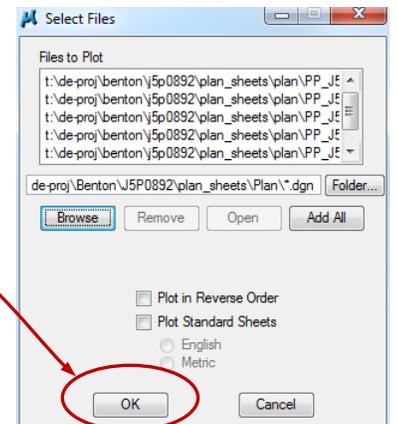


## MicroStation V8i – MoDOT Plotting



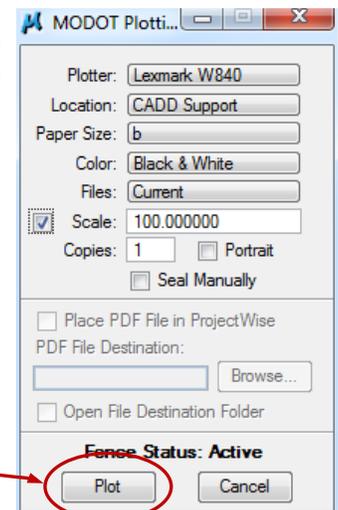
- Click on the “Done” button when you are finished choosing the desired files for plotting and it will bring you back to the Select Files dialog box.

- It is here that you may want to check the “Plot in Reverse Order” button, only if you are plotting to a plotter that plots face up. Also, if you are plotting Standard Sheets you will want to select the “Plot Standard Sheets” option and it will give you a choice of English or Metric to choose from. Click the “OK” button.



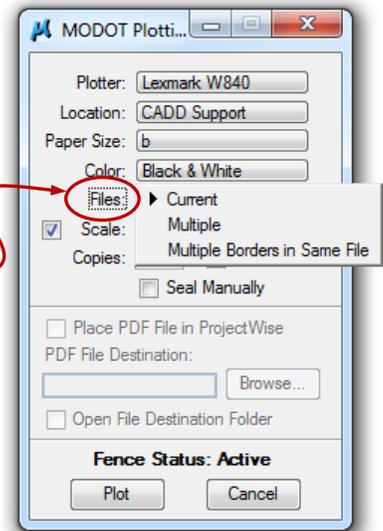
- This will bring you back to the original MoDOT Plotting dialog box where a simple left click on the “Plot” button starts the process of sending the plots to the plotter.

When plotting multiple plots MicroStation will open up each file that you selected, turn on the lineweights, locate the plotdata border file and place a fence or if the border file is not present it will do a fit view and place a fence around the geometry and plot the drawing to the selected plotting device.

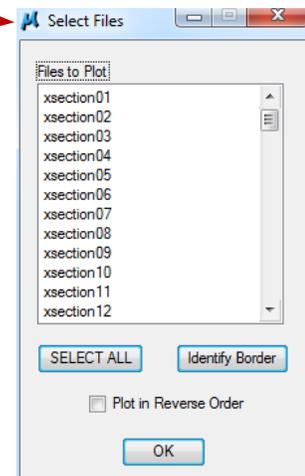


## 15.6 Plotting Multiple Borders in the Same File

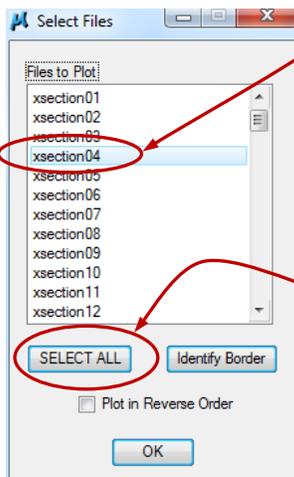
Within the MoDOT plotting routine under the “Files” button there is an option to plot “Multiple Borders in Same File”:



When you choose this option you will get the “Select Files” dialog box that has a pick list.



From this dialog choose the border(s) to plot. You can use the control key to build the list.



The “Select All” button does exactly that.... it will select all the borders in the list for plotting.

The “Identify Border” allows the user to identify a border name from the design file. Click on the “Identify Border” button then in the design file click on a border and the border name will highlight.

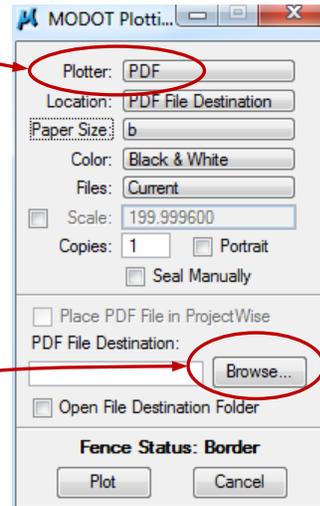
Click the “OK” button when you are finished selecting the borders that you want to plot. This brings you back to the main MoDOT Plotting dialog box where a simple click on “Plot” button initiates the routine.

## 15.7 Plotting to PDF File

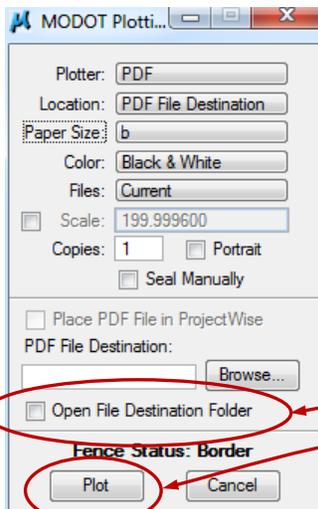
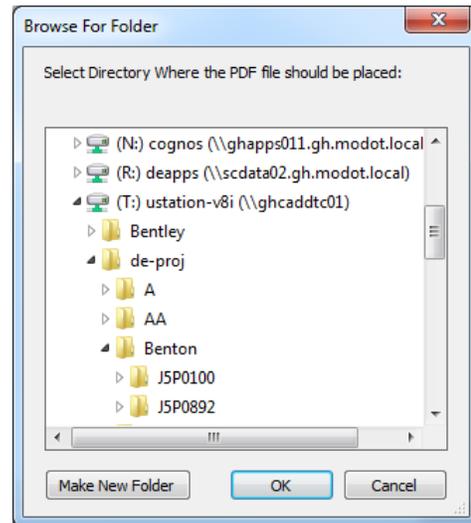
Within the MoDOT plotting routine, there is also an option to print the file into a PDF file. This option is very useful because there may be someone that wants to see the plans, but don't have a cadd program to view it.

### To plot a file to a PDF file

1. Start the MoDOT plotting routine.
2. Set the Plotter option to "PDF".
3. Set the plotting parameters as you need.
4. Click on the "Browse" button for the PDF file destination location for the PDF files to be stored.



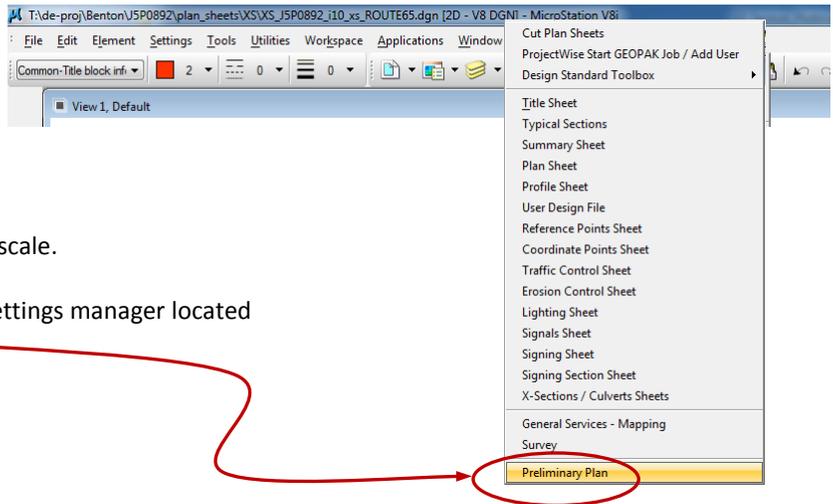
5. In the **Browse For Folder** dialog box, navigate to the folder to where you are wanted to place the PDF files being created. Then select the "OK" button.



6. Finally click the "Plot" button. This will create the selected MicroStation files into separate PDF files in the desired location that you previously specified. There is also an option in the MoDOT Plotting to "Open File Destination Folder", which will open Windows Explorer to the location of the created PDF files.

# MicroStation V8i – MoDOT Plotting

## 15.8 Plotting Preliminary Design

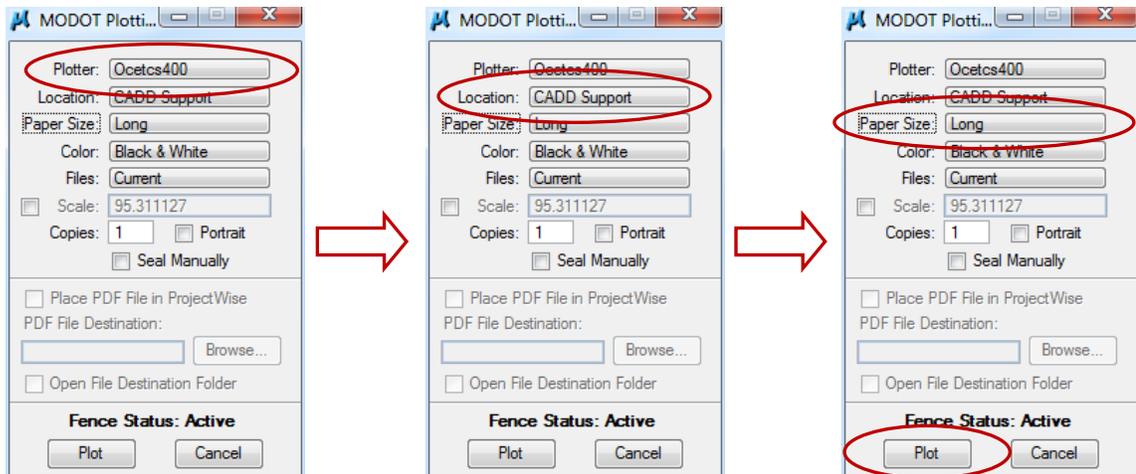
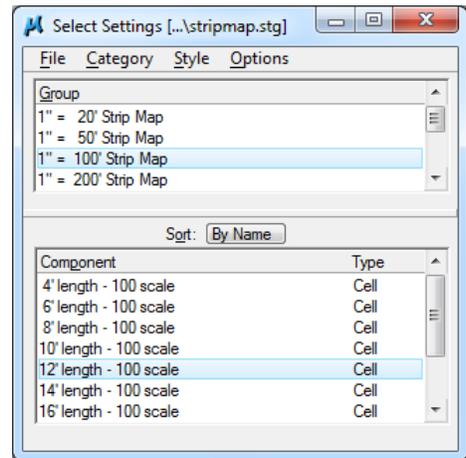


There is a simple way to plot strip maps to scale.

First you must open the Preliminary Plan settings manager located under the MoDOT pull down menu.

### To plot a long plot (Strip Map) from MoDOT plotting

1. From MoDOT choose the Preliminary Design settings manager.
2. In the Group area choose a desired scale.
3. From the Component area choose a length.
4. Place the cell and adjust the location if need be.
5. Place a block fence based on the extents of the cell.
6. You may delete the cell or turn the level off that it was placed in if desired.
7. Complete by starting MoDOT Plotting and choosing desired plotter, desired location and a paper size of long and then "Plot".



## MicroStation V8i – MoDOT Plotting

### Imperial (English)

Drawing Scale	D-Size Paper Scale	B-Size Paper Scale
1" = 1'	1	2
1" = 5'	5	10
1" = 10'	10	20
1" = 20'	20	40
1" = 50'	50	100
1" = 100'	100	200
1" = 200'	200	400

### Metric

Drawing Scale	D-Size Paper Scale	B-Size Paper Scale
1:100	2.54	5.08
1:500	12.7	25.4
1:1000	25.4	50.8
1:1500	38.1	76.2
1:2000	50.8	101.6
1:2500	63.5	127

## MicroStation V8i – MoDOT Plotting